

Foreword

This section provides useful information to know in advance for reading the owner's manual.

Information regarding the marks used in the owner's manual, change of car design, and periodic check is provided.



Thank you for purchasing the TORRES EVX.

TORRES EVX you selected is a vehicle with superior safety and quality and the latest technologies. KG Mobility Corporation has been carrying out and initiating R&D activities continuously in the industry.

Please read this owner's manual carefully before driving the TORRES EVX. You can drive safely and economically by utilizing the technical advantages applied to the vehicle.

We will dedicate ourselves to ensure that you can always drive the TORRES EVX pleasantly and safely.

KGM



Purpose and Application Conditions of the Owner's manual

This owner's manual has been prepared to provide information for the specifications and functions of the vehicle, and important safety information including cautions and warnings for safe driving and correct vehicle maintenance.

- All descriptions, pictures, and drawings included in this owner's manual are based on the time of the document's preparation. If there is a change in the specifications (options) and functions according to a change of design, some content may be different from the actual vehicle.
- This owner's manual has been prepared based on all specifications (options) of the vehicle. Please understand that an explanation of a specification (options) which is not provided for your vehicle may be provided.

As some options or option packages may be added or deleted randomly depending on the vehicle point of sale and design changes, make sure that the options you applied when signing the contract are fitted to your vehicle prior to reading this owner's manual.

Please read this owner's manual carefully before driving the vehicle, to ensure safe driving and the best vehicle performance.

Marks Used in this Owner's manual



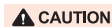
It indicates a dangerous situation (DANGER) that may likely to lead to death or serious injury.

It should be observed for the safety of the driver and other passengers.



It indicates a dangerous situation (WARNING) that may lead to death or serious injury.

It should be observed for the safety of the driver and other passengers.



It indicates a dangerous situation (CAUTION) that may lead to moderate or minor injury, or a situation that may lead to damage to the vehicle.

It should be observed for the safety of the driver and other passengers and the prevention of property damage.



It is used for explaining additional information or procedures related to the vehicle and driving.

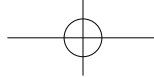


It is used to indicate the location of relevant information useful for using the product.

Change of Specifications (options) and Functions According to a Change of Design

The design is subject to change without prior notice for improving the safety and performance of the vehicle. Therefore, a vehicle specification (options) may be added or deleted, or a function may change.

The content explained in this owner's manual may be different from your vehicle.



Do Not Use Vehicle Components for Other Purposes

Do not use vehicle components for other purposes. KG Mobility Corporation is not liable for any consequent damages.

Importance of a Periodic Check

Have your vehicle checked and maintained at a prescribed period in order to maintain the performance of the vehicle and to prevent the reduction of its life.

Information for Using KG Mobility Authorized Service Center

KG Mobility Corporation is not liable for any problem that occurred due to maintenance carried out by a service center other than KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.

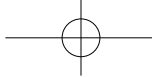


Table of Contents

The table of contents is provided in three types to allow you to find necessary information in a convenient method easily and fast.

- Introduction to chapters - You can identify the content of each chapter at a glance.
- Detailed table of contents - You can find desired information using a name through the detailed title for the relevant chapter.
- Table of pictures - You can find desired information using a picture easily even if you do not know the title of the desired information.



Introduction to Chapters

Identify the contents of each chapter at a glance.

Foreword

- You can check information regarding the marks used in the instruction manual, change of car design, and periodic check.

1. Vehicle Information and Safety Precautions

- You can check helpful information for driving and managing the vehicle safely and conveniently.
- Information regarding the vehicle identification, specifications, check points before driving the vehicle, safety precautions while driving, and vehicle maintenance methods is provided.

2. Safety Units

- You can check information regarding devices that allow you to drive the vehicle safely and how to use such devices.
- An explanation is provided for seat belts, a baby car seat, airbags, anti-theft, and warning system.

3. Convenient Equipment

- You can check information regarding devices that allow you to drive the vehicle conveniently and usefully and how to use such devices.
- An explanation is provided for doors, seats, windows, as well as various convenient equipment including the tailgate, various lights and lamps, mirrors, heater and A/C, AV navigation, storage and cargo box.

4. Starting and driving

- You can check information regarding the basic auxiliaries for safe driving, auxiliary equipment that helps you to drive comfortably, and how to use such equipment.
- You can see a description of the driving controls such as instrument cluster, electronic shift lever, four-wheel drive, cruise control including ignition switch and smart key, as well as driving assistance devices such as brake and emergency braking assistance (AEB), blind spot detection warning system, lane keeping assistance, and parking distance warning.

5. Emergency Measures in the Event of Emergency

- You can check useful information and emergency measures for various emergency situations you can face while driving.
- Information regarding the warning triangle and OVM tools, and a correct measure in case of a dead battery, flat tire, and towing a vehicle is provided. An explanation is also provided for how to respond to a fire, heavy snow, vehicle trouble, and an accident safely.

6. Periodic Checking and Maintenance

- You can check the necessary periodic check and maintenance methods in detail for safe and pleasant vehicle driving.

Index

- You can find important functions or terms from the content of this instruction manual in alphabetical order conveniently.



Detailed Table of Contents

Find the desired information using a name through detailed titles.

1. Vehicle Information and Safety Precautions

Information regarding the installation of ADR and provision of information..... 1-2

Precautions for potentially hazardous seat belt related goods.... 1-3

Precautions for the reduction of non-crash incidents 1-4

Cautions for the protection of the environment 1-5

Economical driving 1-5

Emergency measures in case of emergency 1-6

To change P (park) position 1-6

Double parking (N parking)..... 1-6

High voltage (drive) battery..... 1-8

Lift and mounting points..... 1-9

Stationary vehicle (OFF) 1-9

To turn ignition off 1-9

To turn ignition off while driving (in case of emergency)..... 1-10

To cutoff power from high voltage battery 1-10

Safety plug 1-10

Safety interlock connector..... 1-11

To cutoff power from low voltage (12 V) battery..... 1-12

OVM tools 1-12

Location where the OVM tools are stored 1-12

When towing truck unavailable (in an emergency)..... 1-13

To fit towing hook 1-13

Cautions for using battery 1-14

Emergency measure in case of accidents and vehicle fires 1-14

What to do in case of accident or failure..... 1-14

In case of vehicle fire 1-15

High-voltage battery damage and fluid leaks..... 1-16

Electrolyte irritation..... 1-17

High-voltage battery re-ignition by stranded energy..... 1-17

How to prevent re-ignition (Mitigating stranded energy risk) 1-17

In case of EV flooding 1-18

Submerged or partially submerged vehicles..... 1-18

Storage of damaged vehicle with the damaged battery..... 1-18

Battery storage 1-19

Other cautions regarding EV accidents 1-19

Cautions 1-20

Warning 1-20

In the event of an impact on underside of vehicle or such an accident..... 1-20

In case of fire..... 1-20

Towing 1-20

Vehicle washing..... 1-20

Certification..... 1-21

Vehicle identification 1-23

Manufacturer's plate 1-23

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)..... 1-23

Visual Vin Label 1-23

Dimensions 1-24

Specifications 1-25

Precautions for the modification of the vehicle and structural alteration..... 1-27

Checking before driving 1-29

Daily inspection..... 1-29

Checking motor room..... 1-29

Checking coolant 1-29

Checking brake fluid..... 1-29



Checking washer fluid	1-30
Checking tires	1-30
Checking the instrument cluster	1-31
Checking the parking brake	1-31
Checking the pedals	1-32
Cleaning up near the driver's seat	1-32
Advisable driving position	1-32
Adjusting the seat, headrest, steering wheel, and mirrors	1-32
Wearing the seat belt correctly	1-33
Safety and cautions for driving	1-34
No drugged, drunk, distracted and drowsy (4D) driving	1-34
Precautions for infants, children, old people, or pregnant women	1-35
An infant or a small child must be seated in the rear seat with protective gear	1-35
No sleeping in a sealed vehicle	1-35
Do not drive with the doors or tailgate open	1-36
Do not hold a part of your body out of the window or sunroof	1-36
Be careful not to have a part of your body caught when using the power window	1-36
Check for any vehicles or persons passing by when getting out	1-37
Safe parking and stopping	1-37

Do not stop the vehicle while driving	1-37
No sudden starting, acceleration or braking	1-37
Driving on unpaved and mountain roads	1-37
In high mountain area	1-38
Driving on a snowy or icy road	1-38
Driving on a sandy or muddy road	1-38
Driving on a hillside road and downhill road	1-38
Driving on a road with a pool of water or a river	1-39
Do not use a cellular phone or watch DMB while driving	1-39
Driving on the expressway	1-39
Crossing an intersection or railroad crossing	1-39
No sudden maneuvering of the steering wheel	1-40
To use regenerative braking	1-40
Cautions for attaching accessories	1-40
Special cautions when checking the coolant	1-40
Do not load hazardous materials	1-40
Cautions for vehicle ventilation	1-41
System protection function (delayed accelerator pedal response)	1-41
Placement of extinguisher	1-41

Vehicle management	1-42
KG Mobility Authorized Service Center and maintenance partners	1-42
Cautions for the depletion of battery when connecting uninterruptible power supply to the black box system	1-42
Breaking in a new vehicle correctly	1-42
Long-term parking mode	1-42
Using genuine parts	1-42
Vehicle washing	1-43
Washing the bumper	1-44
Washing wheels	1-44
Cautions for polishing the vehicle	1-44
Cleaning and maintaining glass	1-45
Cautions for window tinting	1-45
Care and cleaning of the interior	1-45
Seat Belt Care	1-46
Cautions for using the vehicle key	1-46
Corrosion protection	1-46
Sheet Metal Damage	1-46
Foreign Material Deposits	1-46
Finish Damage	1-47
Underbody Maintenance	1-47
High voltage warning lamp	1-48
Other maintenance	1-48

0-4 Detailed Table of Contents



2. Safety Units

Seat belt 2-2

Seat belt warning 2-2

Front seat (driver / passenger) belt
reminder 2-3

Rear seat (left / center / right) belt
reminder* 2-3

Fastening the seat belt 2-4

Unfastening the seat belt 2-5

Managing the seat belt 2-5

Adjusting the height of the front seat
belt 2-5

Rear seat belt storage 2-5

Rear seat buckle storage 2-5

Rear center seat belt storage 2-6

Rear center seat belt release 2-6

How to fasten the seat belts (2-point) in
rear center seat 2-6

How to fasten the seat belt (3-point) in
rear center seat 2-7

Seat belt pretensioner and load limiter 2-8

Pretensioner 2-8

Load limiter 2-8

Fastening the seat belt by a pregnant
woman 2-9

Warnings for the seat belt 2-9

Child restraint for an infant or a small child 2-11

Infant and child safety 2-12

Child Seat 2-12

Table of Vehicle Handbook
Information on Child Restraint
Systems Installation Suitability for
Various Seating Positions 2-12

Table of Vehicle Handbook
Information on ISOFIX Child Restraint
Systems Installation Suitability for
Various ISOFIX Positions 2-13

Table of Vehicle Handbook
Information for Installation in Various
Seating Positions on i-Size Child
Restraint Systems 2-14

List of suitable universal Child
Restraint Systems (CRS) 2-14

List of suitable ISOFIX Child Restraint
Systems (CRS) 2-14

List of suitable i-Size Child Restraint
Systems (CRS) 2-14

Installation of crs secured by the
seatbelt 2-15

Front-facing Child Seat 2-15

Rear-facing Child Seat 2-15

Securing a child restraint system with “ISOFIX/i-Size” system and “Tether Anchorage” system* 2-17

Locations of ISOFIX/i-Size Lower
Anchors and Top Tether 2-17

How to use ISOFIX/i-Size Lower
Anchor 2-17

How to use Top Tether 2-18

Warning For Child Restraint 2-19

Air bag* 2-20

Air bag warning label 2-20

Air bag warning lamp 2-20

Air bag crash sensor and air bag control
module 2-21

Configuration of air bag 2-21

Passenger Air Bag ON/OFF
Switch* 2-21

Driver air bag 2-22

Driver knee air bag 2-22

Front passenger air bag 2-22

Front seat side air bag 2-23

Far side air bag 2-23

Curtain air bag 2-23

Cases where the air bag does not
inflate 2-24

In the event of a slight collision 2-24

In the event of a rear end collision 2-24

In the event of a side collision 2-25

In the event of a diagonal collision 2-25

In the event of a collision with a
narrow object 2-25



In case the vehicle moves beneath another vehicle	2-26
In the event of a rollover accident	2-26
Secondary injury due to air bag deployment	2-26
Other cases	2-27
Cases where the driver/front passenger air bags do not inflate	2-27
Cases where the side air bags or curtain air bags do not inflate	2-27
Warnings for the air bag	2-27
Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)*	2-29
Checking the tire pressure	2-29
If the tire pressure or the TPMS is abnormal	2-30
Display of the TPMS status on the instrument cluster	2-31
When low tire pressure is detected	2-33
When you have rotated the tires	2-33
Cautions for the TPMS	2-34
Anti-theft and warning system	2-35
Immobilizer system*	2-35
Immobilizer/smart key warning light	2-35
If the vehicle does not start	2-36
When the transponder is damaged	2-36

When you lose the key	2-36
Theft deterrent system	2-37
Entering the theft monitoring mode	2-37
Activating the theft alarm	2-38
Holding the theft alarm	2-38
Canceling the theft monitoring mode	2-38

3. Convenient Equipment

Door	3-2
How To Lock/Unlock & Open Door	3-2
Door Opening Lever	3-2
How To Check If Door Locked/Unlocked	3-2
Door Lock/Unlock button	3-2
Auto door lock function at the time of driving	3-3
Auto door unlock function at the time of collision	3-3
How To Lock Doors In Emergency	3-4
To lock doors with mechanical key (excluding driver door)	3-4
Child safety door lock	3-5
Locking/unlocking the door lock	3-5
Seat	3-6
Seat & adjustment switch / button / lever	3-6

Seat & adjustment switch / button / lever (VAN)*	3-7
Front seat	3-8
Adjusting the headrest	3-8
Adjusting the front and rear angles	3-8
Adjusting the height	3-8
Separation/installation	3-8
Adjusting the power seat*	3-9
Front and rear position adjustment (driver seat/front passenger seat)	3-9
Adjusting the height (driver seat/front passenger seat)	3-9
Adjusting the cushion angle (driver seat/front passenger seat)	3-10
Adjusting the backrest angle (driver seat/front passenger seat)	3-10
Adjusting the lumbar support (driver/passenger)	3-10
Adjusting the seat manually	3-11
Front and rear position adjustment (driver seat/front passenger seat)	3-11
Adjusting the backrest angle (driver seat/front passenger seat)	3-12
Adjusting the height (driver seat)	3-12
Front passenger walk-in switch	3-12



Adjusting the front and rear positions	3-12
Adjusting the angle of the backrest*	3-13
Rear seat	3-13
Adjusting the height of the headrest	3-13
Seatback reclining adjustment	3-14
Rear seat backrest folding	3-15
Seat ventilation and heating*	3-16
Front seat ventilation and heating*	3-16
Front seat ventilation	3-16
Front seat heating*	3-17
Smart front seat heating control	3-17
Rear seat heating*	3-18
Rear seat heating smart control	3-18
Warnings and cautions related to the seats	3-19
Window (power window)*	3-21
Opening the driver seat/front passenger seat window	3-21
Closing the driver seat/front passenger seat window	3-21
Driver seat window safety function	3-22
Opening/closing the rear seat window	3-22
Rear seat window lock function	3-23

Sunroof (Type A)*	3-24
Sunroof control button	3-25
Basic operating conditions of sunroof	3-25
Opening / Closing Sunroof	3-26
Opening sunroof automatically	3-26
Opening sunroof manually	3-26
Closing sunroof automatically	3-27
Closing sunroof manually	3-27
Sunroof Open Warning	3-28
Sunroof Safety Feature	3-28
Resetting Sunroof	3-28
Resetting is required if:	3-28
Sunroof (Type B)*	3-30
Opening the sunroof	3-31
Opening automatically	3-31
Opening manually	3-31
Closing the sunroof	3-31
Closing automatically	3-31
Closing manually	3-31
Tilting the sunroof up/down	3-32
Tilting up (opening the rear section)	3-32
Tilting down (closing the rear section)	3-32
Sunroof open warning	3-32
Sunroof safety function	3-32

Resetting the sunroof	3-33
Cases requiring the resetting of the sunroof	3-33
Resetting	3-33
Tailgate	3-34
Manual tailgate	3-34
Opening	3-34
Closing	3-34
Power tailgate*	3-35
Open/Close Tailgate With Interior Switch	3-35
Opening/closing with the smart key	3-36
Opening/closing with the button on the tailgate	3-36
Open/close with cargo compartment-mounted buttons	3-37
Anti-pinch protection function	3-37
Resetting the opening height	3-37
Resetting the power tailgate	3-38
Smart tailgate*	3-39
Activating/deactivating the smart tailgate	3-39
Opening the smart tailgate	3-39
Operating condition	3-39
Operation step	3-39
Stopping the smart tailgate function	3-40



Opening the tailgate in the event of emergency 3-40

Motor room hood 3-42

Opening the motor room hood 3-42

Closing the motor room hood 3-42

Checking before closing the motor room hood 3-42

Closing the motor room hood 3-42

EV charge port door 3-43

Opening EV charge port door 3-43

Closing EV charge port door 3-43

Charging type and precautions 3-44

Slow charging 3-44

Fast charging 3-44

Portable charger* 3-45

Connecting and disconnecting of charging connector 3-47

Connecting charging connector 3-47

Disconnecting charging connector 3-47

Emergency removal of charging connector 3-48

Battery Pre-conditioning 3-49

Battery Pre-conditioning 3-49

Enable/Disable Battery Pre-conditioning 3-49

Battery Pre-conditioning Activation Conditions 3-49

Battery Pre-conditioning Deactivation Conditions 3-49

Charging connector lock 3-50

Locking charging connector 3-50

Charging indicator 3-51

Slow and fast charging 3-52

Charging procedures 3-52

After completing charging 3-54

Portable charger* 3-56

Charger operation and settings 3-56

Charger operation 3-56

Charging Capacity settings 3-56

Charging procedures 3-57

After completing charging 3-60

How to store and care for slow charging cable 3-62

Scheduled Charging 3-63

How to perform scheduled charging 3-63

To charge immediately after canceling scheduled charging 3-63

Bi-directional Charging (V2L)* 3-64

How To Set Vehicle 3-64

Designation of each part of bi-directional charging (V2L) connector 3-64

How to use bi-directional charger (V2L) 3-65

How to plug in 3-65

How to disconnect 3-66

Messages On Instrument Cluster 3-66

Lights and lamps 3-68

Outdoor lights/lamps 3-68

Light switch 3-69

Turning on the head light 3-69

Turning on the tail light 3-69

Activating the auto light function* 3-69

Turning off all lights 3-69

Turning on the rear fog light* 3-69

Turning off the fog light* 3-69

Turning on/off the left/right turn signal 3-69

Turning on/off the high beam 3-70

Turning on the high beam and low beam at the same time (passing light) 3-70

Hazard warning lamp 3-70

Adjusting the angle of the head light 3-71

Headlight Angle Adjustment Levels 3-71

Headlight angle adjustment standard (5-seater) 3-72

Headlight angle adjustment standard (2-seater VAN) 3-72



Daytime Running Light (DRL).....	3-73
In case the DRL turns on.....	3-73
In case the DRL turns off.....	3-73
Smart High Beam (SHB)*.....	3-73
Setting the SHB.....	3-73
In case the high beam turns on	3-74
In case the high beam turns off	3-74
Operating the Light switch	3-75
AUTO Approach	3-75
Coming home/leaving home light.....	3-76
Setting the coming home/leaving home light	3-76
Operating the coming home light.....	3-76
Operating the leaving home light.....	3-76
Welcome mode	3-76
Good-bye mode	3-76
Auto light function*	3-77
Auto light sensor.....	3-77
Interior lamp	3-78
Front room lamp (overhead console)	3-79
Driver seat spot switch	3-79
Front passenger seat spot switch	3-79

Driver / passenger / rear room lamp spot switch	3-79
Door linkage switch	3-79
Front spot lamp	3-79
Linkage function between the smart/rekes key and the front room lamp.....	3-79
Rear room lamp.....	3-80
Luggage room lamp	3-80
Sun visor/mirror lamp.....	3-80
Mood lamp*	3-81
Mood lamp setting.....	3-81
Glove box lamp	3-82
e-call (Emergency call)*.....	3-83
How to use E-CALL system.....	3-84
e-call can't be canceled when:	3-85
Wiper and washer fluid.....	3-87
Windshield wiper	3-87
Adjusting the operation speed of the windshield wiper	3-87
Front windshield and washer fluid linkage	3-87
Front auto washer	3-87
Rear window wiper	3-88
Rear window wiper washer fluid linkage function.....	3-88
Rain sensing wiper*	3-88
Rain sensor	3-88

Mirror.....	3-89
Outside rearview mirror	3-89
Folding/unfolding the outside rearview mirror.....	3-89
Auto folding/unfolding function	3-89
Adjusting the outside rearview mirror.....	3-89
Selecting the outside rearview mirror	3-89
Adjusting the angle of the outside rearview mirror	3-90
Interior mirror	3-90
ECM room mirror*	3-90
Manual type inside rearview mirror	3-91
Manual Day/Night Adjustment	3-91
Heater and air conditioner	3-92
Adjusting the direction of air distribution and blocking the air distribution	3-92
Rear air distribution and fan speed control.....	3-93
Cautions for using the heater and air conditioner	3-93
Replacing A/C refrigerant/oil	3-93
Heater & A/C Controls	3-95
Turning Heater & A/C ON/OFF	3-96
Driver/Passenger Side Temperature Control	3-96



Independent Temperature Control (SYNC Off)	3-97
Synchronization Temperature Control (SYNC On)	3-97
AUTO Mode	3-97
Manual Mode	3-98
Air Distribution	3-99
Activating glass heater	3-99
How to Dehumidify Window Glass	3-100
Auto Defogger System (ADS)	3-101
Enabling/disabling AUTO defogger	3-101
Steps to activate AUTO defogger	3-101
Automatic Ventilation Control	3-102
Wash fluid interlock automatic internal circulation mode	3-102
Eco Mode	3-102
Maximum A/C operation	3-102
Hypervisor (HVC)	3-103
Hypervisor panel	3-103
Names of parts of hypervisor control panel	3-103
Main Menu Controls	3-104
Navigation	3-104
Media	3-105
Heater and A/C control	3-105

Top scroll panel (buttonless quick panel)	3-106
Hypervisor (HVC) convenience features	3-107
Utility Mode	3-107
To set Utility mode	3-107
Steering wheel	3-108
Adjusting the height/length of the steering wheel	3-108
Steering wheel heater*	3-108
Horn	3-109
Infotainment system	3-110
Smart audio*	3-110
AV/Navigation*	3-111
Slots for multimedia	3-112
Operating from the steering wheel	3-112
Bluetooth hands-free	3-112
Voice recognition function	3-112
Mute	3-113
Controlling the volume	3-113
Searching for media (SEEK)	3-113
Selecting the mode	3-113
Antenna	3-113
USB charging port	3-114
Power socket	3-115
Indoor convenient equipment	3-116

Sun visor and card holder (driver seat)	3-116
Sun visor	3-116
Card holder	3-116
Mirror and lamp	3-116
Grip handle/coat hanger	3-117
Headrest hangers (coat hooks)*	3-117
Rear seat door roller blind*	3-117
Storage unit	3-119
Front seat/rear seat cup holder*	3-119
Cell phone cradle	3-119
Front storage bin	3-120
Rear storage box	3-120
Glove box	3-120
Console	3-121
Door map pocket	3-121
Seat backrest pocket	3-121
Wireless Phone Charger System*	3-122
To Charge Phone	3-122
Additional equipment in the luggage compartment*	3-124
Luggage upper cover	3-124
Installing the luggage upper cover	3-124
How to store luggage upper cover	3-124
Luggage compartment	3-125



Additional equipment in the luggage compartment (VAN)*	3-126
Roof rack*	3-127

4. Starting and driving

START/STOP switch (Smart key)*	4-2
OFF status	4-2
ACC status	4-2
ON status	4-2
READY status	4-2
To start vehicle	4-3
To start vehicle	4-3
Getting your vehicle started	4-3
When vehicle does not start	4-4
Starting the vehicle with the dead smart key or interference, etc. (in the event of emergency)	4-4
To start vehicle when stop lamp fuse fails (emergency)	4-4
Stopping the vehicle	4-5
Stopping the vehicle while driving (in the event of emergency)	4-5
System Safety Mode	4-5
Cautions for using the START/STOP switch	4-6
Smart Key	4-7

Button-specific feature	4-7
Door locked	4-7
Unlocking the door (when the safety unlock is enabled)	4-8
Unlocking the door (when the safety unlock is disabled)	4-9
Activating/deactivating the panic mode	4-9
Headlamp (low beam) on	4-9
Opening/closing the tailgate	4-9
Additional functions	4-10
Smart door auto lock (auto close)	4-10
Activating the smart door auto lock function (Activating from the hypervisor control panel)	4-10
Activating the smart door auto lock function (Activating with the smart key)	4-10
Locking/unlocking the door with the door handle switch	4-11
To lock with door handle switch	4-11
To unlock with door handle switch (when the safety unlock is disabled)	4-11
To unlock with door handle switch (when the safety unlock is enabled)	4-12
Cautions for using smart key	4-13

Using the emergency key	4-14
The emergency key	4-14
Locking/unlocking the door using the emergency key	4-14
Replacing the smart key battery	4-16
Instrument cluster	4-17
Trip info display	4-19
Speedometer	4-19
Over speed warning light (GCC only)	4-19
POWER/CHARGE gauge	4-19
High Voltage (HV) battery indicator	4-19
Distance To Empty (DTE)	4-20
Regenerative braking level indicator	4-20
Odometer	4-21
Electronic shift lever indicator	4-21
Ambient temperature Indicator	4-21
Warning lights and indicators	4-22
Seat belt warning lamp	4-22
LV battery warning light	4-22
Air bag warning lamp	4-22
Hill Descent Control (HDC) ON indicator/warning light	4-23
Electric power steering warning light	4-23
Electronic stability control system (ESC) ON indicator/warning light	4-24



Electronic stability control system (ESC) OFF indicator	4-24
ABS (Anti-Lock Brake System) warning light	4-24
Brake system warning light	4-25
TPMS warning light	4-25
Steering wheel heater indicator*	4-25
Immobilizer/smart key warning light	4-26
Parking brake ON indicator (Red)	4-26
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) warning light (Amber)	4-26
Autonomous Emergency Braking System (AEBS) warning light	4-27
Autonomous Emergency Braking System (AEBS) OFF indicator	4-27
Turn signal/hazard warning lamp	4-27
Illumination ON indicator	4-28
Rear fog lamp ON indicator	4-28
COMFORT mode indicator	4-28
ECO mode indicator	4-29
SPORT mode indicator	4-29
WINTER mode indicator	4-29
SHB indicator*	4-30
AUTO HOLD indicator/warning light*	4-30
LKA (LDW) indicator / warning lamp	4-31

Centering lane keeping assist (CLKA) indicator / warning lamp	4-31
High beam indicator	4-31
Vehicle READY indicator	4-32
Service required warning light	4-32
Power down warning light	4-32
Charging indicator	4-33
HV battery level warning light	4-33
HV battery fault warning light	4-33
Virtual Engine Sound System (VESS) warning light	4-34
Door ajar warning light	4-34
Motor room hood open warning light	4-34
Smart tailgate indicator	4-35
Master symbol	4-35
Automatic Lane Change Assist (ALC) Indicator Lamp	4-35
Driver Attention Alert (DAW) Warning Lamp	4-36
Driver Attention Alert (DAW) Failure Warning Lamp	4-36
Headlamp angle indicator	4-36
Over speed warning light (GCC only)	4-36

Indicator panel on instrument

cluster	4-37
Main menu	4-37

Trip computer information	4-38
Mileage/average speed/driving time	4-38
Main menu list	4-38
Fuel economy	4-39
Power flow	4-40
TPMS status	4-40
Driving assist Menu	4-40
Driving assist	4-40
AV screen	4-41
TBT (Turn By Turn)	4-41
General Settings	4-42
Vehicle Settings	4-44
Message on the display of the instrument cluster	4-51

Instrument cluster illumination

brightness

To adjust instrument cluster illumination brightness	4-104
--	-------

SBW (shift by wire)

Transmission selector lever position	4-105
Electronic shift lever position display	4-105
How to move shift lever to target gear position	4-106
Functions for each shift position	4-107
P (park) position	4-107



R (reverse) position	4-107
N (neutral) position	4-108
D (drive) position	4-108
Regenerative braking system	4-109
Regenerative braking control (paddle shifter)	4-109
How to set up regenerative braking	4-110
Operation of EV	4-111
Drive mode	4-112
Drive mode switch	4-112
Default settings for each mode	4-112
Brake system	4-113
Foot brake	4-114
Checking for foreign materials on the pedal operation area	4-114
Checking and replacing the brake pads/discs	4-115
If the brake is not working	4-115
ABS (Anti-Lock Brake System)	4-115
ABS warning light	4-116
Electronic Brake-Force Distribution (EBD)	4-116
Brake system warning light	4-117
Emergency Stop Signal (ESS)	4-117
Activation and deactivation conditions	4-117

Electronic stability control system (ESC)*	4-118
ESC indicator/warning light	4-118
ESC OFF indicator	4-119
Phenomenon that occurs when the ESC is activated	4-119
When it is necessary to deactivate the ESC function	4-119
Hill Descent Control (HDC)	4-121
Activating/deactivating the HDC function	4-121
HDC indicator/warning light	4-121
HDC activation conditions	4-122
HDC deactivation conditions	4-122
HDC operation	4-122
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)	4-122
Applying the EPB	4-123
Releasing the EPB	4-123
Releasing the EPB automatically	4-123
EPB warning light/brake warning light	4-123
EPB emergency mode	4-124
AUTO HOLD	4-125
Activating the AUTO HOLD function	4-126
Deactivating the AUTO HOLD function	4-126
Using the AUTO HOLD function	4-126

AUTO HOLD indicator/warning light	4-126
Parking assist system*	4-128
Front/rear obstacle detection system	4-128
Activating the obstacle detection system	4-129
Warning buzzer interval	4-130
Sensor and relevant system malfunction	4-131
If the system does not operate or malfunctions	4-131
Cautions regarding the front/rear obstacle detection system	4-132
Rear camera system	4-133
Around View Monitoring (AVM) system*	4-134
Operating conditions	4-135
How to operate AVM	4-135
Double-Parking (Second Row Parking)	4-136
Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB)*	4-137
AEB indicator/warning light	4-138
AEB OFF indicator	4-138
AEB indicator/warning light	4-139
How to set Autonomous emergency braking (AEB)	4-139



How to set Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB)	4-139
How to set Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) warning sound	4-140
AEBS operation	4-140
Activation conditions	4-141
Deactivation conditions	4-141
The AEB cannot detect a vehicle properly:	4-142
The AEBS cannot detect a pedestrian	4-144
LDW (Lane Departure Warning)*.....	4-146
To activate lane departure warning (LDW)	4-146
How to set LKA warning sound	4-146
To activate / deactivate Lane Departure Warning (LDW)	4-147
LDW ON indicator	4-147
Activation conditions	4-147
Cases that the system is not activated	4-148
Cases requiring the driver's attention.....	4-149
Lane Keeping Assistance (LKA)*.....	4-151
To activate Lane Keeping Assistance (LKA)	4-151
How to set LKA warning sound	4-152
To enable / disable LKA	4-152

LKA ON indicator	4-152
Operating conditions	4-153
Cases that the system is not activated	4-154
Cases requiring the driver's attention.....	4-154
Centering Lane Keeping Assist (CLKA)*.....	4-156
To activate / deactivate CLKA	4-156
Centering lane keeping assist (CLKA) ON indicator lamp.....	4-157
Centering lane keeping assist (CLKA) hands-off warning	4-159
The CLKA does not work when:	4-160
Driver Attention Required	4-161
Adaptive Cruise Control*	4-162
Adaptive cruise control switch	4-162
Conditions for using Cruise Control	4-163
Adaptive Cruise Control Ready / Enabled Display	4-163
Set adaptive cruise (enabled)	4-163
Adaptive Cruise Control Ready.....	4-164
To set adaptive cruise control (ACC) operation sensitivity	4-164
Driving settings of adaptive cruise control (ACC).....	4-164
Increasing speed	4-166
Decreasing speed	4-166

Temporary acceleration (override)	4-166
Deactivating	4-167
Disable conditions	4-167
Other disable conditions	4-167
Resume.....	4-167
To Deactivate.....	4-168
To set safety distance to front vehicle.....	4-169
Forward situation awareness	4-170
Starting at congested areas.....	4-170
Front detection sensor (Front radar + front camera)	4-170
Vehicle detection is difficult under the following circumstances:.....	4-171
Not detected preceding pedestrian	4-172
Curved road	4-172
Uphill or downhill	4-173
To change lane	4-173
Detecting vehicle ahead	4-174
Automatic Lane Change (ALC)*.....	4-175
How to set Automatic Lane Change (ALC)	4-175
Operating Conditions	4-176
How Automatic Lane Change (ALC) operates	4-176
Standby	4-177
How to disable.....	4-177



Changing lanes (1).....	4-178
Changing lanes (2).....	4-178
Changing lanes (3).....	4-178
Intelligent Speed Assistance (ISA)*	4-181
Image That Shows Operation Status Of ISA	4-182
How To Set ISA	4-182
How to operate Intelligent Speed Assistance (ISA).....	4-182
How ISA appears on instrument panel.....	4-183
Speed limit warning	4-183
Enabling speed limit warnings	4-183
Disabling speed limit warnings.....	4-183
Speed Limit Assist	4-183
Enabling Speed Limit Assist.....	4-183
Disabling Speed Limit Assist	4-184
Recognizing Traffic Signs.....	4-184
Lateral distance condition based on velocity.....	4-184
Recognizable traffic signs	4-184
Speed limit signs	4-184
Traffic signs can be difficult to recognize when:	4-184
Front Vehicle Start Warning (FVSW)*	4-185

Safe Distance Warning (SDW)*.....	4-186
How to set Safe distance Warning (SDW)	4-186
How Safe Distance Warning (SDW) operates	4-186
Front Cross Traffic + Rear Cross Traffic Alert*	4-187
Autonomous Emergency Braking	4-187
How to set Autonomous Emergency Braking	4-187
Intersection Oncoming Traffic Response	4-188
Intersection Lateral Traffic Response	4-188
Front Oncoming Traffic Response	4-189
Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK)*.....	4-190
How to enable Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK)	4-190
Front Cross Traffic Alert On Overtaking	4-191
Oncoming Traffic Alert On Overtaking	4-191
Evasive Steering Assist	4-191
Driver Steering Assist.....	4-192
Rear and side warning system*.....	4-193
Display of rear and side warning system activation	4-193

Warning Steps in BSW System	4-194
When the rear and side warning system is abnormal	4-194
Lane Change Warning (LCW) system	4-195
Operating conditions.....	4-195
Rear Collision Warning (RCW).....	4-195
How to set Rear Collision Warning (RCW)	4-195
Operating Conditions	4-196
Blind Spot-detection Warning (BSW)	4-196
How to set Blind Spot-detection Warning (BSW)	4-196
Operating Conditions	4-196
Blind Spot-collision Assist (BSA).....	4-197
How to set BSA system	4-197
Operating conditions.....	4-197
RCTW System.....	4-198
How to set RCTW system	4-198
Activation conditions	4-198
RCTA System	4-198
How to set RCTA system.....	4-199
Operating conditions:.....	4-199
Message on instrument cluster	4-199
Cases where RCTA system not work	4-199



Cases where the RCTA system malfunctions	4-199
SEW System	4-200
How to set SEW system	4-201
Operating conditions:	4-201
Message on instrument cluster	4-201
Speed limit warning	4-202
Speed limit warning switch	4-202
How to set speed limit warning	4-203
Issue speed limit warning	4-203
Deactivating Speed Limit Warning	4-203
How to set speed at which Speed Limit Warning issues	4-203

5. Emergency Measures in the Event of Emergency

OVM (Owner Vehicle Maintenance) tools	5-2
Warning triangle*	5-2
Storage place of the warning triangle*	5-2
OVM tools	5-2
Location where the OVM tools are stored	5-3
When Low Voltage (12 V) Battery Discharged (Emergency Start-up)	5-4
Starting the vehicle using the jump cable	5-4

When a tire is flat	5-6
Repairing a flat tire/inflating a tire using the service kit* for tire repair	5-7
Components of the service kit for tire repair	5-7
Storage location of the service kit	5-7
Confirming whether it is possible to repair the flat tire with the service kit or not	5-7
Operating principle of the service kit	5-8
Repairing a flat tire	5-8
Checking the tire pressure after repairing a flat tire	5-12
Inflating a tire	5-13

When you need to have your vehicle towed	5-15
Towing a disabled vehicle	5-15
Towing with tow truck	5-15
For 2WD vehicles	5-15
When a tow truck is unavailable (in case of emergency)	5-16
Installing the towing hook	5-16
Using a towing rope	5-17
Trailer towing	5-18
Trailer loading	5-18
Maximum Load Limits	5-18
If you want to pull a trailer	5-19
Weight of trailer	5-19

Weight of trailer tongue	5-19
Trailer brakes	5-20
Trailer lights	5-20
Tires	5-20
Safety chains	5-20
Brake fluid	5-20
Automatic transmission fluid	5-20
Towing tips	5-20
Driving on hill	5-21
Parking on hills	5-21
When you are ready to leave after parking on a hill	5-21
Maintenance when towing trailer	5-21

When the vehicle has stopped due to a failure	5-22
In the event of an accident	5-23
Tips when an accident or a malfunction occurs on the expressway	5-23
In the event of a fire	5-24
Placing an extinguisher in the vehicle	5-24
How to use the extinguisher	5-24
Checking and maintaining the extinguisher	5-25
In the event of a heavy snow	5-26



6. Periodic Checking and Maintenance

Maintenance Schedule	6-2
Oils capacity/specifications	6-3
Scheduled maintenance services	
- EV	6-4
Maintenance Schedule (under severe condition)	6-7
Scheduled maintenance services (under severe condition) - EV	6-8
Table for check and change intervals under demanding conditions	6-11
Checking Motor Room	6-12
Coolant	6-13
Level Check & Replenishment	6-13
Brake and clutch fluid	6-14
Specification and Replacement	6-14
Level Check and Replenishment	6-14
Washer fluid	6-15
Low voltage battery (12V)	6-16
Battery Maintenance	6-16
Specification	6-16
Checking the wipers and replacing the blade	6-18
Replacing the blade of windshield wiper	6-18

Replacing the blade of rear window wiper	6-18
Specifications of wiper blade	6-18
Checking and replacing fuses and relays	6-20
Motor room fuse and relay box	6-20
Interior fuse box	6-20
Checking and replacing fuses	6-21
Checking and replacing the lamps	6-22
Specifications of lamps and checking	6-22
Specifications and quantity of lamps and bulbs	6-22
Checking the lamps	6-23
Position of exterior lights and lamps	6-24
Replacing exterior lamps	6-25
To replace license plate lamp	6-25
Position of interior lamps	6-26
Replacing the glove box lamp	6-27
Replacing the A/C filter	6-28
Checking the tires and wheels	6-30
Checking the tire pressure	6-30
Prescribed tire inflation pressure	6-30
Wheel alignment status and the balance between tires and wheels	6-30
Checking the status of tire wear	6-31

Rotating the tire positions	6-31
Snow tire	6-31
Tire chain	6-32
Cautions for checking the tires and wheels	6-32

Vehicle management during winter 6-34

Starting the vehicle and driving the vehicle	6-34
Managing the motor coolant	6-34
Managing washer fluid	6-34
Installing a snow tire	6-34
Managing the A/C	6-34
High Voltage Battery Care Tips	6-35
Other maintenance	6-36
Cautions for parking during winter	6-36

Warnings for self-maintenance..... 6-37

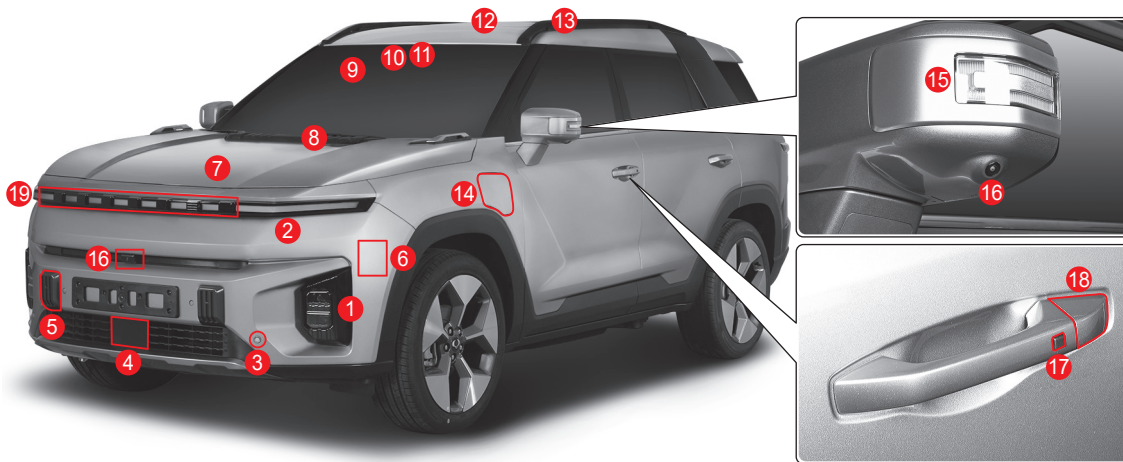
7. Index



Photo Table of Contents

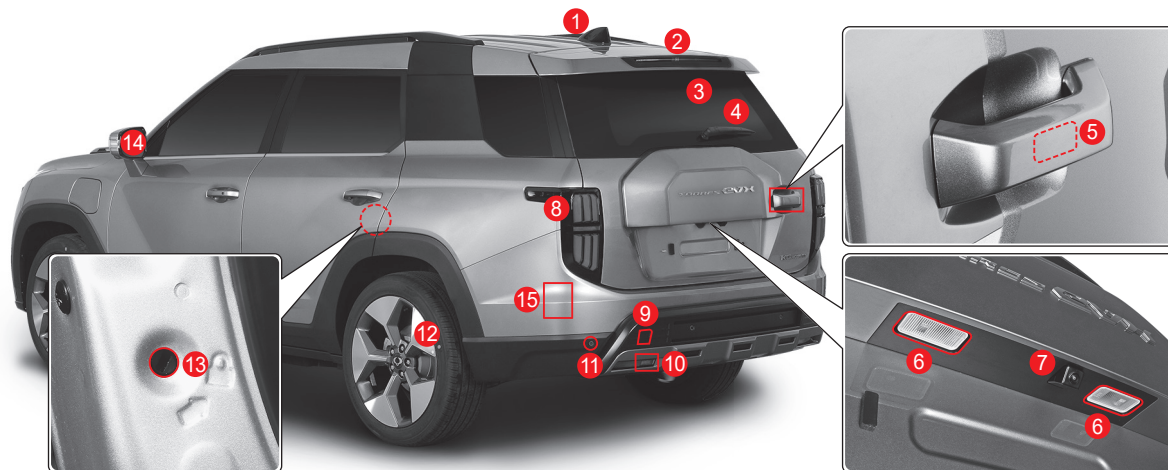
Even if you don't know the name of what you're looking for, the illustrations make it easy to find it.

Front part



- | | | |
|---|--|---|
| 1 Headlights 3-68, 6-22, 6-24 <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Smart high beam (SHB) 3-73 | 8 Front wipers 6-18 | 14 Electric vehicle charging door 3-43 <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Installing and removing charging plug 3-47• Charging status indicator 3-51• Slow and fast charging 3-52• Portable charging 3-56• Bi-directional Charging (V2L) 3-64 |
| 2 Front combination lamp 3-68, 6-22, 6-24 <ul style="list-style-type: none">• DRL (Daytime Running Light) 3-73• Turn signal lamp 3-68 | 9 Front camera module 4-170 <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) 4-137• Lane Departure Warning (LDW) 4-146• Lane Keeping Assistance (LKA) 4-151• Centering Lane Keeping Assistance (CLKA) 4-156• Front Vehicle Start Warning (FVSW) 4-185 | 15 Side repeater 3-68, 6-22, 6-24 <ul style="list-style-type: none">• AUTO Approach 3-75 |
| 3 Front obstacle detecting sensor 4-128 | 10 Auto light 3-77 | 16 Front view camera, side view camera 4-134 <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Around view monitoring (AVM) system 4-134 |
| 4 Front radar 4-170 <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Safe distance alert (SDA) 4-186• Adaptive cruise control (ACC) 4-162 | 11 Rain sensor 3-88 | 17 Door outside handle switch 4-11 |
| 5 Front towing hook 1-13, 5-16 | 12 Sunroof 3-30 | 18 Using emergency key 4-14 |
| 6 Front Cross Traffic + Rear Cross Traffic Alert 4-187 | 13 Roof rack 3-127 | 19 Front position lamp 3-68, 6-22, 6-24 |
| 7 Motor room hood 3-42 | | |

Rear part



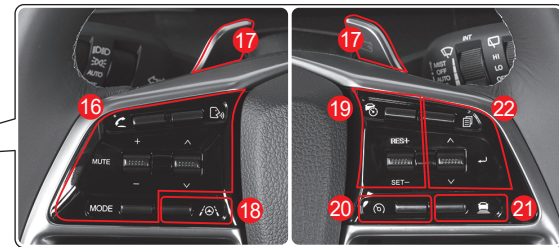
- 1 Antenna (GPS, radio, DMB)..... 3-113
- 2 High-mounted stop lamp 3-68, 6-22, 6-24
- 3 Rear window heating 3-100
- 4 Rear wiper 6-18
- 5 Tailgate open button 3-34
- 6 License plate lamp 3-68, 6-22, 6-24
- 7 Rear view camera 4-133
- 8 Rear combination lamp 3-68, 6-22, 6-24

- 9 Rear towing hook 5-16
- 10 Backup lamp 3-68, 6-22, 6-24
- 11 Parking aid sensors 4-128
- 12 Tire and wheel 6-30
 - In the event of flat tire 5-6
 - Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) 2-29
- 13 Child safety door lock / unlock 3-5
- 14 Outside rearview mirror heater 3-100

- 15 Rear Cross Traffic Alert 4-193
 - Lane Change Warning (LCW) 4-195
 - Rear Collision Warning (RCW) 4-195
 - Blind Spot-detection Warning (BSW) 4-196
 - Blind Spot Collision Assist (BSA) 4-197
 - Rear Cross Traffic Warning (RCTW) 4-198
 - Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) 4-198
 - Safety Exit Warning (SEW) 4-200



Left side of driver's seat (with doors)

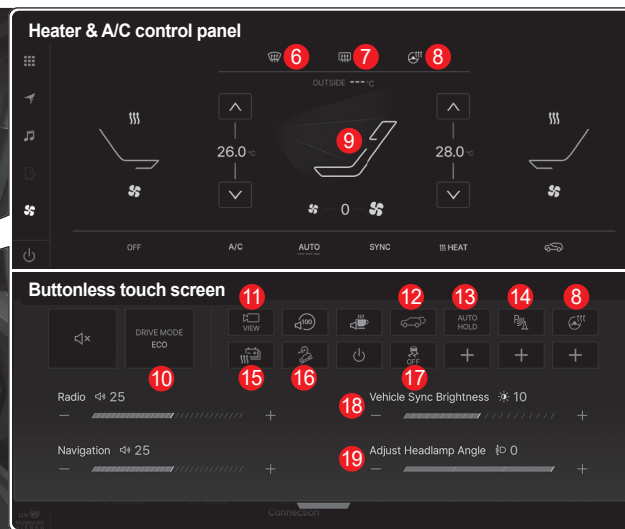


- 1 Door Opening Lever 3-2
- 2 Outside rearview mirror angle adjustment button 3-89
- 3 Door lock/unlock button 3-2
- 4 Window button 3-21
 - Rear window lock 3-23
- 5 Motor room hood opening lever 3-42
- 6 Interior fuse box 6-20
- 7 Foot brake pedal 4-114
 - Emergency Stop Signal (ESS) 4-117
- 8 Steering wheel unlock lever 3-108

- 9 Light switch 3-69
- 10 Instrument cluster 4-17
- 11 Driver air bag 2-22
- 12 Front seats 3-8
- 13 Power seat adjustment button 3-9
- 14 Driver's lumbar support adjustment button 3-10
- 15 Walk-in button for passenger seat adjustment 3-12
- 16 Audio system control button 3-112
- 17 Regenerative braking paddle shift (-/+) 4-109

- 18 LKAS ON/OFF switch 4-146, 4-151, 4-156
 - Lane Departure Warning (LDW) 4-146
 - Lane Keeping Assistance (LKA) 4-151
 - Centering Lane Keeping Assistance (CLKA) 4-156
- 19 Adaptive cruise control switch 4-162
 - Speed limit control switch 4-202
- 20 Intelligent speed assistance ON/OFF switch 4-181
- 21 Button to set safety distance to front vehicle 4-169
- 22 Instrument cluster menu button and control button 4-37

Interior front view



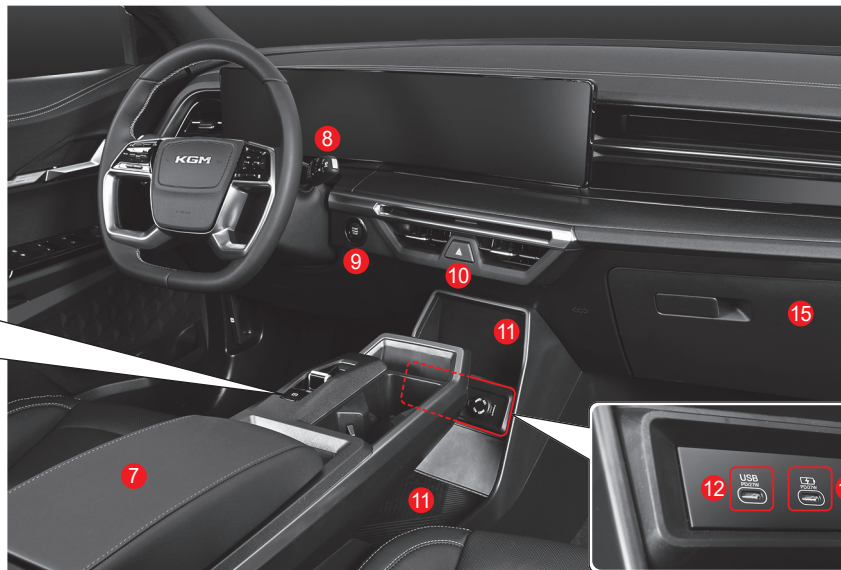
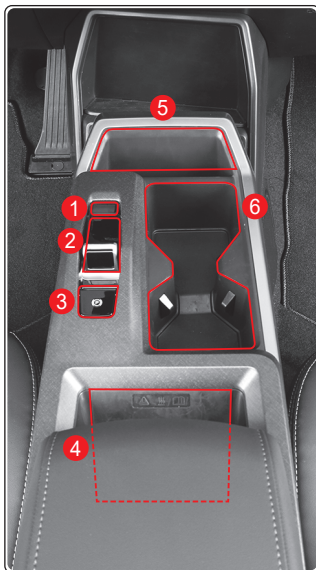
- 1 Sun visor 3-116
- 2 Overhead console assembly 3-79
 - Emergency call (SOS) 3-112
 - Sunroof control switch 3-30
 - Front room lamp 3-79
 - Rear room lamp 3-80
- 3 Inside rear view mirror 3-90
- 4 Hypervisor (HVC) panel 3-103
- 5 Mood lamp 3-81

- 6 Window dehumidifier switch 3-100
- 7 Glass heater switch 3-99
- 8 Steering wheel heating switch 3-108
- 9 Heater and A/C control switch 3-95
 - Seat Ventilation & Heating 3-16
- 10 Drive mode switch 4-112
- 11 Around view activation switch 4-134
- 12 Power tailgate switch 3-35
 - Opening tailgate in an emergency 3-40

- 13 AUTO HOLD switch 4-125
- 14 Front obstacle detection system ON/OFF switch 4-128
- 15 Battery Pre-conditioning 3-49
- 16 Hill descent control (HDC) switch 4-121
- 17 Electronic stability control (ESC) OFF switch 4-118
- 18 Interior illumination brightness 4-104
- 19 Headlamp angle switch 3-70



Right side of driver's seat (with center console)



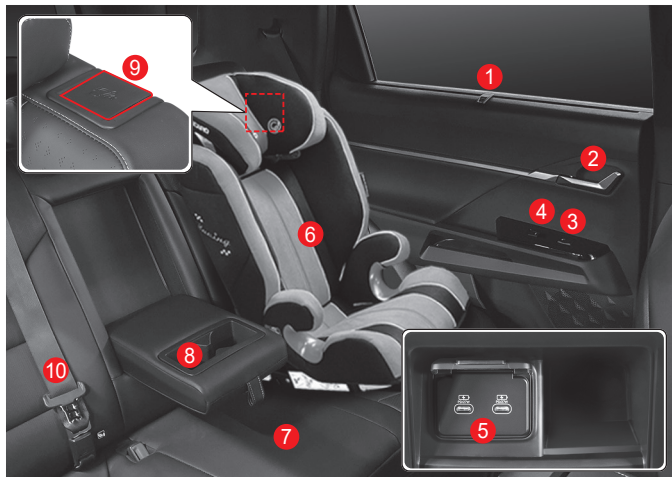
- ❶ P (park) button 4-107
- ❷ Electronic shift lever 4-105
- ❸ Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) 4-122
- ❹ Wireless phone charger system 3-122
- ❺ Cell phone cradle 3-119
- ❻ Front seat cup holder 3-119

- ❼ Front seat console storage bin 3-121
- ❽ Wiper and Washer Switch 3-87
- ❾ Ignition switch 4-2
 - Smart key 4-7
- ❿ Hazard warning flasher switch 3-70
- ⓫ Front storage bin 3-120
- ⓬ Multimedia jack 3-112

- ⓭ USB charging port (lower front of center console) 3-114
- ⓮ Power socket (lower front of center console) 3-115
- ⓯ Glove box 3-120

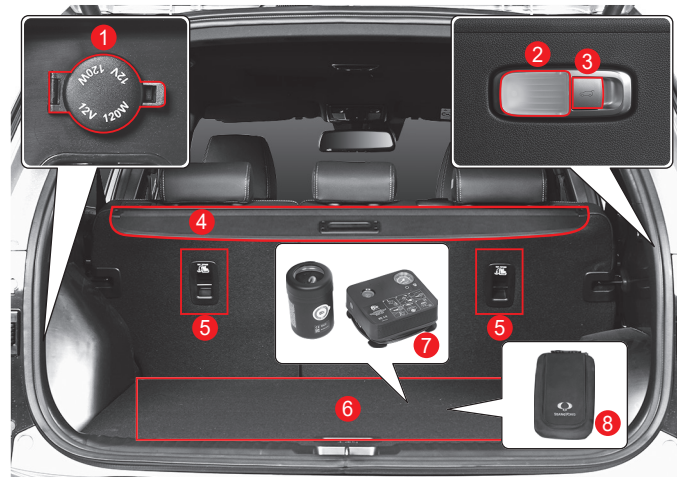


Rear seats



- ① Rear seat door roller blind 3-117
- ② Rear door opening lever 3-2
- ③ Rear seat warmer button 3-18
- ④ Rear seat window button 3-22
- ⑤ Center console rear USB charging port 3-114
- ⑥ Booster seats for infants and children 2-11
- ⑦ Rear seat 3-13
- ⑧ Rear seat cup holder and armrest 3-119
- ⑨ Rear seatback release lever 3-14
- ⑩ Rear seat belt 2-5

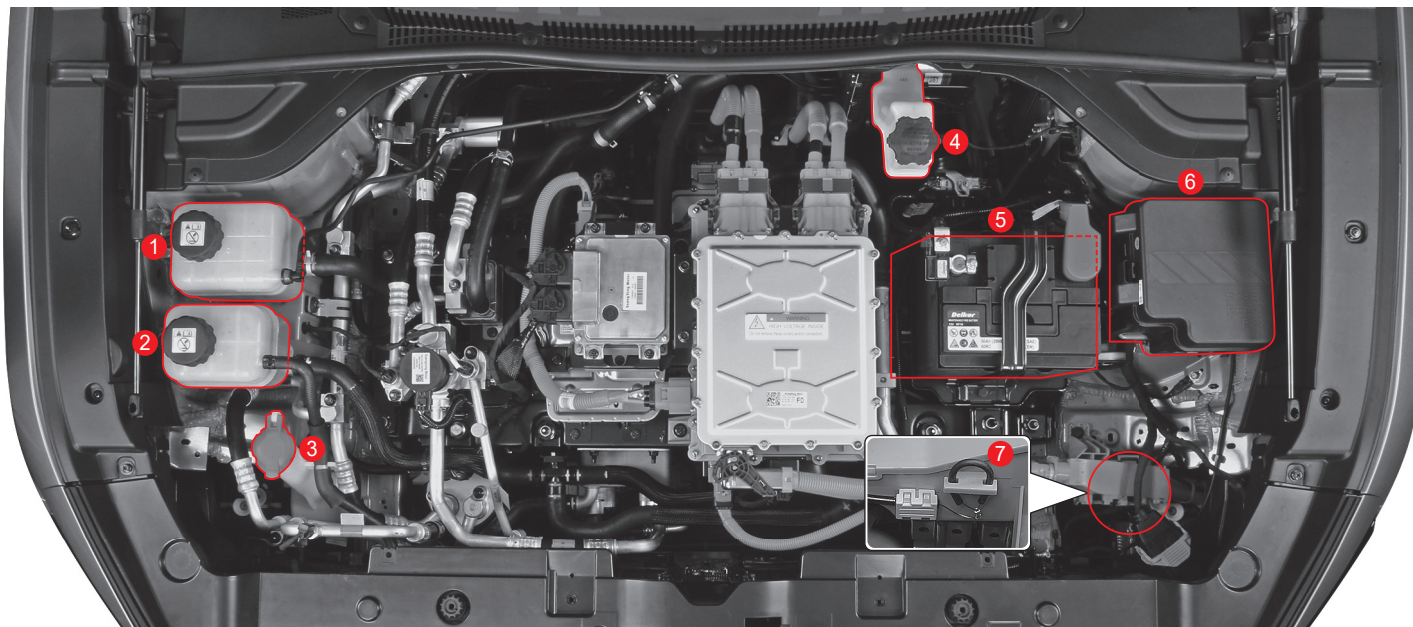
Luggage compartment



- ① Power socket (left side of luggage compartment) 3-115
- ② Luggage compartment lamp 3-78, 6-22
- ③ Tailgate switch (right side of luggage compartment) 3-36
- ④ Luggage upper cover 2-5
- ⑤ Rear seatback anchor lock 2-18
- ⑥ Luggage compartment 3-124
- ⑦ Service kit for tire repair 5-2
- ⑧ Portable charger



Motor room



- ❶ High-voltage battery and heater cabin coolant auxiliary tank 6-13
- ❷ Drive motor coolant auxiliary tank 6-13
- ❸ Washer fluid filler cap 6-15
 - WASHER FLUID 6-15

- ❹ Brake fluid reservoir 6-14
 - Checking brake fluid 6-14
- ❺ Low voltage (12 V) battery 6-16
 - Checking and replacing low-voltage (12 V) battery 6-16

- ❻ Motor room fuse and relay box 6-20
 - Checking and replacing fuse 6-21
- ❼ Removing charging plug in an emergency 3-47

Warning lights and indicators

Image	Meaning/Relevant page
	Seat belt warning lamp 2-2, 4-22
	Air bag warning lamp 2-20, 4-22
	TPMS warning light 2-29, 4-25
	Immobilizer/Smart key warning light 2-35, 4-26
	Charge warning light 4-22
	Electric power steering warning light 4-23
	Parking brake ON indicator 4-26, 4-113, 4-124
	ABS (Anti-Lock Brake System) warning light 4-24, 4-113, 4-116

Image	Meaning/Relevant page
	Brake system warning lamp (EBD system, regenerative braking system, BBC system) 4-25, 4-113, 4-117
	Electronic parking brake (EPB) warning lamp 4-26, 4-60, 4-122
AUTO HOLD	AUTO HOLD indicator/ warning light 4-30, 4-61, 4-125
	Steering wheel heater indicator 3-108, 4-25
	Electronic stability control system (ESC) ON indicator/ warning light 4-24, 4-118
	ESC OFF indicator 4-24, 4-119
	Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) warning light 4-27, 4-61, 4-139
AEBS OFF	AEBS OFF indicator 4-27, 4-138

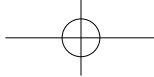
Image	Meaning/Relevant page
	HDC ON indicator/ warning light 4-23, 4-66, 4-121
	LKAS indicator/warning lamp • Lane departure warning (LDW) 4-31, 4-146 • Lane keeping assistance (LKA) 4-31, 4-151
	Centering lane keeping assist indicator / warning lamp 4-31, 4-156
	Automatic Lane Change (ALC) indicator 4-35
	SHB indicator 3-73, 4-30
	High beam indicator 3-74, 4-31
	Turn signal/hazard warning lamp 3-70, 4-27



Image	Meaning/Relevant page
	Rear fog lamp ON indicator 4-28
	Motor room open warning lamp 3-42, 4-34
	Door ajar warning lamp 4-34
	Master symbol 4-35
	Smart tailgate 3-39, 4-35
COMFORT	COMFORT mode indicator 4-28, 4-112
SPORT	SPORT mode indicator 4-29, 4-112
ECO	ECO mode indicator 4-29, 4-112

Image	Meaning/Relevant page
WINTER	WINTER mode indicator 4-29, 4-112
	Driver Attention Alert (DAW) warning lamp 4-36
	Driver Attention Alert (DAW) failure warning lamp 4-36
	Ready lamp 4-32
	Virtual engine sound system (VESS) OFF indicator 4-34
	Check EV battery warning lamp 4-33
	Low EV battery level warning lamp 4-33
	Charging status indicator ... 4-33

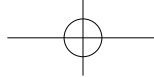
Image	Meaning/Relevant page
	Power down warning lamp 4-32
	High-voltage system warning lamp 4-32
	Headlamp angle indicator 4-36



1. Vehicle Information and Safety Precautions

You can check helpful information for driving and managing the vehicle safely and conveniently.

Information regarding the vehicle identification, specifications, check points before driving the vehicle, safety precautions while driving, and vehicle maintenance methods is provided.



Information regarding the installation of ADR and provision of information

Installation of ADR (Accident Data Recorder) and provision of information

This vehicle has an ADR (Accident Data Recorder).

The ADR (Accident Data Recorder) is a device that can record and check the driving information of the vehicle (vehicle speed and operation status of brake pedal and acceleration pedal, etc.) for a certain period of time before and after an accident, such as a car crash.

The ADR (Accident Data Recorder) helps to better understand an accident situation.



Precautions for potentially hazardous seat belt related goods



Warning

When potentially hazardous seat belt related goods are used, the safety of passengers will be seriously endangered. Never use these goods.

1

Do not use the clip to disable the seat belt alarm



When this clip is inserted into the seat belt buckle, the seat belt is recognized as fastened, so the seat belt warning lamp and alarm are not activated.

This leads to no fastening of the seat belt, and it is very dangerous when an accident occurs.

Do not use the seat belt stopper



When it is installed on the seat belt, it hinders the normal automatic locking function of the retractor and lowers the performance of the seat belt.

Do not use playroom mat



When it is installed in the rear seat, it will lead to not fastening seat belts and car seats, and it is very dangerous when an accident occurs.



Precautions for the reduction of non-crash incidents



Warning

A part of your body may get stuck or hit and get seriously injured when opening and closing the doors. Caution should be taken.



- When you open and close the doors, a part of your body such as your finger or head may get stuck or hit and get seriously injured. Open and close the doors after ensuring that no part of your body is stuck or hit.



- When you open or close the trunk (tail gate), a part of your body such as your finger or head may get stuck or hit and get injured. Open or close the trunk after ensuring safety.
- The trunk (tail gate) is raised or lowered automatically at below or over a certain level. Always take caution to avoid your face or head from getting hit or your hand from getting stuck.



- Close the windows after checking that other passengers' hands or heads are away from the windows. This is especially important for children, who may get a serious injury, such as suffocation if their head gets stuck.
- When you pull the switch continuously to raise the window at a position where something is pinched first without operating the one touch auto close function, the anti-pinch function will not operate.
- Especially when a part of a child's body is on the window, a certain amount of force (resistance) is not applied to the window, so the anti-pinch function may not operate. Make sure to check before closing the windows.



Cautions for the protection of the environment

KG Mobility Corporation environment-related policies aim at comprehensive protection of the environment. This is also a way to save natural resources that become the basis of human survival on earth, and meet and harmonize the demands of nature and mankind.

You can contribute to the protection of the environment by operating our vehicle in an eco-friendly way.

High-voltage battery consumption, decelerator control, brake and tire wear are affected by driving conditions and driving style.

Observe the following content and participate in the protection of the environment.

Economical driving

High-voltage battery power consumption and tire wear are affected by driving conditions and driving style. Reduce charging and repair costs by following driving conditions and practicing good driving habits.

Driving conditions

- Avoid short-distance driving as high-voltage battery consumption is relatively high.
- Always check if the tire inflation pressure is appropriate.
- Unload unnecessary goods from the luggage compartment.
- Always check high-voltage battery consumption.
- Have your vehicle checked periodically.
- Do not drive with the windows open when traveling at high speeds. Depending on air resistance and heating/cooling settings, high-voltage battery consumption can increase.
- Reduce your speed in windy conditions where you may encounter air resistance (crosswinds, tailwinds).
- If road conditions are poor, avoid from traveling on those roads.
(Driving on unpaved roads, etc. can cause damage to the high-voltage battery and lower components).

Driving habits

- Do not depress the accelerator pedal when starting the vehicle.
- Drive off in the vehicle slowly.
- Keep a safe distance with the vehicle ahead and drive carefully.
- Avoid frequent acceleration or deceleration.
- Avoid sudden acceleration, deceleration, or stops.
- Turn off the motor when you stop the vehicle for a long time.
- Drive safely at economic speeds.
- Use air conditioner and heater only when needed.
- Drive carefully, maintaining a safe distance from the car in front of you to avoid sudden stop lights (this can reduce high-voltage battery power usage and reduce brake pad light wear).
- Do not drive with your foot on the brake pedal. This results in increased high-voltage battery drain and wear and tear on brake pads, etc.

Recycling

- Information about eco-friendly product development and vehicle recycling can be found on the KG Mobility Corporation website www.kg-mobility.com/en

1



Emergency measures in case of emergency

To change P (park) position

In an emergency, change the P (park) position as follows:

- 1 Depress and hold the brake pedal with the vehicle in full stop.
- 2 Press the P (park) button.



Warning

- Do not move to the P (park) position unless the vehicle is stationary.
- Do not attempt to place the shift lever in the P position instead of applying the parking brake.

Notice

- If the ignition switch is turned off in a position other than P (park), the shift lever automatically moves to the P (park) position.

Double parking (N parking)

If you need to double-park (second row park) due to lack of parking space, operate as follows:

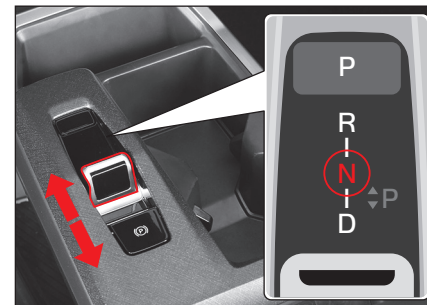
- 1 Release AUTO HOLD with the engine started.
- 2 Press the ignition switch to turn the ignition off.
- 3 Press the ignition switch twice without depressing the brake pedal. (turn the ignition switch on with the engine not started)

Notice

- If the AUTO HOLD is activated, the EPB operates automatically when the ignition is turned off, so be sure to press the AUTO HOLD switch to deactivate the function.

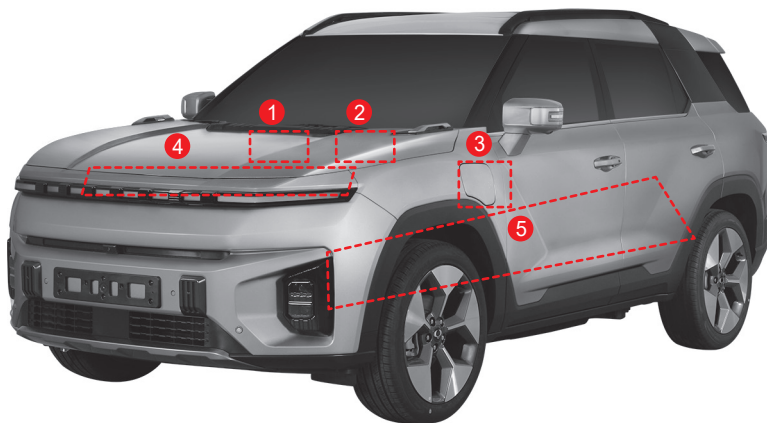
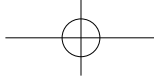
- 4 Briefly push the electronic shift lever in either N (forward) or D (reverse) position to confirm N (Neutral) while depressing the brake pedal, then turn off the engine.

(Entering N position disengages the electronic parking brake (EPB)).



Warning

- Double-parking (second row parking) must be done on a level surface with no slope, and additional safety measures must be taken, such as installing chocks on the vehicle's wheels. Otherwise, the vehicle could roll, creating a very dangerous situation.
- When using an automatic car washer, etc. in double parking mode, i.e. with the gear selector lever in the N (neutral) position, never press the P (park) button. If you drive the vehicle into a car wash with the gear selector lever in the P (parking) position, problems may occur in your vehicle, automatic car washer and etc.



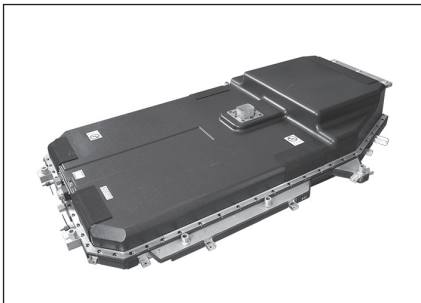
- ❶ Drive motor
- ❷ Low voltage (12V) battery
- ❸ Vehicle charging inlet
- ❹ Orange high voltage electric wiring
- ❺ High voltage battery

Electric vehicle means a vehicle that drives a driving motor using power from a high voltage battery and operates in a similar manner to the vehicle with an internal combustion engine. The basic difference is that it uses electrical energy instead of fossil fuels, and it is an eco-friendly vehicle without emissions.

1



High voltage (drive) battery



- The remaining level of the high voltage (drive) battery may gradually decrease even if the vehicle is not driven.
- Storing the vehicle in a high or low ambient temperature may reduce the capacity of the high voltage (drive) battery.
- The driving range may be shorter depending on driving conditions (e.g. driving on hills and rapid acceleration).
- The driving range may be shorter when cooling or heating the interior of the vehicle while using power from the high voltage (drive) battery. Always keep the vehicle's interior temperature at an appropriate level.
- Depending on the age of the vehicle, natural deterioration of the high voltage (drive) battery may occur, reducing the driving range.

- If the charging capacity and driving range continue to decrease, have the system checked and serviced by a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.
- If the vehicle is not in service for a long period of time, charge the high voltage (drive) battery about once every three months to prevent it from being discharged.
- To keep the high voltage (drive) battery in optimum condition, it is recommended to charge it to 100% with a slow charge.



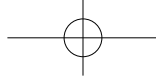
Caution

- **Be sure to use the specified charger when charging the high voltage (drive) battery. Otherwise, it may lead to electric vehicle failure and adversely affect battery performance (durability).**
- **Never let the high voltage (drive) battery charging gauge go down to the low level. It may damage the high voltage (drive) battery or reduce its capacity.**
- **In the event of a collision that can cause a major impact on the vehicle, have the battery connection checked and serviced at KG Mobility Dealer or KG Mobility Authorized Service Operation.**

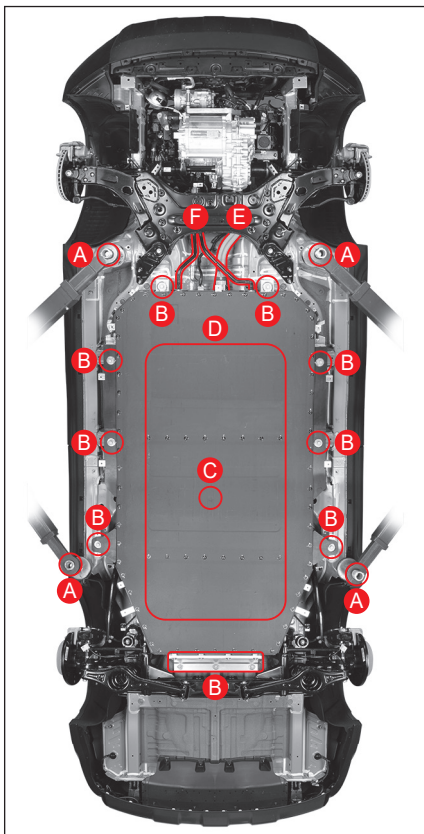
Battery information

Manufacturer Information	
Manufacturer name	Xiangyang FinDreams Battery Co., Ltd.
Trade mark	FinDreams
Postal address	No.1 Industrial Avenue, Shenzhen Industrial Park, Xiangyang High-tech Zone, Xiangyang, Hubei Province, P.R.China
Web	https://www.fdbatt.com

Importer Information	
Importer name	KG Mobility Corp.
Trade mark	KGM
Postal address	455-12 Dongsakro, Pyeongtaek City, Gyeonggi Province, Korea
Web	https://en.kg-mobility.com



Lift and mounting points



- A** Vehicle lift points
- B** High voltage battery mounting points
- C** Center of gravity of high voltage battery
- D** High voltage battery lift points
- E** High voltage cable
- F** Coolant in/out

Stationary vehicle (OFF)

You can turn off the vehicle with the SBW (shift by wire) in the P (park) position and the brake pedal depressed.

1

To turn ignition off

- 1 Allow the vehicle to come to a full stop and depress and hold the brake pedal.
- 2 Place the electronic shift lever in the P (park) position.
- 3 Activate the EPB.
- 4 Press the START switch to turn off the ignition.
- 5 When the ignition is turned off, release your foot from the brake pedal.

Before exiting the vehicle, make sure that the ignition is turned off and that there are no other abnormalities, and get off with the smart key.



To turn ignition off while driving (in case of emergency)

If you need to turn off the ignition in an emergency situation such as an accident or vehicle damage while driving, press and hold the START switch for at least 3 seconds or press 3 times within 1.5 seconds.

The ignition will be switched off and the START switch enter the ACC state.

Warning

- Never turn off the ignition while driving unless it is an emergency, such as an accident or damage to the vehicle. It can be very dangerous as the steering wheel becomes difficult to maneuver and the braking performance of the brake decreases.

Notice

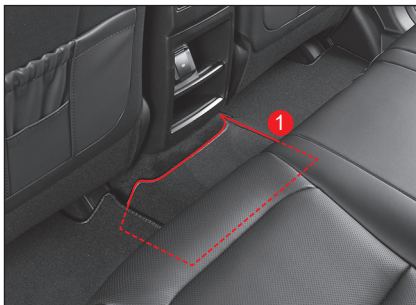
- If the vehicle is still driving with the ignition turned off, the electric shift lever in the N (neutral) position can be re-started by pressing the START switch without depressing the brake pedal.

To cutoff power from high voltage battery

Safety plug

The safety plug is installed at the bottom of the rear seat to shut off high voltage battery power. Remove the safety plug only in situations such as maintenance or emergencies.

- 1 Remove the rear seat center floor mat (1).



Warning

- The safety plug is a device for cutting off power the high voltage battery. Be sure to wear insulation suit and insulated gloves when removing the safety plug, as there may be risks such as electric shock.

Warning

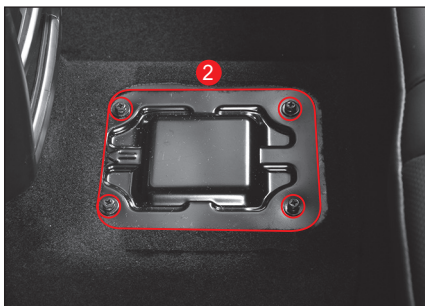
- The MSD (safety) plug is a device for physically disconnecting high-voltage (drive) battery power at our service center when your vehicle is being serviced. Never touch the MSD (safety) plug, as mishandling can cause hazards such as electric shock.
- In the event of an emergency (accident and fire), quickly disconnect high-voltage (drive) battery power by tripping or removing the safety interlock fuse in the motor room fuse box.

Notice

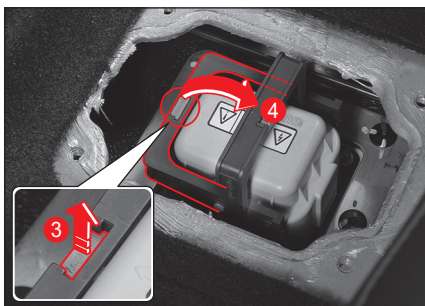
- To remove floor mat at VAN, follow the next process.
 1. Remove the mat.
 2. Remove the heavy flooring.
 3. Remove the safety plug (MSD) mat cover.



- 2 Unscrew the safety plug fixing cover (2) bolts (10 mm, 4 EA) and remove the fixing cover.



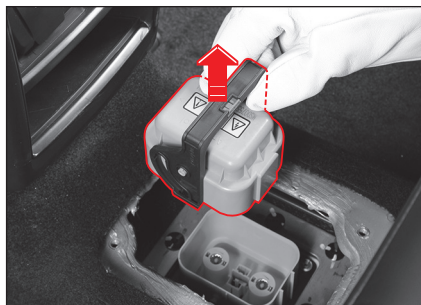
- 3 Pull the MSD (safety) plug fastener (3) in the direction of the arrow, and then pull the MSD (safety) plug handle in the direction of the arrow (4).



Notice

- Pulling the safety plug handle to the center part separates the safety plug connector part.

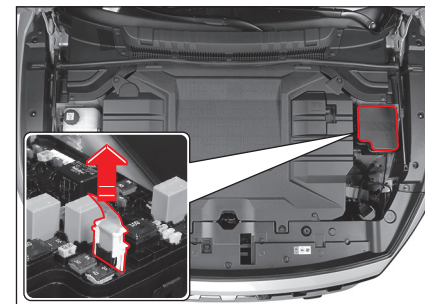
- 4 Lift the safety plug in the direction of the arrow to disconnect it from the vehicle.



Safety interlock connector

The motor room has a safety interlock connector for cutting off power from the high voltage battery in an emergency. Follow the appropriate procedure to cut the safety interlock connector wiring.

- 1 When you open the motor room fuse box, you will see the safety interlock fuse. Pull the corresponding fuse in the direction of the arrow to detach or remove it.



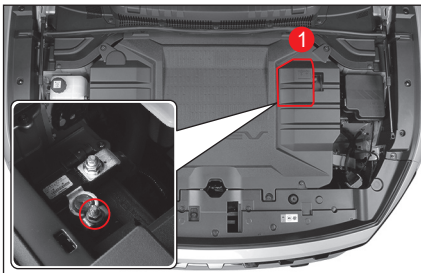
Warning

- Never cut the wiring unless it is an emergency. This will disconnect power from the high voltage battery, preventing the vehicle from starting.



To cutoff power from low voltage (12 V) battery

- 1 When you open the motor room, you will find the low-voltage (12V) battery cover (1). Remove the battery cover.
- 2 Unscrew the mounting bolt (10 mm) for the low battery (12 V) battery (-) terminal to remove the (-) terminal.



Specifications	MF / 12V – 50 Ah
Capacity	50 Ah

! Warning

- Before removing the low voltage battery, stop at a safe place to protect the low voltage system and prevent unnecessary illumination of the warning lamp and remove the battery with the ignition completely turned off (ACC OFF).

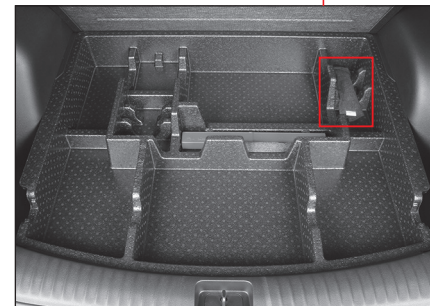
OVM tools

The OVM tools are apparatuses or tools stored in the vehicle in preparation for a failure or an emergency situation that can occur while driving the vehicle.



- 1 Sealant (Emergency sealing compound in case of a flat tire)
- 2 Compressor (managing the tire pressure and injecting sealant in case of a flat tire)
- 3 Spanner
- 4 Screwdriver (+ and -)
- 5 Vehicle towing hook
- 6 Tool roll pouch

Location where the OVM tools are stored



The OVM tools are stored in the storage box at the rear left side of the luggage compartment. Take out and use the OVM tools any time when necessary.

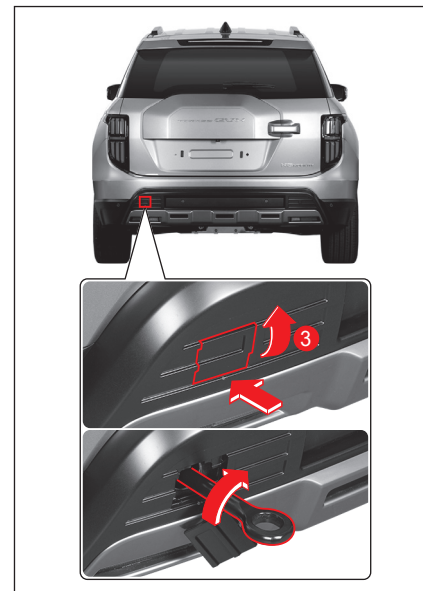
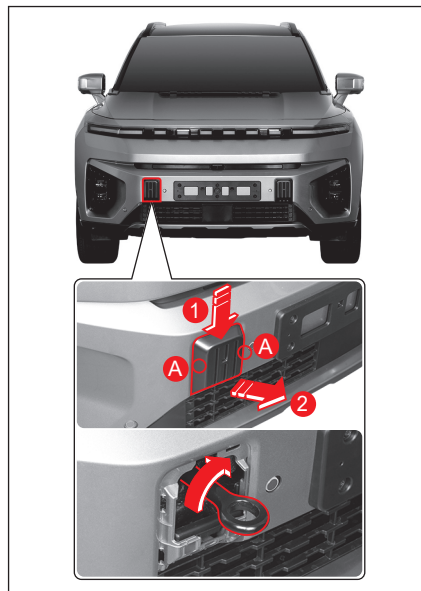


When towing truck unavailable (in an emergency)

If a towing truck is unavailable and a vehicle is to be towed, you can tow the towed vehicle by attaching the towing hooks to the towing vehicle and the towed vehicle and connecting the two vehicles with a rope (sold separately).

To fit towing hook

- 1 Take the vehicle towing hook out of the on-vehicle material (OVM) at the bottom of the cargo compartment board.
- 2 For front bumper:
While pressing the top of the hole cover on the front bumper of the vehicle to be towed in the direction of arrow (1), grasp the side of the hole cover (A) and pull in the direction of arrow (2) to remove the cover.
- 3 For rear bumper:
Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow (3) from the bottom portion of the hole cover on the rear bumper of the vehicle to be towed.
- 4 Fasten the towing hook firmly by inserting it into each hole.

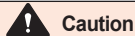


1



Cautions for using battery

High-voltage battery-related precautions that users should be aware of when driving and storing their vehicles are as follows:



Caution

- Keep the high-voltage battery charger gauge from dropping below 30%. Prolonged storage of a vehicle with a low charge may cause damage to the battery or the battery capacity may degrade and require a battery replacement.
- If your vehicle has suffered a major impact due to a collision or accident, have the battery connection checked at a KGM service center.
- Vehicle-to-load (V2L) feature uses energy from the high-voltage battery, so using this feature reduces the vehicle's range. Frequent use of V2L feature can shorten the life of high-voltage battery.
- Frequent fast charging can shorten the life of a high-voltage battery.
- The remaining level of the high voltage battery may gradually decrease even if the vehicle is not driven.
- Storing your vehicle at the highest or lowest temperatures can degrade high-voltage battery performance.



Caution

- Range and power vary depending on driving conditions, such as ambient temperature. During high-speed or uphill driving, the high-voltage battery may consume more electricity than during normal driving, resulting in a shorter range.
- Heating and cooling functions use high-voltage battery power, so using the heater or air conditioner will reduce range. Maintain an optimal temperature when using the heating and cooling features.
- When a vehicle is used for a long period of time, the high-voltage battery will naturally deteriorate, reducing its range. If the battery charge and the vehicle's driving range are consistently decreasing, have your vehicle checked at a KGM service center.
- To prevent the high-voltage battery from discharging if the vehicle is not used for an extended period of time, charge the vehicle approximately once every three months. If the battery charge level is low, charge the battery before storing the vehicle.
- To keep your battery in optimal condition, use a slow charge. Charging your battery to 100% when the charge level is 30% or less will keep your battery performing optimally (charging at least once a month recommended).

Emergency measure in case of accidents and vehicle fires

What to do in case of accident or failure

In the event of an accident or failure, take the following actions while considering your safety:

- 1 Quickly turn on the hazard flasher and move the vehicle to the shoulder.
- 2 Install a warning triangle in the back of your vehicle.
- 3 Driver and passenger(s) should evacuate to a safe area, such as outside a guardrail.
- 4 Keep people away from the incident location.
- 5 Contact the police or fire department for assistance.



Warning

If a high-voltage battery is damaged in an accident, it can leak gases and electrolytes that are harmful to humans.

- Be careful not to let leaked liquids touch your skin.
- If combustible and toxic gas leaks are suspected, open windows to ventilate and evacuate to a safe place.
- If a leaked liquid enters the eye or comes into contact with the skin, immediately flush the area with running or salt water and consult a doctor.

In case of vehicle fire

Immediately pull over to a safe place, turn off the engine, and extinguish the fire with a fire extinguisher. If you're in a situation where you can't take first aid measures, such as extinguishing the fire, keep people away and contact the fire and police departments to take necessary action.

For your safety, always keep a fire extinguisher in your vehicle. Fire extinguishers are available from a fire-fighting equipment store.

Notice

- Familiarize yourself with the location and use of fire extinguishers at ordinary times so that you can take quick action in the event of a fire. To ensure that your fire extinguisher performs optimally, follow the maintenance instructions and check it regularly. See the notice attached to the fire extinguisher for instructions and precautions for it.

Notice

- How to use fire extinguishers

- 1 Remove the safety pin from the fire extinguisher.
- 2 Stand with your back against the wind.
- 3 While holding the lever firmly, sweep it in a broomstick motion toward the fire.



Caution

- In the event of a fire, quickly evacuate to a safe area and wait for rescue party to arrive.
- If a high-voltage battery under the vehicle catches fire, a large amount of water must be continuously supplied for a long period of time to completely extinguish the fire. Extinguishing is difficult if you don't use enough water or a fire extinguisher suitable for extinguishing. Do not approach the vehicle haphazardly. Accidents, such as electric shock, can result in personal injury.

1



Warning

- In the event of a vehicle accident, move the vehicle to a safe location and disconnect the high-voltage disconnect switch and the auxiliary battery (12 V) terminal after powering off the vehicle to prevent high-voltage electrical leakage.
- In the event of a vehicle fire, always extinguish the fire using a powder fire extinguisher dedicated to the electric fire. Using a small amount of water or an improper fire extinguisher may result in injury from electrical shock. If the fire cannot be extinguished quickly, the high-voltage battery may heat up and explode, so evacuate to a safe place and keep people away from it. Contact emergency agencies, such as the fire stations, to notify them that your EV is on fire and get them to take action.
- In the event of a vehicle accident, the drive (high voltage) battery may be damaged, resulting in leakage of gases and electrolytes harmful to the human body. Be careful not to let leaked liquids touch your skin. If combustible and toxic gas leaks are suspected, open windows to ventilate and evacuate to a safe place. If a leaked liquid enters the eye or comes into contact with the skin, immediately flush the area with running or salt water and consult a doctor.

Warning

- If there are exposed wires inside or outside the vehicle, do not touch them. In addition, do not touch high voltage wires (orange) and connectors and all electrical components and devices. Failure to do so may result in electrical shock.
- If your vehicle is flooded, power it off immediately, evacuate to a safe location, contact emergency authorities such as the fire station and our authorized service center for assistance.
- If a fire has spread to the high-voltage battery, it is advisable to have the vehicle moved and towed alongside a fire truck, as a secondary fire may occur.

High-voltage battery damage and fluid leaks

If electrolyte solution leakage, or any damage to the lithium-ion battery casing is observed, the first responders should attempt to neutralise the battery by applying a large volume of water to the battery pack while wearing appropriate Personal Protective Equipment (PPE). The neutralisation process helps stabilise the thermal condition of the battery pack but does not discharge the battery.

- Do not put any smoke, spark, flame around the vehicle.
- Do not touch or step on the spilled electrolyte.
- If an electrolyte leak occurs, wear appropriate solvent resistant PPE and use soil, sand, or a dry cloth to clean up the spilled electrolyte. Be sure to adequately ventilate the area.



Electrolyte irritation



Caution

The high-voltage battery contains electrolyte solution. To avoid exposure to electrolyte solution and serious personal injury, always wear appropriate solvent resistant PPE (Personal Protective Equipment) and SCBA (Self-Contained Breathing Apparatus).

- Electrolyte solution is an eye irritant. In the event of contact with eyes, rinse with plenty of water for 15 minutes.
- Electrolyte solution is a skin irritant. Therefore, in the event of contact with skin, wash off with a soap.
- Electrolyte liquid or fumes coming into contact with water will create vapours in the air from oxidization. These vapours may irritate skin and eyes. In the event of contact with vapours, rinse with plenty of water and consult a doctor immediately.
- Electrolyte fumes (when inhaled) can cause respiratory irritation and acute intoxication. Inhale fresh air and wash mouth with water. Consult a doctor immediately.

High-voltage battery re-ignition by stranded energy

Damaged cells in the high-voltage battery can experience thermal runaway* and re-ignition. To prevent re-ignition, the first responder and second responder need to be aware of the risk of stranded energy* which remains in the damaged cells and lead to re-ignition.

*Thermal runaway: The originating cause of thermal runaway is generally short-circuiting inside a battery cell and a resulting increase in the cell's internal temperature. Battery produces heat with thermal runaway, and it can spread from one battery cell to many cells, in a domino effect.

*Stranded energy: Energy remains inside any undamaged battery cells after the accident. That stranded energy can cause a high-voltage battery to reignite multiple times after firefighters handle a fire.

How to prevent re-ignition (Mitigating stranded energy risk)

Use a thermal imaging camera to ensure the high-voltage battery is completely cooled before leaving the incident. Always advise second responders that there is a risk of the battery re-igniting.

1. 12V battery terminal disconnection
2. High-voltage shut off
3. Discharging the high-voltage battery

1



In case of EV flooding

If your EV is flooded while driving, take the following actions:

- Turn off the vehicle immediately, take the key with you, and evacuate to a safe place.
- Contact the police or fire department and notify that your EV has been flooded.



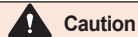
Warning

- **Do not touch a flooded electric vehicle. High-voltage battery can cause accidents such as electric shock or fire.**

Submerged or partially submerged vehicles

Some emergency responses can involve a submerged vehicle. A TORRES EVX that is submerged does not have high-voltage components on the vehicle's body or framework. It is safe to touch the vehicle's body or framework if there is no severe damage to the vehicle, whether it is in water or on land.

In the event the vehicle is submerged or partially submerged, remove the vehicle from the water before attempting to disable the vehicle. Drain the water from the vehicle.



Caution

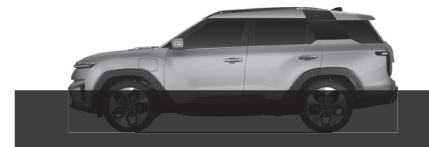
- **If severe damage causes high-voltage components to become exposed, responders should take appropriate precautions and wear appropriate insulated personal protective equipment.**
- **Do not attempt to remove a safety plug while the vehicle is in water.**

Failure to follow these instructions can lead to death or serious injury by electrocution.

Storage of damaged vehicle with the damaged battery

- Drain fluids and water, then disconnect the negative (-) terminal of the 12V battery before storing a damaged vehicle.
- Place the vehicle in an open space away from any structure, vehicle, or building.
- Then, keep on eye on the vehicle until the discharging procedures are completed.
- If the battery can be removed from the vehicle by moving the vehicle on the lift, remove and discharge the battery.
- If the battery can't be removed, set the water pool and pouring water until the entire battery is submerged (water pool condition: 2% salt water).
- Wait for at least 3 days in salt water.
- If the high-voltage battery cannot be removed or the vehicle cannot be flooded, store the vehicle with waterproof cover.

Waterproof cover: size/material that can prevent water from entering the battery.



Battery discharging



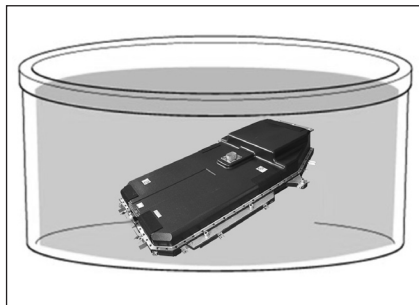
Battery storage

- To store the damaged battery safely, the battery must be discharged.
- If the battery can be removed from the vehicle, discharge the battery to prevent re-ignition.
- Place the battery into a sufficiently large container and add water until the battery is completely submerged.
- Add enough salt to the water container to create a 2% saltwater solution.
- Leave the battery submerged in the saltwater solution for 3 days.
- Remove the battery from the saltwater solution and dry it.



Caution

- Extinguish all smoke, spark, flame around the vehicle.
- Electrolyte solution is a skin irritant.
- Do not touch or step on the spilled electrolyte.
- If an electrolyte leak occurs, wear appropriate solvent resistant PPE and use soil, sand, or a dry cloth to clean up the spilled electrolyte. Be sure to adequately ventilate the area.



Other cautions regarding EV accidents



Caution

- Take extra care with electrical safety. High voltage leakage can cause electric shock.
- If the vehicle is repaired, painted, and heat-treated at high temperatures after a vehicle accident, etc., the performance of the drive battery may be deteriorated. If your vehicle requires high-temperature heat treatment, please contact KGM Authorized Service Center.
- Do not install non-genuine parts or parts that have been tampered with. It may damage the vehicle's electric power system.

1



Cautions

Warning

Please observe the following:



Warning

In the event of an impact on underside of vehicle or such an accident

Any impact on the underside of the vehicle or such an accident (e.g. contact with signs, sidewalks, or street furniture) may result in electrical circuit or battery damage. Have your vehicle checked at KG Mobility Dealer or KG Mobility Authorized Service Operation.

Never touch orange wiring and 400 volts electrical components exposed to the inside or outside of the vehicle.

If the battery is critically damaged, a temporary leak may occur.

- Never touch liquids flowing out of the battery.
- If battery fluid is on your body, flush it with plenty of water and seek medical attention as soon as possible.

When there is, even if minor, an impact or accident on the charging outlet cap or valve, visit KG Mobility Dealer or KG Mobility Authorized Service Operation immediately for service.



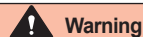
Warning

In case of fire

In the event of a fire, exit the vehicle immediately and call for emergency assistance, explaining well that the situation occurred in an electric vehicle.

The fire extinguishers that can be used in electrical system fires are ABC type (for general fires / oil fires / electric fires), BC type (for oil and electric fires), and C type (for electric fires). Do not use water or other extinguishing substances.

In the event of damage to the electrical circuit, consult KG Mobility Dealer or KG Mobility Authorized Service Operation.



Warning

Towing

Refer to Chapter 5 "Towing: Towing Point - Towing Type" and "Towing: Method".



Warning

Vehicle washing

Never wash electric motor, charging inlets or drive battery. There is a risk of damage to the vehicle's electrical circuits.

Never wash your vehicle while charging it. There is a risk of personal injury or damage to the electrical equipment.



Certification

1. Tire pressure monitoring system

CE	Hereby, KG Mobility, declares that the in-vehicle mounted radio systems are in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC	EU
FCC	Model: TSSSG4G5 and TSSRE4Db FCC ID: OYGTSSRE4DB ORD. No: 14778/DFRS19614/F-50 This device complies with Part 15 of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.  Warning Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.	AMERICA
CU TR	LOGO    Certificate in the user manual due to product size Tire Pressure Monitoring System Model: TSSRE4Db The device passed all the conformity assessment procedures to CU TR.  EAC mark in the user manual due to product size.	CIS

1



2. FOB/FOLDING

FCC	FCC ID: DEO-MT-FLIP01 This device complies with Part 15 of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.  Warning • Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.	AMERICA
TR	LOGO  Certificate in the user manual due to product size	CIS

3. Compressor, Jack

CE	LOGO  (1) Description Model: CE certified parts (2) Representative: KG Mobility European Parts Center B.V. (3) Address: IABC 5253&5254, 4814RD Breda, The Netherlands	EU
UKCA	LOGO  (1) Description Model: UKCA certified parts (2) Importer: KG Mobility UK Ltd (3) Address: G Offices, Parsonage Road, Stratton St. Margaret, Swindon, Wiltshire SN3 4RN	UK

Vehicle identification

The identification numbers including the vehicle are the unique information of the vehicle. If you know this information, it is very convenient for making inquiries about the vehicle or placing an order for a component or accessory.

Manufacturer's plate

The manufacturer's plate includes information including the vehicle identification number, tire inflation pressure, vehicle weight, and color necessary for maintaining the vehicle properly.

TYPE A

KG Mobility Corp.	
kg	kg
1-	2-
kg	kg
KG Mobility Europe Parts Center B.V.	
Contact address : 180C 5251, 401400 Breda, The Netherlands	

TYPE B

KG Mobility Corp.	
kg	kg
1-	2-
kg	kg
KG Mobility Europe Parts Center B.V.	
Contact address : 180C 5251, 401400 Breda, The Netherlands	

TYPE C

KG Mobility Corp.	
kg	kg
1-	2-
kg	kg
KG Mobility Europe Parts Center B.V.	
Contact address : 180C 5251, 401400 Breda, The Netherlands	

TYPE D

KG Mobility Corp.	
kg	kg
1-	2-
kg	kg
KG Mobility Europe Parts Center B.V.	
Contact address : 180C 5251, 401400 Breda, The Netherlands	

TYPE E

KG Mobility Corp.	
kg	kg
1-	2-
kg	kg
KG Mobility Europe Parts Center B.V.	
Contact address : 180C 5251, 401400 Breda, The Netherlands	

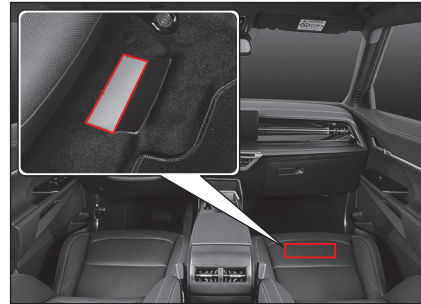
TYPE F

KG Mobility Corp.	
kg	kg
1-	2-
kg	kg
KG Mobility Europe Parts Center B.V.	
Contact address : 180C 5251, 401400 Breda, The Netherlands	

The certification label is attached to the driver's door sill (B pillar).

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the identification number that includes vehicle model, manufacturing country and manufacturing year.



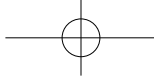
It is engraved on the front RH seat mounting member.

Visual Vin Label



The VIN is stamped on top of the instrument panel.

1



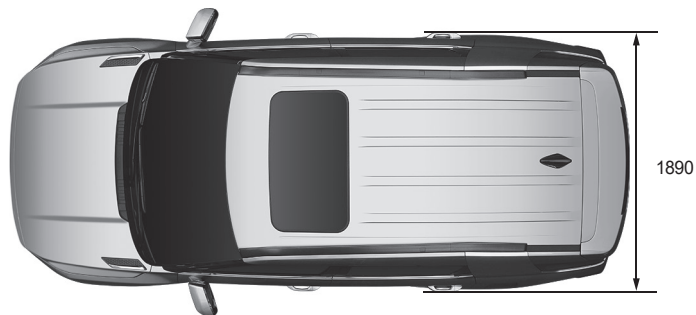
Dimensions

Unit: mm

Front



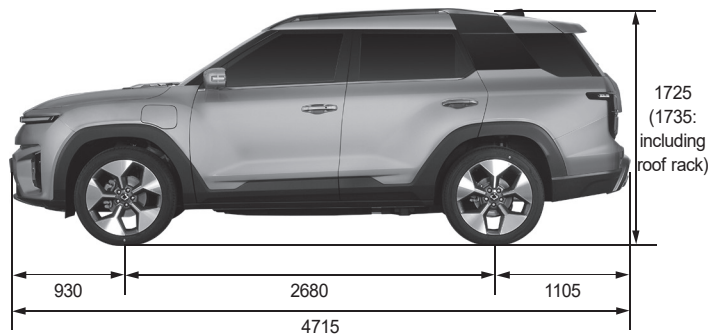
Top



Rear



Side



* (): Optional

SPECIFICATIONS

[] General

* () Optional

Descriptions			Specifications	
			5-seaters	2-seater VAN
General	Overall length (mm)		4715	←
	Overall width (mm)		1890	←
	Overall height (mm)		1725 (1735: including roof rack)	←
	Gross vehicle weight (kg)		2435 [2440]	2435 [2435]
	Curb vehicle weight (kg)		2012 [2015]	2002 [2005]
Motor	Max. power		152.2kW	←
Power Steering	Type		EPS	←
	Steering angle	Inner	37.72	←
		Outer	31.82	←
Brake	Master cylinder type		Tandem type	←
	Motor type		BLAC (Brushless AC)	←
	Brake type	Front wheel	Disc	←
		Rear wheel	Disc	←
	Parking brake		EPB	←
Suspension	Front suspension		Macpherson	←
	Rear suspension		Multi link	←
Air Conditioner	Refrigerant (capacity)	H/P	R-1234yf (800 ± 30g), R134a (900 ± 30g)	←
		Non H/P	R-1234yf (600 ± 30g), R134a (650 ± 30g)	←
Electrical	HV Battery Capacity (V-kw)		371.2 - 80.66	←
	Low Battery Capacity (V-AH)		MF / 12 - 50	←
	High-voltage battery cell form		Square	←
	Key raw materials for high-voltage battery cells		Lithium iron phosphate (LFP)	←

* () Options, vehicle weights and gross weights are based on the maximum values and they depend on vehicle options and specifications.



Descriptions		Specifications	Remark
Battery	Rated capacity (in Ah)	217.3Ah	RT 1/3C BOL
	capacity fade (in %)	10%	RT, 1/3C, after 500cycle
	Power (in W) (20%SOC)	161000W@25°C	RT 20%SOC5s BOL
	Power (in W) (80%SOC)	169000W@25°C	RT 80%SOC 5s BOL
	power fade (in %) (20%SOC)	1%	RT 20%SOC 5s EOL, 1000cycle
	power fade (in %) (80%SOC)	1%	RT 80%SOC 5s EOL, 1 000cycle
	Internal resistance (in Ω)	0.12 Ω	RT, 1.5C, 50%SOC, 30s, BOL
	internal resistance increase (in %)	3%	RT, 1/3C, after 500cycle
	energy round trip efficiency	92%	RT. 1/3C charge, 1/3C discharge,
	fade of energy round trip efficiency (in %)	1% after 1000 cycles	RT, 1/3C charge, 1/3C discharge
	The expected life-time of the battery under the reference conditions for which it has been designed, in terms of cycles, except for non-cycle applications, and calendar years	the earlier of 10 wars or 160.000 km Of normal usage	EOL (80%SOH)



Precautions for the modification of the vehicle and structural alteration

Warning

Unauthorized vehicle modification, structural alteration and installation of a component may cause car trouble or a fatal accident. Warranty repair will not be provided in case of product malfunction.

- The vehicle you purchased is made of a lot of precision parts passed through a large numbers of researches and tests, and these parts are linked and operate systematically.
- Modifying or changing any part arbitrarily or installing an unauthorized device may cause car trouble and affect the vehicle's performance, durability, and safety. It may lead to a fatal accident.
- Also, warranty repair will not be provided for a modified part as well as a problem that occurred due to the modification, even during the warranty period.

Do not install a separate accessory or auxiliary device to the vehicle operation device arbitrarily.

- Extending the SBW (shift by wire) or installing accelerator pedal or brake pedal pads available in the market arbitrarily may cause an operation mistake due to a change in the operating force of the vehicle. In such case, vehicle damage as well as a serious fatal accident may occur.

Warning

Do not modify the high-voltage system.

- Do not modify the charging cable and high-voltage system or service the vehicle without permission. The vehicle may malfunction, leading to unexpected hazardous situations (such as fire, electric shock, injury).
- Failure to use genuine parts or arbitrarily retrofitting can damage high and low voltage power systems.

Do not modify the audio system or install additional electronic devices such as wireless communication equipment, rear view camera, TV, and remote starting devices.

- The electrical system of this vehicle consists of electric wires and fuses for installing standard electronic devices.
- Connecting a number of electric wires to the existing wire for installing various additional electronics may cause overloading, resulting in damage to electronic devices and a risk of fire.
- In addition, drilling for installing an antenna may cause the vehicle to rust.

Warning

Do not install non-standard tires or wheel-related parts.

- If you install wider or larger tires than the vehicle specifications, the tires and adjacent parts may come into contact with each other and result in wear and damage to the power train system when you operate the steering wheel or drive on an unpaved road.
- In addition, the degradation of driving performance may occur due to an increase in the fuel consumption and braking distance, vibration of the vehicle body, and degraded handling of the steering wheel, and an impact may occur when shifting with the automatic transmission.
- Moreover, it may affect the speedometer and odometer, displaying an incorrect driving speed or a driving distance longer than the actual driving distance.
- If you install a wheel dust cover in order to improve the appearance of the tires, friction heat generated during braking is not released smoothly, causing the fade or vapor lock phenomenon. This may lead to the degradation of braking performance and cause a serious problem.

1



Warning

Do not install a sunroof available in the market or replace with colored glasses arbitrarily.

- If you cut the roof of the vehicle and install a sunroof, rust or water leaks may occur in the cut part.
- Installing colored glasses to improve the appearance and block UV rays after the vehicle is shipped may cause water leaks. Do not install such glasses.

Do not modify the floor inside of the vehicle arbitrarily.

- Do not install an auxiliary article such as floor coverings on the floor inside the vehicle to enhance the cushioning or convenience for cleaning. Doing so may damage the operating device of various electronic systems and electrical wires, and hinder the function of the seat rail that moves the seat forward and backward.
- Also, the locking system to fix the position of the seats may not operate properly. In such case, the seats may move forward or backward, causing an accident, when driving on a downhill road or an uphill road.

Warning

Do not replace the seat with a new one with a different function, or install a separate seat cover.

- There are various types of seats according to the function and role even for the same vehicle type and electric wiring has been applied accordingly.
- Do not bring and over-use or modify an adjacent electrical wire in order to replace a seat with a new one with different functions. In such case, it may damage electronic devices and create a risk of fire due to overloading.
- Replacing a seat cover incorrectly may damage electrical devices due to a short circuit or disconnection, or cause poor ventilation, fire and abnormal noise.

Do not install a bumper guide or a guide bar available in the market.

- If you install a bumper guide or a guide bar arbitrarily, problems such as difficulty in parking and stopping due to an increase in the total vehicle length, the waste of fuel due to an increase in the vehicle weight, and the occurrence of rust on the installation holes may occur. In addition, more serious injury may occur in the event of a collision accident due to the absence of a shock absorber in the bumper guide.

Warning

Do not attach a functional product that may decrease the driving resistance such as stickers, molding, air dam, or windproofing products.

- Adhesives of the stickers may damage the coated surface of the vehicle. When drilling is carried out on the vehicle in order to attach molding and other functional parts, the drilled area may rust or abnormal noises may occur while driving.
- Especially if such parts are not attached firmly, such parts may fall off while driving, causing damage to the vehicle as well as a fatal accident.



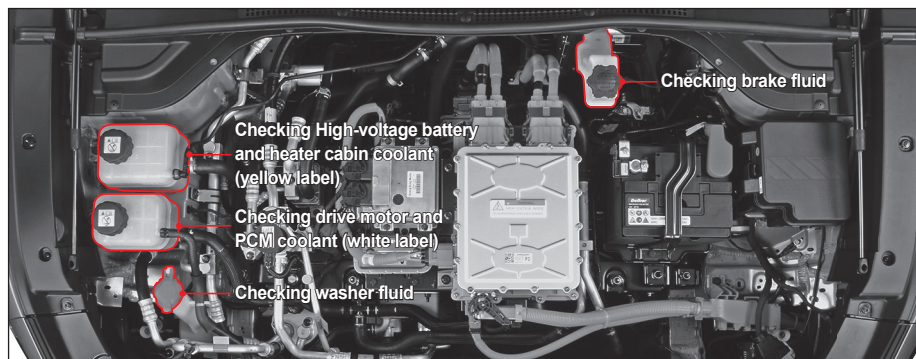
Checking before driving

Daily inspection



- Check the vehicle once a day before driving.
- Check the brake fluid and washer fluid for abnormality.
- Check the coolant (high-voltage battery and heater cabin / drive motor and PCM) for leaks.
- Check the bottom of the vehicle to see if there is an oil or liquid leak.
- Clean the front and rear windshields, rear glasses, side mirrors and room mirror.
- Check the operating status of the various lamps.
- Make sure that there are no obstacles that may hinder the driving around of the vehicle.

Checking motor room



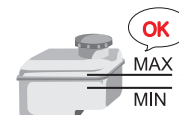
1

Checking coolant



- Check the coolant after cooling the properly on level ground.
- Check that the coolant level is between the maximum mark (MAX) and the minimum mark (MIN) inside the coolant auxiliary tank.
- Mixing coolant and replenishing water can cause problems in the vehicle. So, if the coolant level is close to or below the minimum mark, have the system checked and serviced by a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.

Checking brake fluid



Check that the brake fluid level is between the maximum mark (MAX) and the minimum mark (MIN). If the level is close to or below the minimum mark, have the system checked and serviced by a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.

When topping up the brake fluid, see Brake fluid level check and replenishment in page 6-14.



Checking washer fluid

Check the level of washer fluid on the washer fluid tank and add as needed.



Caution

- If the level of coolant and various oils drops below the “MIN” mark, have your vehicle checked by KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.

Checking tires



Warning

- Maintain the tire pressure in a proper condition. Driving the vehicle at a high speed with low tire pressure may cause the tires to burst due to the standing wave effect, resulting in a risk such as a rollover.
- Check to see if the wheel nuts (bolts) are tightened. Improperly tightened wheel nuts (bolts) can cause an accident.
- Using wheel and tire other than the specified sizes could cause unusual handling characteristics and poor vehicle control, resulting in a serious accident.
- The use of tire sizes other than the specified sizes may cause abnormal operation of the steering wheel, increased fuel consumption, increase braking distance, vibration, improper operation of ABS/ESC, or uneven tire wear. It may also damage to the powertrain of the vehicle.
- Use only the same tires from same tire manufacturer for all the wheels.

- Always check the tread and side of the tires to see if there is a sign of wear, cracks, or damage.
- Check the conditions of the emergency puncture service kit. The air compressor and sealant canister should be available at any time.
- Check the tire inflation and wear everyday and replace if necessary.



What is the standing wave phenomenon?

The standing wave phenomenon is the occurrence of a wave-shaped wrinkle on a tire with insufficient inflation pressure during high speed driving.

During driving, a tire that has normal inflation pressure repeats compression and restoration, but when a tire with insufficient inflation pressure rolls on the road with high speed, the tire will be compressed significantly and it comes into contact with the road surface again before it is fully restored. If such a situation occurs repeatedly, the standing wave phenomenon will appear.

If the standing wave phenomenon persists, a significant amount of heat is generated on the tire and the tire will be blown out in the end.

Checking the instrument cluster



Check if all the indicators and warning lamps are displayed correctly on the instrument cluster with the ignition switch in ON position.

Also, check if all gauges are operating properly.

Checking the parking brake



1

Operate the EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) switch and check the operating sound and operation status.

If the parking brake is not applied, have the vehicle checked and repaired by a near-by KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.



Checking the pedals

Check the operation status of the brake pedal and the accelerator pedal.

If the operation status of the pedal is abnormal in comparison to its normal status, have it checked and repaired by KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.

Cleaning up near the driver's seat

Keep the space near the driver's seat clean all the time. Never leave any object that hinders driving.

Always clean up the space near the driver's seat before driving.

Warning

- An empty bottle or an article below the pedal hinders the pedal operation and may cause an accident.
- If the floor mat is not fixed or is too thick, it may hinder the pedal operation and cause an accident.

Advisable driving position



Maintain an advisable position for safe and comfortable driving.

- Sit upright on the driver seat with the hip against the seat cushion.
- Adjust the position and height of driver seat in a way that the brake pedal can be depressed to the end comfortably.
- With your back against the seat back, adjust the position and height of the seat back and steering wheel so that you can rest your wrists on the top of the steering wheel.
- Adjust the height of the headrest in a way that the center of the headrest is aligned with the driver's eye level.

Warning

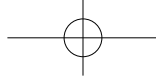
- Do not wear shoes such as slippers or high heels that may hinder driving. Such shoes may hinder the accelerator pedal or brake pedal operation and cause an accident.

Adjusting the seat, headrest, steering wheel, and mirrors

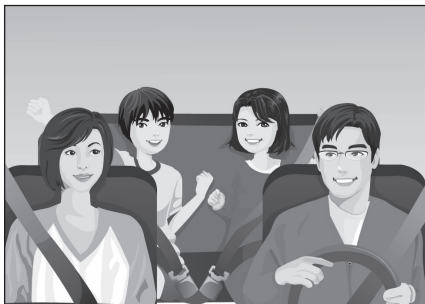
- Adjust the seat, headrest, steering wheel, and mirrors before driving the vehicle.
- If your steering wheel is adjustable, adjust it to an appropriate height and angle that fits your body and drive the vehicle.
- Adjust the rear glasses, side mirrors and room mirror to an angle that you can see the rear view well.

Warning

- If an additional adjustment is necessary while driving, make sure to stop the vehicle at a safe place and make the adjustments. Adjusting while driving may hinder driving, causing an accident.



Wearing the seat belt correctly



- Make sure that all occupants inside the vehicle wear a seat belt.
- Wear the seat belt with your body closely against the seat cushion.
- A child who cannot wear a seat belt should be seated in the rear seat using child restraints.
- For a vehicle where an adjustable top shoulder strap fixing device is provided, wear the seat belt by adjusting the shoulder strap control device to your body type.

Warning

- Do not wear the seat belt under the arm.



- Each seat belt is for one person. Two or more persons should not wear one seat belt together.



- Do not lock the seat belt with a clip or a clamp.



- Insert the seat belt latch only to the relevant buckle.





Safety and cautions for driving

Danger

No drugged, drunk, distracted and drowsy (4D) driving



- Avoid drugged driving. It is an illegal act that may be more dangerous than drunk driving depending on the type and dosage of a drug.
- Avoid drunk driving. Judgment is impaired under the influence of alcohol, making safe driving impossible. It is also an illegal offense that puts the life of occupants in other vehicles in danger.

Danger

- Avoid distracted driving. Using a mobile phone or the navigation system, watching DMB, or eating while driving may decrease your concentration, making a risk of an accident higher. In particular, using a mobile phone or watching DMB while driving is an illegal offense that hinders safe driving. When it is inevitable, stop or park the vehicle in a safe place and use the relevant device.
- Avoid drowsy driving. Driving for a long period of time without taking a rest will lead to drowsy driving that may cause an accident. Take a rest at least every 2 hours for safety.

Warning

Cautions for air bag

- The air bag system is an auxiliary safety device. Wearing the seat belt properly can minimize injury.
- Do not apply impact to the air bag by hand or with other articles. Doing so may cause the air bag to deploy.
- Do not place any object on, or attach a sticker or other accessories to the air bag inflation location where the air bag is installed. You may be injured by those objects during deployment.

Warning

- A passenger who is smaller than 140 cm should sit in the rear seat. Otherwise, the passenger may get injured during deployment.
- A safety device for infants and children should be installed on the rear 1st row. Installing it on the front seat may cause a serious injury or death if the air bag is deployed.
- A pet should be restrained in the rear seat using a dedicated safety device. A pet in the front seat may get injured if the air bag is deployed.
- When the air bag is deployed, the relevant components may be hot.
- A deployed air bag cannot be used again. Please replace it.
- The air bag system should be checked or replaced after 10 years from its installation even if the system has no abnormality. The air bag system should be checked or replaced by a professional technician in KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.
- Do not modify any part of the air bag system arbitrarily. Do not attach any other electrical device to the air bag system.



Warning

Precautions for infants, children, old people, or pregnant women



- Never leave an infant, a small child or an old person unattended in the vehicle. They may touch a device inside the vehicle, resulting in an accident. When the doors are locked and the windows are closed during summer, the temperature inside the vehicle will increase, resulting in suffocation.
- Do not allow children to use the ignition key, various switches or buttons, and additional devices without permission. Failure to do so may cause car trouble or even an accident. Their body may get caught in the door, window, or sunroof, and receive injury.
- Do not let an infant, a child or an old person sit in the front seat. The impact from the air bag expansion may cause serious injury or death. An infant or a small child should be restrained with a seat belt or protective gear in the rear seat attended by an adult.

Warning

An infant or a small child must be seated in the rear seat with protective gear



- An infant or a small child should be seated in the rear seat with an adult.
- An infant or a small child should be restrained with a seat belt or proper protective gear. Failure to do so may cause serious injury or death in the event of sudden braking or a collision accident.
- Apply the child protection lock system to the rear doors so that children in the rear seats cannot open the rear doors.

☞ Refer to “Child safety door lock” (p.3-5)

Warning

No sleeping in a sealed vehicle



- Never sleep in a parked car with all the windows closed. In particular, if you sleep with the air conditioner or heater turned on, you can suffocate to death due to a lack of oxygen.
- There is a risk of suffocation if you sleep in an enclosed area with the ignition turned on.
- While sleeping, you may accidentally touch the SBW (shift by wire) or accelerator pedal and cause an accident.
- If you step on the accelerator pedal continuously while sleeping, the motor and the drive system may be overheated, causing a fire.

1



Warning

Do not drive with the doors or tailgate open



- Do not drive with the doors open. An occupant may fall out of the vehicle and suffer a serious injury.
- If you accidentally operate the door lever while driving and the door is open, it may cause a risk of a serious accident. In particular, do not allow a small child to touch the door lever while driving.
- If you drive the vehicle with the tailgate open, an article from the inside of the vehicle may fall out, causing an accident.

Warning

Do not hold a part of your body out of the window or sunroof



- While driving or stopping, do not hold a part of your body such as a hand or head out of the window or sunroof. You may get injured by a passing vehicle or an obstacle.
- In particular, do not allow a child or a pet to hold their hand or head out of the window.

Warning

Be careful not to have a part of your body caught when using the power window



- Use the power window only after checking that all passengers are safe.
- Before closing the window, check if a part of a passenger's body such as a hand or head is held out of the window and notify them that you will close the window.
- If a small child is seated in the rear seat, press the window lock switch to make the rear window switches inoperative.
☞ Refer to "Rear seat window lock function" (p.3-23)



Warning

Check for any vehicles or persons passing by when getting out



- When you get out, make sure to check the rear and the front of the vehicle to see if there is any vehicle or person passing by. In particular, opening the door without checking a vehicle or a motor cycle approaching from the rear may cause damage to the vehicle as well as injury.
- Warn other passengers to check around before opening the door.

Warning

Safe parking and stopping

- Never leave an infant or a child unattended in the vehicle with the doors and the windows locked after parking or stopping the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may rise, resulting in suffocation or an accident.
- Always apply the parking brake while parking or stopping. Even a flat area may have a slope. Place the SBW (shift by wire) in the P (parking) position and always apply the parking brake.
- Do not stop or park on a steep road. The brake system may be released, causing the vehicle to move.
- When parking, be sure to apply the parking brake.
- When you park on a hillside road, make sure to apply the parking brake and place blocks under the wheels or adjust the wheels to face the wall.
- Do not stop or park the vehicle in places with flammable substances. The heated motor room and the high voltage battery may cause a fire.
- If the rear part of the vehicle is too close to the wall with the ignition turned on, there is a risk of discoloration or fire due to vehicle heat. Keep enough distance from the wall.
- If possible, do not park the vehicle in a humid area or a poorly ventilated area.

Warning

Do not stop the vehicle while driving

- Do not stop the vehicle while driving. Doing so may make the steering wheel heavier and lower the brake performance, becoming very dangerous.

However, if you need to stop the vehicle in an emergency situation while driving due to an accident or a vehicle damage, refer to the following.

 Refer to “Stopping the vehicle while driving (in the event of emergency)” (p.4-5)

No sudden starting, acceleration or braking

- Do not start, accelerate, or brake the vehicle suddenly. Doing so may increase the high voltage battery consumption or cause an accident.
- Accelerate or decelerate the vehicle gently.

Driving on unpaved and mountain roads

- Before driving, check road conditions in advance to see if the road ends suddenly, or if there is enough space to make a U-turn for emergencies.
- In sandy or dry roads with much soil, the vehicle may slide easily. Keep your speed low and steady.
- Drive carefully on mountain roads, since the outer part of the road has a danger of collapsing.
- When driving downhill, downshift, and drive slowly by applying the engine brake.

1



Warning

In high mountain area

- Never charge the SOC of a high voltage battery above 90% in high altitudes, such as in mountainous areas.

Driving on a snowy or icy road

- If possible, drive slowly.
- Since the braking distance is longer than usual, maintain a proper distance from the car ahead.
- Accelerating or braking suddenly may cause your vehicle to slide, resulting in an accident.
- Use regenerative braking after slowing down sufficiently when driving on frozen or slippery roads. Sudden regenerative braking may cause the vehicle to slip and cause an accident.
- Use snow tires for safer driving when driving on a snowy or icy roads.



Warning

Driving on a sandy or muddy road

- Keep your speed as low and steady as possible.
- Accelerating or stopping suddenly while driving may cause the vehicle to be caught in the sand or mud.
- If the vehicle is caught in the sand or mud, place a stone or a wooden plate below the wheels and drive off from the sand or mud. Or, depress the accelerator pedal slowly and drive off using inertia by forwarding and reversing repeatedly.
- If you depress the accelerator pedal excessively to drive off from the sand or mud, the tires may slip, causing damage to the decelerator and motor systems. If possible, have your vehicle towed by another vehicle.



Warning

Driving on a hillside road and downhill road

- Downshift in accordance with the road conditions.
- Use regenerative braking (increase regenerative braking with paddle shift lever) with the brake pedal on long downhill. Applying the brake pedal continuously on a long downhill road may overheat the braking system, lowering the braking performance and resulting in an accident.
- When driving downhill after fully charging the high voltage battery, the regenerative braking system may not work. This may cause braking slippage during downhill driving, so be sure to drive at a low speed.



Warning

Driving on a road with a pool of water or a river

- Avoid crossing a road with a pool of water or a river if possible. If water gets into the electric systems, it may cause serious damage to your vehicle.
- If you need to cross a road with a pool of water or a river unavoidably, select a shallower part where the lower part of the vehicle will not be submerged under water and cross slowly at a constant speed.
- Before crossing a river, get out of the vehicle and check the bottom of the river. Do not cross through a place where the bottom is sandy or covered with big rocks.
- If several vehicles cross the river together, the path where the vehicle ahead has crossed may have caved in. Cross through a different path if possible.

Cautions for crossing

- If the vehicle stops while crossing a road with a pool of water or a river, do not restart, and have your vehicle towed.

Warning

Checking the vehicle after crossing

- If water gets into brake-related equipment, the brake performance will be lowered. After crossing a road with a pool of water or a river, drive slowly and depress the brake pedal slightly several times. Drive normally after drying the brake discs with the frictional heat and checking the braking performance.
- Check the parts at the bottom of the vehicle where oil and fluid are injected. If you discover any problems, have your vehicle checked immediately.
- Check the lamps and other electrical devices and replace them if necessary.
- Check for any damage on the vehicle body or at the bottom of the vehicle. If you discover any problems, have your vehicle checked immediately.
- If your vehicle is heavily soiled, wash your vehicle to protect the vehicle body.

Warning

Do not use a cellular phone or watch DMB while driving

- Using your cellular phone or watching DMB while driving will distract yourself and may cause an accident. If necessary, pull over your vehicle safely to use your cellular phone.

Warning

Driving on the expressway

- Before driving, check the weather information in advance, and check the high voltage battery charging amount, brake system, cooling system, level of tire wear and pressure, and maintain the vehicle thoroughly.
- Drive slowly for 2km after starting if possible.
- Always observe the speed limit and do not drive too fast.
- Keep a proper safe distance from the vehicle ahead.
- In case of bad weather, maintain more than twice the safe distance from the vehicle ahead than usual and reduce the speed by more than a half.
- Do not load the vehicle with unnecessary articles.
- Check and maintain the vehicle periodically to maintain the best vehicle condition.

Crossing an intersection or railroad crossing

- When you cross an intersection or railroad crossing, stop first, check for safety, and then cross promptly using a lower gear, without shifting if possible.
- If the vehicle stops in the middle of an intersection or railroad crossing, move the vehicle to a safe place promptly. If necessary, ask people around for help.

1



Warning

No sudden maneuvering of the steering wheel

- If you maneuver the steering wheel suddenly, the driving condition of the vehicle may become unstable, causing the risk of an accident.

To use regenerative braking

- Do not only apply the foot brake on long downhills, but also use regenerative braking (increase regenerative braking with paddle shift lever).
- Using the foot brake excessively may cause the fade or vapor lock phenomenon due to overheating of the brake system, lowering the braking performance.
- When driving downhill after fully charging the high voltage battery, the regenerative braking system may not work. This may cause braking slippage during downhill driving, so be sure to drive at a low speed.

What is the fade phenomenon?

The fade phenomenon is the reduction of braking force due to a decrease in the friction force caused by a temperature increase in the friction surface of brake when the brake is applied excessively on a long downhill road.

What is the vapor lock phenomenon?

The vapor lock phenomenon is the condition that when the brake is applied excessively on a downhill road, bubbles form in the brake fluid in the wheel cylinder or brake pipe of the hydraulic brake so that proper hydraulic pressure cannot be transferred, causing the brake system not to operate properly even if the pedal is depressed.

Warning

Cautions for attaching accessories

- Do not attach accessories or unnecessary articles to the vehicle windows. They may interfere with your driving, and if attached accessories act as a lens (magnifying glass), a fire or an unexpected accident may occur.

Special cautions when checking the coolant

- Never open the coolant reservoir cap when the motor room is hot. Doing so may cause hot steam or coolant to erupt, causing burns on your body parts including the hands or face.

Do not load hazardous materials

- Do not store any flammable materials such as gasoline, butane gas, or a disposable gas lighter, or explosive materials inside the vehicle. If the indoor temperature rises, the container may burst, causing a fire.



 Caution

Cautions for vehicle ventilation

- For a new vehicle purchased within 1 year, harmful volatile organic compounds (VOC) to human body may be emitted in the cabin. In particular, riding a vehicle exposed to direct sunlight for a long period of time or without proper ventilation may cause headache, dizziness or nausea.
- Operate the fresh air inflow mode or open the windows periodically to ventilate air inside the vehicle for the health of passengers and a pleasant vehicle environment.

 Caution

System protection function (delayed accelerator pedal response)

- Do not depress the brake pedal while driving with the accelerator pedal depressed (both feet driving). Doing so may affect the vehicle driving system and the response from the accelerator pedal may be delayed.
- This symptom is a safety function to protect the vehicle system. This symptom will disappear if you depress and release the accelerator pedal once with the brake pedal not depressed.

Placement of extinguisher

- An extinguisher is an essential item for early extinguishing when a fire occurs. It is recommended to purchase it from a fire-fighting appliance store and place it in the vehicle.



Vehicle management

KG Mobility Authorized Service Center and maintenance partners

KG Mobility Authorized Service Center or maintenance partners for checking and repairing the vehicle. If you use other service centers or maintenance shops, warranty repair will not be available and warranty will not be provided for any consequent problems.

Cautions for the depletion of battery when connecting uninterruptible power supply to the black box system

If the vehicle is not operated for a long period of time with the uninterruptible power supply connected to the black box system, the vehicle battery may be depleted.

Turn off the black box system if you will not drive the vehicle for a long period of time.

Breaking in a new vehicle correctly

Break-in is not required for a new vehicle. However, the driving condition for the first 1,000 km significantly affects the life and performance of the vehicle. Pay attention to the following when driving during this period.

- Do not speed, accelerate, brake suddenly.
- Shift properly according to driving speed.
- Do not overload the vehicle while driving a sloping road.
- Do not tow a trailer during the first 1,000 km.
- During the first 1,000 km of towing a trailer, do not drive at a speed over 80 km/h or with full acceleration.

Long-term parking mode

This mode is for preventing vehicle battery discharge. Set it on the instrument cluster and use it if necessary.

During setup, smart key search is stopped to minimize power and some functions are limited.

Notice

- If the vehicle is stored or parked for a long period, operate the air conditioning system for at least 15 minutes once a month.
- Running the air conditioner helps lubricate its components and maintain the overall performance of the climate control system.

Using genuine parts

Always use genuine parts for maintaining safety and the best performance of your vehicle.

Warranty repair will not be provided for car trouble caused by using a non-genuine part.

You can verify a genuine part by its hologram and sticker with the product number.



Caution

- The warranty does not cover problems caused by using non-KG Mobility genuine parts.
- You can distinguish an authentic KG Mobility genuine part by its hologram.



Vehicle washing

After driving on a coastal road (salty road), a road where calcium chloride was spread, an area with excessive smoke or coal tar, or a muddy or dusty area, or when the vehicle is stained with tree sap or insects' or birds' droppings, wash the vehicle immediately since corrosion may occur on the vehicle body.

- Avoid direct sunlight and wash the vehicle in the shade. If your vehicle has been parked under direct sunlight, let it cool properly before washing.
- Dust off the vehicle with cold water.
- Mix cold water with detergent in a bucket and wipe the vehicle from top to bottom using a soft brush, sponge, or cloth.
- Wash off any foreign materials on the vehicle body without damaging the painted surface.
- Any scratched or damaged painted surface causes corrosion, so repair them with paint for repair.
- Remove moisture using a dry and soft cloth.
- After washing, drive the vehicle normally after driving it slowly, and checking the operating status of the brakes.



Caution

- Be careful not to damage the air spoiler when cleaning the vehicle in an automatic car wash.
- When washing with water (including high pressure washing) on the underside of the vehicle or high voltage, etc., be careful not to get moisture into various sensors or high voltage connectors. Our warranty will not be provided for any consequent failure.
- Avoid washing with water when the brake discs are hot. Hot brake discs may be deformed or damaged if it comes into contact with water.
- If possible, avoid high pressure washing for maintaining and managing the vehicle performance.
- High pressure washing may damage the components and sensors installed on the exterior of the vehicle and the painted surface of the panels. In particular, be careful not to get water into the electrical devices and sensors at the bottom of the vehicle.
- When you use high pressure washing unavoidably, maintain a proper distance between the high pressure water nozzle and the vehicle. If the distance is too close, the sensors on the bumper may malfunction or the painted surface of the panels may be damaged due to the high water pressure.

- Do not use abrasive wax and strong cleaning materials such as steel wool which will scratch the vehicle body and bumper.
- Do not clean the inside of the motor room with liquid substances such as water or wax. Liquid substances may enter electrical devices (sensors and high voltage system) inside the motor room, which may prevent the vehicle from operating due to malfunction of various electrical devices and malfunction of the high voltage system.





Washing the bumper

- Wipe off foreign materials using a soft sponge.
- If the bumper is contaminated by oil or any lubricants, wash it off using soapy water.

Caution

- **Do not use abrasive wax or a brush to wipe the bumper or the vehicle body. Doing so may damage the bumper or the surface of the vehicle body (painted surface).**

Washing wheels

Clean the wheels after driving on a salty road to prevent the wheels from being corroded.

Caution

- **Do not use abrasive cleaners, polishes, solvents, wire brushes, and high speed washing brushes since they may damage the wheel surface.**
- **Using acid or alkaline detergents could damage the wheel surface (painted surface), so use neutral detergents for cleaning the wheels.**
- **Using strong cleaners may discolor the wheel surface. Make sure to use natural cleaners. A discolored wheel due to carelessness is not subject to free warranty repair.**

Cautions for polishing the vehicle

- Before waxing, remove dust or moisture from the vehicle.
- Apply a small amount of wax on a soft cloth, apply it to the whole vehicle body evenly, and scrub a wide area in the same direction to polish.
- After waxing, remove residual wax from the vehicle body completely.

Caution

- **Do not polish or wash the vehicle body using wax containing abrasives. Doing so may damage the surface of the vehicle body (painted surface).**



Cleaning and maintaining glass

- Clean the indoor and outdoor sides of glass windows using a glass cleaner and a soft cloth.
- When cleaning the glass windows, be careful not to damage the electric demister element.
- When automatic car washing is used, coating (wax) substance included in the cleaning fluids may adhere to the glass surface and it may not be wiped off easily when it is dried. Spray washer fluid and operate the wipers two or three times to remove coating (wax) substances using the cleaning substances included in the washer fluid.
- Do not wipe the glass surface with a towel stained with oil or wax. Doing so may cause vibrations and abnormal sounds when the wipers are operating and the front and rear windshields may not be cleaned properly when it rains. Also, the reflection of light may occur at night, causing poor visibility and affecting safe driving.

Cautions for window tinting

- All vehicles from our factory have tinted windshields and rear windows that meet the specified percentage of visible light transmission (VLT). Do not tint the windows of the product. Doing so will lower VLT, becoming subject to legal regulation.
- Tinting the windshield and rear window excessively may reduce front and rear visibility at night or in case of rain, causing an unexpected risk.
- When tinting the windshield and rear window, do not allow working solutions to enter into electrical and electronic devices. Failure to do so may cause a malfunction or failure of electrical and electronic devices.
- If the windshield and rear window are modified or tinted arbitrarily, the electric demister element may be damaged by a knife or a tool or an electrical shock.
- If the windshield and rear window are coated or tinted (metallic tinting film), the Hi-Pass system, rain sensor, and radio may not operate normally.
- Do not tint the front camera sensing part. Otherwise, the relevant system may malfunction.

Care and cleaning of the interior

- Use a dry towel for normal cleaning.
- For synthetic resin such as plastic, clean it with lukewarm water and soap and wipe off with a wet towel with no soap.
- Wipe using a dry towel to dry.
- Remove dust on the seats and mats using a vacuum cleaner.
- If the mats are heavily stained, spray a cleanser on them and wipe using a cloth.



Warning

- **To prevent from burning and electric shock, turn off the interior lights before cleaning the vehicle interior.**

1



Caution

- When you use chemicals for cleaning the interior, the color or shape of the interior may change.
- Do not use chemical products such as acetone, enamel, and bleach for cleaning the interior.
- The Leather Seat Maintenance is necessary on Quarter basis with dedicated Leather Milk or Cream in order to feed the Leather and avoid any cracks on the seats and conserving the original look and comfort of the seat.

Seat Belt Care

- Keep belts clean and dry.
- Clean seat belts only with mild soap and lukewarm water.
- Do not bleach or dye belts since this may severely weaken them.

Cautions for using the vehicle key

- Be careful not to lose your key.
- If your key is lost or stolen, replace the whole key set to prevent the vehicle from theft.
- Do not throw or drop your key. Doing so will damage your key. Do not drop your key in water.
- Use only the same standard battery for the key and be careful not to switch the polarity when inserting the battery.

Corrosion protection

Your car was designed to resist corrosion. When it was built, special and protective finishes were used on most parts of your car to help maintain a good appearance, strength and reliable operation. Some parts which normally are not visible (such as certain parts located in the underbody of the vehicle) are such that surface rust will not affect their reliability. Therefore, corrosion protection is not needed or used on these parts.

Sheet Metal Damage

If your car is damaged and requires body panel repair or replacement, make sure the body repair shop applies proper anticorrosion material to the parts repaired or replaced so that corrosion protection is restored. (Also refer to “Finish Damage” on the next page).

Foreign Material Deposits

Calcium chloride and other salts, deicing agents, road oil and tar, tree sap, bird droppings, chemicals from industrial chimneys and other foreign materials may damage vehicle finishes if left on painted surface. Prompt washing may not completely remove all of these deposits. Other cleaners may be needed. When using chemical cleaners, be sure they are safe for use on painted surfaces.



Finish Damage

Any stone chips, fractures or deep scratches in the finish should be repaired promptly. Bare metal will corrode quickly and may develop into a major repair expense. Minor chips and scratches can be repaired with touch-up materials. Larger areas of finish damage can be corrected in your Distributor's body and paint shop.

Underbody Maintenance

Corrosive materials used for ice and snow removal and dust control can accumulate on the underbody. If these materials are not removed, accelerated corrosion (rust) can occur on underbody parts such as the fuel lines, frame, floor pan, and the exhaust system even though they have been provided with corrosion protection. At least every spring, flush these materials from the underbody with plain water. Take care to clean any area where mud and other debris can accumulate.

Sediment packed in closed areas of the frame should be loosened before being flushed. If desired, your KG Mobility Distributor can do this service for you.



Caution

- Used brake fluid, decelerator fluid, antifreeze, batteries, and tires should be disposed by using the local authorized waste disposal facilities, or have them disposed of by the vendor who is under a statutory obligation to do so when you replace them.
- None of these items should be placed in the household recycling bins or poured into the sewage system.
- Everyone should be concerned about environmental protection.
- Help by doing your share.
- When a strong multi-purpose, acid, or alkaline detergent is used to clean up the surface of the painted body, side mirrors, windshield, plastic moldings or leather, changes, fading of colors or rusting can happen.

- When the windshield is cleaned with an oil-contained or waxed towel, strange sounds and vibrations may occur on the windshield surface when the wipers are operating. Also, decreased visibility, reflection at night, or poor removal of water on the windshield may happen. Do not clean the windshield with an oil-contained or waxed towel.
- An abrasive detergent may damage the painted surface of your vehicle, including the bumper. Do not buff or polish your vehicle with an abrasive detergent.
- An acid or alkaline detergent may damage the painted surface of the aluminum or alloyed wheels.
- When chemical products are used to clean up the interior, the chemical products may change some colors or distort the shape of some interior parts.
- When cleaning up interior parts, do not use chemical products such as acetone, enamel or bleach.

1



High voltage warning lamp



The high voltage warning lamp is illuminated in the event of a failure of a sensor related to the electric vehicle control system or an abnormality in the cooling/heating system and etc.

This may result in reduced motor drive or ignition off.

If this occurs, have the system checked at the KG Mobility Dealer or KG Mobility Authorized Service Operation.

Other maintenance

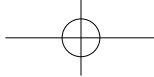
After driving on a calcium chloride (salt) sprayed road, wash the bottom of your vehicle as soon as possible to avoid any rust.

When parking on a snow-covered road, the brake system may begin to have some ice on it. The ice will decrease your vehicle's braking ability. If this happens, drive at a low speed and use the brake frequently to remove the ice. After regaining the braking ability, drive your vehicle at a normal speed.



Warning

- When there is ice on the wiper blades, turning on the wiper switch may put an extra burden on the wiper motor and damage it. Avoid using the wipers when ice is on the blades.
- When driving on a snow-covered road, a large amount of snow may build up under each wheelhouse. This buildup prevents the steering wheel from moving freely. Therefore, remove the snow buildup frequently.



2. Safety Units

You can check information regarding units that allow you to drive the vehicle safely and how to use such devices.

An explanation is provided for seat belts, a child restraint for an infant or a small child, airbags, anti-theft and warning system.



Seat belt

The seat belt is the most fundamental safety unit that protects an occupant and prevents or reduces injury when an accident occurs.

If you do not fasten the seat belt or fasten the seat belt incorrectly, the seat belt does not function properly and you may also get injured by the seat belt.



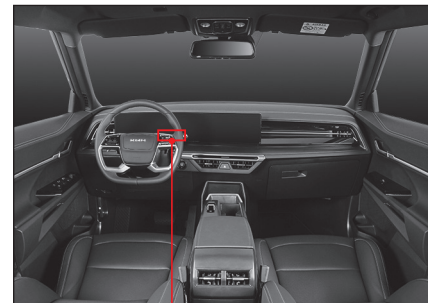
Warning

- **All occupants must fasten their seat belt before driving. Failure to do so may lead to a fatal accident, in case of emergency or when the brake is applied suddenly.**
- **The air bag can ensure the safety only when the seat belt is fastened correctly. If the air bag inflates when you do not fasten the seat belt or fasten it incorrectly, you may get injured by the inflated air bag.**

Seat belt warning

If the occupants in the driver seat and the front passenger seat do not fasten their seat belts, the warning lamp on the instrument cluster blinks along with a warning buzzer.

The rear seat (left, center and right) reminder illuminates the warning lamp or sounds the buzzer depending on the vehicle conditions and whether the seat is occupied or not.



- 1 Warning lamp for driver and front passenger
- 2 Rear (left) seat warning lamp
- 3 Rear (center) seat warning lamp
- 4 Rear (right) seat warning lamp



Front seat (driver / passenger) belt reminder

- The seat belt reminder warning lamp and buzzer are triggered only when the ignition switch is turned on or the vehicle is started.
- If you turn the ignition switch on or start the vehicle with the seat belt not fastened, the warning buzzer sounds and warning lamp flashes for about 6 seconds. At this time, when the seat belt is fastened, the warning buzzer stops and the warning lamp flashes for the rest of the time.
- If you turn the ignition switch on or start the vehicle with the seat belt fastened, only the warning lamp flashes for about 6 seconds.
- If you fasten and then unfasten the driver seat belt, the warning buzzer sounds while the warning lamp flashes for about 6 seconds. However, for the passenger seat, the warning lamp and buzzer do not work even if the seat belt is fastened and then unfastened.
- When driving the vehicle at a speed of about 10 km/h or higher with the seat belt not fastened, the warning lamp comes on for about 100 seconds and the warning buzzer sounds. After 100 seconds, the warning buzzer stops and only the warning lamp stays on.

Rear seat (left / center / right) belt reminder*

- The rear seat belt reminder warning lamp comes on for 70 seconds when the ignition switch is turned on regardless of whether the seats are occupied or not and the warning buzzer does not sound.
- The rear seat occupancy sensor recognizes that the corresponding (left, center and right) seat is occupied when the rear seat belt is fastened and then unfastened with the ignition switch turned on.
- If the seat belt is fastened when the warning lamp comes on for 70 seconds by turning the ignition key on the corresponding warning lamp goes off.
- If the rear seat belt is fastened and then unfastened at a vehicle speed of 10 km/h or less, the corresponding warning lamp stays on until the seat belt is fastened. At this time, the warning buzzer does not sound.
- If the rear seat belt is fastened and then unfastened at a vehicle speed of 10 km/h or higher, the corresponding warning lamp keeps flashing until the seat belt is fastened and the warning buzzer sounds for 70 seconds.
- The rear seat occupancy is reset when: the rear door is open and closed with the vehicle stationary (speed of 0 km/h) and ignition switch turned on.



Caution

- The passenger seat belt warning operates only when an occupant on the front passenger seat is detected. When the occupant on the front passenger seat is positioned inappropriately or is too small, the occupant may not be detected.
- When an object is placed on the front passenger seat, the occupant detection sensor may operate and the passenger seat belt warning may operate.
- If the warning lamp or the warning buzzer persists after fastening the seat belt, have your vehicle checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Corporation Authorized Service Center.

Notice

- Seat belt warning may persist until the seat belt is fastened depending on the vehicle condition.
- When the SBW (shift by wire) is maintained at the R (reverse) position for 1.5 seconds or longer, the seat belt warning (reminder) does not operate.



Fastening the seat belt

- 1 Sit upright on the seat with the hip against the seat cushion.
- 2 Hold the seat belt latch and pull it slowly in the direction of the buckle.



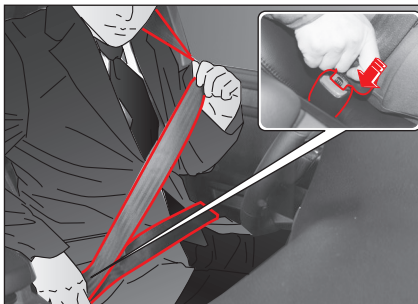
Warning

- Wear the seat belt in a way that it is not twisted. If the seat belt is twisted, it cannot distribute the impact at the time of an accident properly.

Notice

- If the seat belt is locked and does not move, loosen the seat belt a little bit and pull it slowly or strongly. In some cases, you have to pull the seat belt strongly for approximately 2 to 3 seconds to move it.

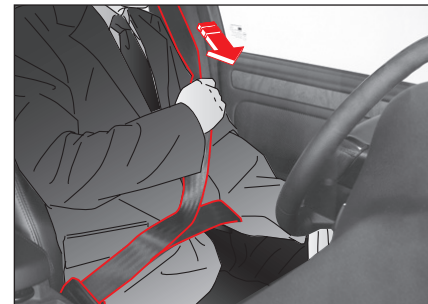
- 3 With the shoulder belt webbing positioned across the chest and the lap belt webbing positioned across the hips, insert the belt latch into the buckle until it clicks.



Warning

- Fasten the seat belt in a way that the shoulder belt webbing is positioned across the chest. If the shoulder belt webbing is positioned across the neck, a serious injury may occur by the belt in the event of an accident.
- Position the lap belt webbing as low as possible across the abdominal area. If the lap belt webbing is positioned across the abdominal area, an impact may happen in the event of an accident, resulting in a serious injury.
- Pull the belt latch to make sure that it is securely locked into the buckle.

- 4 Adjust the height of the shoulder belt webbing using the seat belt height adjuster if needed.
- 5 Adjust the belt webbing on the chest and the hips to not be slack.



Warning

- Do not fasten the seat belt higher than the body or loosely. Doing so may cause the body to slip below the seat belt in the event of a collision accident, resulting in injury.



Unfastening the seat belt

- 1 To unfasten the seat belt, press the red button on the buckle and separate the belt latch from the buckle.

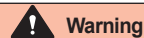


- 2 Hold the belt latch and let the seat belt webbing to be wound slowly.

Managing the seat belt

Adjusting the height of the front seat belt

You can adjust the height of the shoulder belt anchorage to prevent the seat belt from being positioned across the neck.



Warning

- Adjust the height of the seat belt before driving.

- 1 With the top of the seat belt height adjuster pressed, raise or lower the seat belt holder.



- 2 Release it at the desired position.
The seat belt holder is secured.

Rear seat belt storage

If you do not use the rear seat belts or wish to fold the rear seat back, insert the seat belt into the webbing guide installed on the wall as shown in the figure.



2

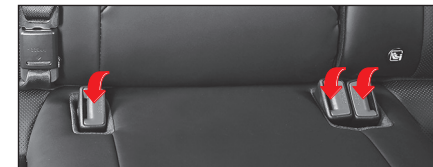


Caution

- Remove from the webbing guide first if you wish to use the seat belt. Pulling the seat belt with the webbing guide inserted may damage the webbing guide or the seat belt.

Rear seat buckle storage

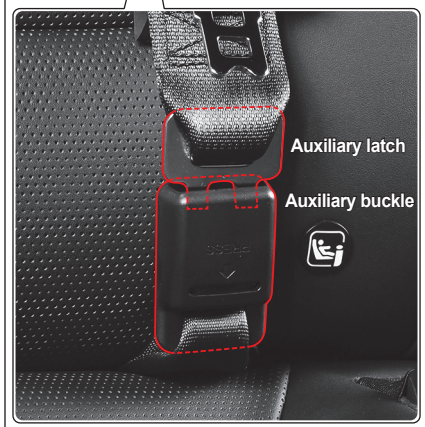
If you do not use the rear seat belts, insert the buckle into the buckle storage as shown in the figure.





Rear center seat belt storage

Have the auxiliary latch inserted into the auxiliary buckle always if you do not use the rear center seat belt.



Rear center seat belt release

- 1 Press the auxiliary buckle hole (1) using the emergency key.



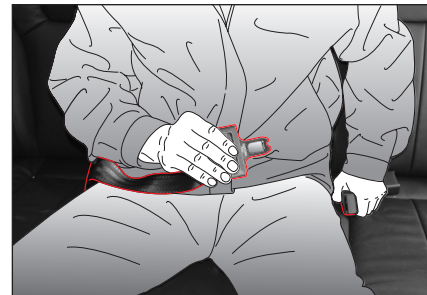
- 2 Hold the auxiliary latch (2) and left the seat belt to be wound slowly.

Warning

- If the auxiliary latch retracts at high speed, an adjacent occupant may get injured.
- Do not allow a child to pull and release the auxiliary latch repeatedly.

How to fasten the seat belts (2-point) in rear center seat

- 1 Pull out the latch plate at the right of the seat.



Warning

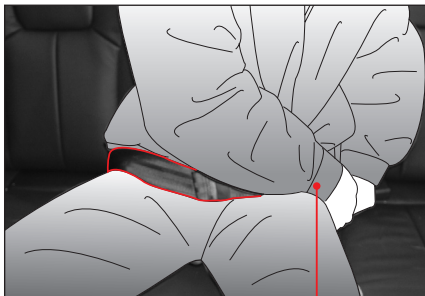
- Put the lap belt as low as possible across the hips. Do not put it across waist. In an accident, the belt may apply pressure to your abdomen. This may cause serious internal injuries.



To lengthen, hold the metal latch plate at a right angle to the belt and pull the belt. To shorten, pull the free end of the belt away from the latch plate, then pull the belt clip to take up the slack.



- 2 Insert the metal latch plate into the buckle until it clicks. Position the belt as low as possible across your hips, not across your abdomen.



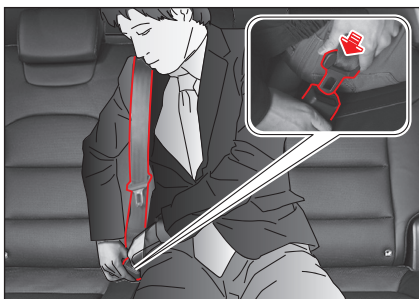
- 3 If the belt is too tight or slack on your hips, readjust the belt.
- 4 To unfasten the seat belt, press the red button on the buckle.

How to fasten the seat belt (3-point) in rear center seat

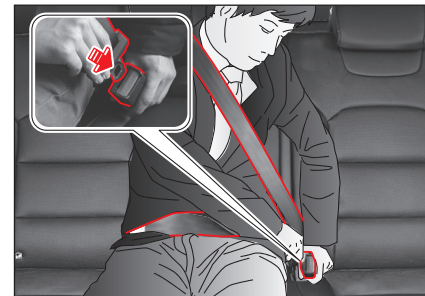
- 1 Pull out the latch plate from the retractor. If the seat belt is locked when being pulled out, rewind it completely in the retractor, then pull it out to the desired length.



- 2 Insert the latch plate into the right mini buckle until it clicks.



- 3 Position the shoulder belt across the body and the lap belt as low as possible across the hips. Insert the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.
- 4 Pull the latch plate to make sure it is securely locked. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.
- 5 To unfasten the seat belt, press the red button on the buckle.



2



Warning

- Make sure to fasten the seat belt according to the order as described so that it functions properly.
- To prevent the seat belt from bumping against the rear glass, unfasten the seat belt while holding it.
- This seat belt is designed only for a passenger who sits on the center seat in the rear seat.
- Tug on the seat belt to make sure that the latch plate is securely locked.
- Make sure that the seat belt is not twisted.
- Improper wearing of seat belts increases the chance of injury or death in case of a collision.
- Position the seat belt away from your neck and abdomen.

Caution

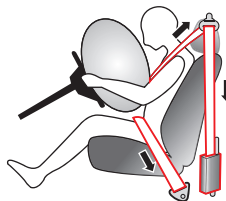
- Stow the seat belt into the console when it is not in use.

Seat belt pretensioner and load limiter

The seat belt pretensioner and the load limiter are the units that operate at the same time when the driver and front passenger air bags operate, increasing the safety effect of the seat belt and the air bag.

Pretensioner

The seat belt pretensioner is a protection unit that draws back the seat belt on the occupant's chest and hips instantaneously and secures the occupant to the seat to prevent the occupant from bouncing forward in the event of a strong front collision.

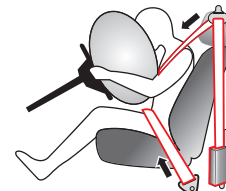


Danger

- The seat belt pretensioner is designed to operate only once. After it operates, replace the seat belt.

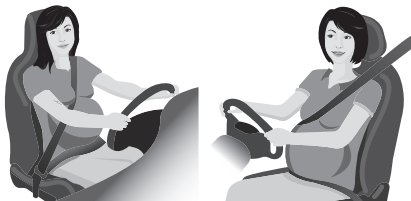
Load limiter

The seat belt load limiter is a protection unit that releases the seat belt right after a vehicle collision to prevent a secondary injury due to belt force.





Fastening the seat belt by a pregnant woman



Warning

- It is dangerous for a pregnant woman to drive, so please avoid it if possible. If it is unavoidable, consult a doctor about the precautions and fastening the seat belt during pregnancy.
- Fasten the seat belt before driving. If an accident occurs without fastening the seat belt, may be dangerous for both the pregnant woman and the fetus.
- When a pregnant woman fastens the seat belt, make sure that the belt is not positioned across her abdomen. If the belt presses her abdomen, in the event of a vehicle collision or when applying a sudden brake, may be dangerous for both the pregnant woman and the fetus.

Warnings for the seat belt

Warning

Infants, small children, pregnant women or patients

- The child restraint should be used for an infant or a small child. In particular, please note that the three-point seat belt is designed for a person who is taller than 140 cm.
- In the event of a sudden stop or an accident while a pregnant woman or a patient is wearing the seat belt, strong force may apply to the abdomen or other body parts. Make sure to consult a doctor before fastening the seat belt.

Position and method to fasten the seat belt

- The seat belt is designed for only one person. Two or more persons should not share one belt.
- If the position of the seats is incorrect, it is impossible to fasten the seat belt correctly. Always adjust the position of the seats to their normal status for driving.
- Fasten the seat belt after keeping the seat upright and leaning the back against the seat backrest with the hip against the seat cushion. If the seat belt is positioned too high or fastened too loose, the body may fall out from the shoulder belt webbing or the lap belt webbing, resulting in a serious injury or death.

- If a strong impact occurs while the seat belt is fastened with the seat backrest reclined too much, the body may fall out below the belt, causing the belt to hang around the neck and result in a serious injury.
- If the seat belt is positioned across the neck, a serious injury may occur by the seat belt when an accident occurs. Make sure to wear the three-point seat belt in a way that the belt webbings are positioned across the chest and the hips.
- Do not pull your arm over the shoulder belt. Doing so prevents the seat belt from effectively blocking the body from bouncing forward in the event of a collision. A head or neck injury may occur accordingly and the impact is applied to the ribs that are weaker than the shoulder bone, causing a serious injury.
- When the shoulder belt webbing is positioned across the abdomen, the body may fall out below the belt or a great impact may be applied to the abdomen, causing a serious injury such as intestinal rupture.
- If the belt latch is inserted into another buckle that is not the relevant buckle, the safety belt may not fit the body correctly so that it cannot protect the body properly.
- In addition, if the lap belt webbing of the two-point seat belt is too loose or the seat belt is fastened incorrectly, just as fastening a twisted seat belt, a fatal injury may occur in the event of an accident.



No modification of the seat belt and no attachment of illegal fixtures

- A modified seat belt cannot guarantee safety. Never modify the seat belt.
- Inappropriate work on safety units may adversely affect or hinder the operation of the units. Be sure to have the safety units serviced at a KG Mobility Corporation Authorized Service Center that possess the required expertise, knowledge and special tools.
- If you attach an auxiliary device or accessory to the seat belt separately, the seat belt may not operate normally. Never attach any auxiliary device or accessory to the seat belt.
- Do not loosen the seat belt by locking it with a clip or a clamp. Doing so may cause a fatal injury due to a secondary impact in the event of a collision.

Checking and managing the seat belt and the importance of safe driving

- Do not allow foreign materials to enter into the seat belt buckle.
- If the seat belt and the relevant components are damaged, the seat belt may not operate normally. Check the seat belt frequently for any damage and the status of normal operation, and if any abnormality is discovered, have the seat belt repaired at a KG Mobility Corporation Authorized Service Center immediately.

- If a strong impact has been applied to the seat belt due to an accident, etc., make sure to have the seat belt checked and replaced with a new one as needed even if there is no abnormality visually. Also check and replace the retractor and the seat belt anchorage if there is an abnormality.
- Care should be taken to prevent the seat belt from being contaminated by polishes, oils, chemicals and especially battery acid. When cleaning, wipe the seat belt carefully using a neutral detergent and water. Replace the seat belt if the webbing is frayed, contaminated or damaged.
- Do not place a hard or sharp object in the clothes or a pocket where comes into contact with the seat belt.
- The seat belt can reduce serious injuries. However, it cannot block fatal accidents and injuries completely. Keep this in mind and drive safely.



Child restraint for an infant or a small child

For an infant or a small child who cannot wear the three-point seat belt, have the infant or the small child be seated in a rear seat using a child restraint for an infant or a small child whose quality is certified by the government.

If the infant or the small child sits in the front passenger seat, the infant or the small child cannot be protected from an inflated air bag or other impacts in the event of a vehicle collision.



Warning

Seating an infant or a small child

- Do not let an infant or a small child sit in the front passenger seat. Doing so may cause a serious injury or death due to the inflation impact of the front air bag in the event of a collision accident.
- Do not ride with an infant or a small child in your arms or sitting on your lap. Doing so may cause a fatal injury to the infant or the small child in the event of a collision accident.
- If an occupant who is smaller than 140 cm wears the three-point seat belt, the seat belt cannot function fully. In such case, install and use a child restraint that fits the physical condition of the occupant.

Installing the child restraint

- Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat Protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
- Use a child restraint for an infant or a small child that passed through the certification and the safety inspection carried out by a certified government agency. Follow the manufacturer's owner's manuals for the installation and precautions of the child restraint.
- If the child restraint for an infant or a small child is installed incorrectly, it may not provide the appropriate protection function. In such case, it may result in a serious risk when an accident occurs.
- If the child restraint for an infant or a small child is not secured completely, injury or death of an infant or a small child may occur in the event of a collision accident.
- Never install a rear-facing child restraint in the front seat with front passenger air bag.
- Install the child restraint for an infant or a small child on the left or right side of the rear seat where the three-point seat belt is installed. If it is installed on the front passenger seat, a fatal injury may occur when the air bag inflates.
- When installing the child restraint for an infant or a small child in the rear seat of a vehicle where a curtain air bag is installed, install it as far as possible from the door. Failure to do so may cause serious injury or death of an infant or a small child when the curtain air bag inflates.
- When the child restraint for an infant or a small child is installed on the rear seat where the three-point seat belt is installed, be careful not to position the seat belt across the neck or face of an infant or a small child.

Using the child restraint

- When the child restraint for an infant or a small child is used, observe instructions provided by the manufacturer. Failure to do so may cause a fatal injury when an accident occurs.
- After installing the child restraint for an infant or a small child, make sure to check if it is secured correctly.
- Make sure that the child restraint is secured correctly by pushing or pulling it in various directions before letting an infant or a small child sit in the child restraint.

Managing the child restraint

- Do not carry the child restraint for an infant or a small child in the vehicle without installing or securing it. Doing so may cause the child restraint to bounce, causing an injury to the occupants in the event of sudden braking or an accident.



Caution

- This information is to help in understanding the necessity and usage of the child restraint for an infant or a small child. Use this information for reference purposes.
- When the child restraint for an infant or a small child is used, install and use it according to the owner's manual provided by the manufacturer.



Infant and child safety

Child Seat

Children that are too small to use the seat belts must be properly secured in a child restraint system.

Warning

- Never install a rear-facing child restraint in the front passenger seat with front passenger air bag.
- Because of the danger that an inflating passenger air bag could impact the rear-facing child restraint and kill the child.
- Use only the qualified child restraint systems. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for installation and use of the child restraint systems.
- Do not carry your child on your lap while driving. You cannot resist against the impact pressure in an accident. The child could be crushed between you and the parts of vehicle.
- Remember that a child restraint seat left in a concealed vehicle can cause it to be very hot. Check the seating surface before putting your child in the child restraint.
- When your child restraint is not in use, remove it from the vehicle or keep it secured with a seat belt to prevent it from being thrown forward in case of a sudden stop or an accident.
- When installing a child restraint, do not let the seat belts come across the child's neck.

Table of Vehicle Handbook Information on Child Restraint Systems Installation Suitability for Various Seating Positions



Rear-facing child seat



Forward-facing child seat



TYPE A



TYPE B

Booster seat

Mass group	Restraint device figure	Front Passenger		Rear Centre ^{*1)}	Rear Out Board
		Air bag off	Air bag on		
O ~ up to 10 kg (0 ~ 9 month)	Rear facing child seat	U	X	U	U
O+ ~ up to 13 kg (0 ~ 2 year)	Rear facing child seat	U	X	U	U
I ~ 9 to 18 kg (9 month ~ 4 year)	Rear facing / Forward facing child seat	U	X	U	U
II ~ 15 to 25 kg (4 year ~ 6 years)	Booster seat	U	U	U	U
III ~ 22 to 36 kg (6 year ~ 12 years)	Booster seat	U	U	U	U

※ Child restraint system are classified into the 5 groups according to the ECE R44

*1) Do not install a CRS with support leg in this seating position

NOTE:

U: Suitable for "universal" category restraints approved for use in the mass group.

UF: Suitable for forward-facing "universal" category restraints approved for use in the mass group.

L: Suitable for particular child restraints given on attached list. These restraints may be of the "semi-universal" categories.

X: Seat position not suitable for children in the mass group.



**Table of Vehicle Handbook Information on ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems
Installation Suitability for Various ISOFIX Positions**

Mass group	Size Class	Fixture	Vehicle ISOFIX Positions		
			Frt Passenger	Rear Centre	Rear Out Board
CARRYCOT	F (1)	ISO/L1	X	X	X
	G (1)	ISO/L2	X	X	X
GROUP 0 UP TO 10KG	E (2)	ISO/R1	X	X	IL
GROUP 0+ UP TO 13KG	E (2)	ISO/R1	X	X	IL
	D (2)	ISO/R2	X	X	IL
	C (2)	ISO/R3	X	X	IL
GROUP I 9 TO 18KG	D (2)	ISO/R2	X	X	IL
	C (2)	ISO/R3	X	X	IL
	B (3)	ISO/F2	X	X	IUF/IL
	B1 (3)	ISO/F2X	X	X	IUF/IL
	A (3)	ISO/F3	X	X	IUF/IL

NOTE: Key of letters be inserted in the above table

IUF: Suitable for ISOFIX forward child restraints systems of universal category approved for use in this mass group.

IL: Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraint systems (CRS) given in attached list.

These ISOFIX CRS are those of the "specific vehicle", "restricted" or "semi-universal" categories.

X: ISOFIX position not suitable ISOFIX child restraint systems in this mass group and/or this size class.

- (1) Some child seats are installed transversely and occupy two seats. Make sure that the feet of child are facing the door.
- (2) Slide the front seat forward all the way to install the rear-facing child restraint. Then, slide the front seat back as directed in the manual provided with the child restraint.
- (3) When using a forward-facing child restraint, do not slide the front seat backwards more than halfway for child's safety. In addition, do not tilt the front seat backrest backwards too far (max. 25°) and raise it as high as possible.



Table of Vehicle Handbook Information for Installation in Various Seating Positions on i-Size Child Restraint Systems

Seat Position	i-Size Child Restraint Systems
Front Passenger Outboard	X
Rear Outboard Left	i-U
Rear Outboard Right	i-U
Rear Center	X

Key of letters to be inserted in the above table:

i-U: Suitable for i-Size "universal" Child Restraint Systems forward and rearward facing. (valid position for forward facing and rearward facing child restraint systems approved under ECE R129)

i-UF: Suitable for forward-facing i-Size "universal" Child Restraint Systems only.

X: Seating position not suitable for i-Size "universal" Child Restraint Systems. (invalid position for child restraint systems approved under ECE R129)

List of suitable universal Child Restraint Systems (CRS)

Please read carefully the installation manual of your child restraint

Mass group		Child Restraint	Features
0	< 10 kg	-	-
0+	< 13 kg	Maxi Cosi CabrioFix	Belted Rearward facing
I	9 to 18 kg	Römer King II LS	Belted Forward facing
II	15 to 25 kg	Römer KidFIX II XP SICT	Belted Forward facing
III	22 to 36 kg	Römer KidFIX II XP SICT	Belted Forward facing
		Peg-Perego Viaggio 2~3 shuttle	

List of suitable ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems (CRS)

Please read carefully the installation manual of your child restraint

Mass group		Child Restraint	Features
0	< 10 kg	-	-
0+	< 13 kg	Maxi Cosi CabrioFix & FamilyFix	ISOFIX & Support Leg Rearward facing
I	9 to 18 kg	Römer Duo+	ISOFIX & Top Tether Forward facing
II	15 to 25 kg	Römer KidFIX II XP SICT	ISOFIX & Belt Forward facing
III	22 to 36 kg	Römer KidFIX II XP SICT	ISOFIX & Belt Forward facing
		Peg-Perego Viaggio 2~3 shuttle	

List of suitable i-Size Child Restraint Systems (CRS)

Please read carefully the installation manual of your child restraint

Mass group		Child Restraint	Features
0+	67 cm - 105 cm ≤ 18.5 kg	Maxi Cosi 2way Pearl & 2wayFix	ISOFIX & Support Leg Rearward facing
	> 15 months 105 cm ≤ 18.5 kg		ISOFIX & Support Leg Forward facing
100 cm - 135 cm		Besafe iZi Flex FIX i-size	ISOFIX & Support Leg (without side bumpers)



Installation of crs secured by the seatbelt

Front-facing Child Seat



Secure the child restraint with a seat belt as shown in the figure.



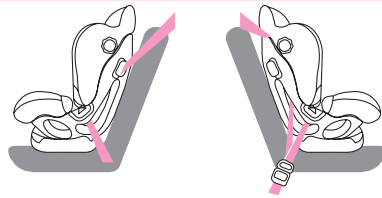
Caution

- When installing a child restraint system, follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer.



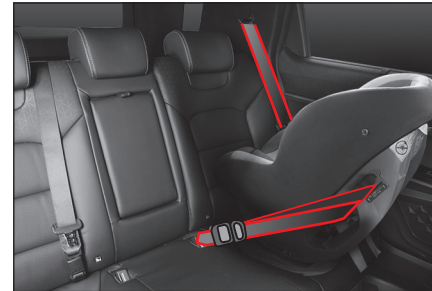
Warning

Do not use the car seat unless the followings are met.
The child seat may not perform as intended, which may result in a serious injury.



- Make sure that the buckle of the seat belt is securely engaged.
- Make sure that the seat belt is not loose or twisted.
- Make sure that the base does not move due to excessive play in all directions.
- You can't adjust the angle of the backrest with the child seat installed. If you're trying to do so, the seat belt will be slack, which incurs danger. Always adjust the angle of the backrest before installing the child seat.

Rear-facing Child Seat



Secure the child restraint with a seat belt as shown in the figure.



Caution

- Never install a rear facing child restraint on the front seat without ensuring that the front airbag is deactivated. KG Mobility Corporation recommends that a child restraint to be installed on the rear seat.

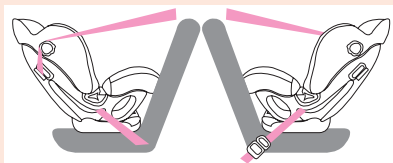
When installing a child restraint, adjust the seat back angle as desired.



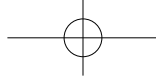
Warning

Do not use the child seat unless the followings are met.

The child seat may not perform as intended, which may result in a serious injury.



- **Make sure that the buckle of the seat belt is securely engaged.**
- **Make sure that the seat belt is not loose or twisted.**
- **Check if the angle of the backrest is set to 4 stage.**
- **Make sure that the base does not move due to excessive play in all directions.**
- **Make sure that the seat belt is routed through the rear-facing belt path and buckled up.**

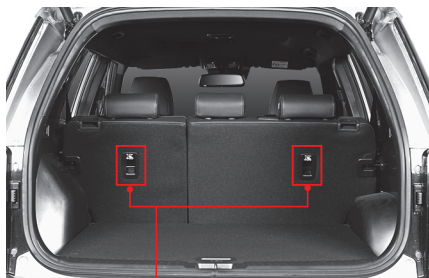


Securing a child restraint system with “ISOFIX/i-Size” system and “Tether Anchorage” system*

ISOFIX/i-Size system is a standardised method of fitting child seats that eliminates the need to use the standard adult seatbelt to secure the seat in the vehicle.

This enables a much more secure and positive location with the added benefit of easier and quicker installation. An ISOFIX/i-Size-seat can only be installed if it has approval in accordance with the requirements of ECE R44 or ECE R129.

Locations of ISOFIX/i-Size Lower Anchors and Top Tether



- 1 Two ISOFIX/i-Size lower anchors are installed at the bottom of the seatback at each outboard seat as shown in the figure.
- 2 The ISOFIX/i-Size lower anchors can be identified by the symbol attached on the top surface.



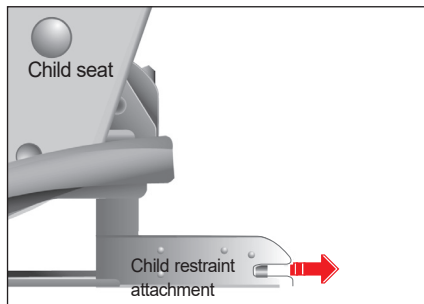
- 3 Two (for EURO countries) or three (Australia) ISOFIX/i-Size top tethers are installed at the upper side of seatback.

How to use ISOFIX/i-Size Lower Anchor

The ISOFIX/i-Size lower anchor is exposed when you widen the space between seatback and cushion.



- 1 Now, you can see the ISOFIX/i-Size lower anchors.



2 Insert the child restraint attachments into the ISOFIX/i-Size lower anchors until it clicks.

3 Adjust the seatback angle as desired.

Warning

- When using the ISOFIX/i-Size lower anchor, make sure that no interference are around the bar and the seat belt is not stuck.
- Rock the child restraint to check if it is securely installed. Refer to instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint.
- Do not install the child restraint if it hinders the operations of front seat.

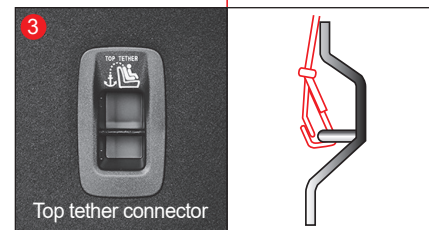
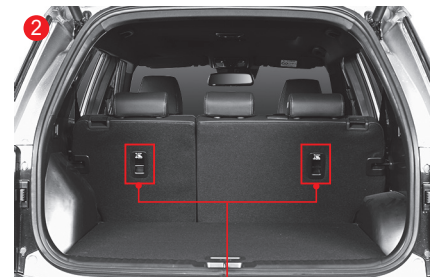
How to use Top Tether

1 Adjust the seatback angle as desired.



2 Connect the top tether connector in child restraint to the top tether on the seatback of the second row seat.

3 Securely tighten the child restraint by adjusting the webbing of top tether connector.





Warning For Child Restraint

- **Use only the officially approved child restraint.**
KG Mobility is not responsible for the personal injury and property damage due to the defect of child restraint.
- **These seats are subject to the ECE R44 or ECE R129 standard.**
- **Use only the child restraint with proper type and size for your baby.**
- **Use only the child restraint at proper location.**
- **Child restraint has 5 categories based on the weight as below according to ECE R44.:**
GROUP 0: 0 ~ 10KG
GROUP 0+: 0 ~ 13KG
GROUP I: 9 ~ 18KG
GROUP II: 15 ~ 25KG
GROUP III: 22 ~ 36KG
- **Group 0 & 0+**
Rear facing child restraint fitted on the rear seat
- **Group I**
Rear facing or forward facing child restraint fitted on the rear seat
- **Group II & III**
Booster seat fitted on the rear seat with seat belt fastened

Always follow the installation and use instructions provided by the manufacturer of the booster seat.

- **i-Size:** child seats with i-Size approval must meet the requirements prescribed in the ECE R129 standard in relation to installation and safety. Child seat manufacturers can tell you which seats have i-Size approval for this vehicle.



Caution

- Top tether is the supplemental device to secure the child restraint system after engaging it by the lower latches. Therefore, do not secure the child restraint system only with the top tether. The increased load may cause the hooks or anchors to break, causing serious injury or death.
- If a child restraint is not properly secured to the vehicle and a child is not properly restrained in the child restraint, the child could be seriously injured or killed in a collision. Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer for installation.
- Make sure the latches of the child restraint system are latched to the lower latches. In this case, you can hear the “click” sound.
- The child restraint seat strap may not work properly if attached somewhere other than the correct top tether.
- Make sure that the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it in different directions.
- Incorrectly installed child restraint system may cause an unexpected personal injury.



Air bag*

The air bag is an ancillary safety unit that inflates instantaneously in the event of a vehicle collision, protecting an occupant from the impact.

The air bag system is composed of the air bag crash sensor, air bag control module and air bag.

The air bag operates according to various factors including the strength and direction of a vehicle collision, strength of a colliding object, vehicle speed and the condition of the occupant.

Warning

- The air bag is an auxiliary unit that supplements the protection function of the seat belt and it cannot replace the seat belt. The seat belt should be fastened during driving.
- The air bag includes electric sensors and control modules and it only operates when the ignition switch is in the On position or the vehicle is running.
- The air bag is installed on the part where “AIRBAG” is displayed. Do not apply an impact to, place an article on or attach an accessory to the part where the air bag is installed. Doing so may cause a serious injury when the air bag inflates.
- When 10 years have passed after the air bag is installed, make sure to have the air bag checked at a KG Mobility Corporation Authorized Service Center even if there is no abnormality in the air bag system visually.

Air bag warning label

The air bag warning label displaying the risk of secondary damages in case the air bag inflates and safety information is attached to the passenger side sun visor. Read and familiarize yourself with the safety information before driving.

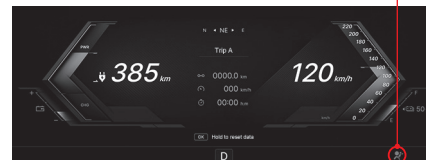


Warning

- The air bag is a unit that explodes a type of gunpowder in the unit and inflates the air bag instantaneously to protect the occupant. Therefore, noise, glare and smoke occur due to the explosion of gunpowder when the air bag inflates.
- The occupant may get burned when the air bag inflates. In some cases, the occupant may suffer injuries such as a bruise, bone fracture, abrasion and facial blows due to the inflated air bag and secondary damages such as broken glass.

Air bag warning lamp

The air bag warning lamp turns on when the ignition switch is turned On, and it turns off when there is no abnormality in the air bag system.



Warning

- If the air bag warning lamp stays on continuously, it indicates that there is abnormality in the air bag or the seat belt pretensioner system. Have your vehicle checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Corporation Authorized Service Center immediately.



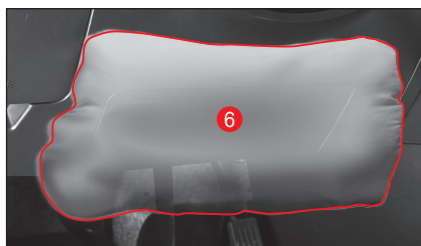
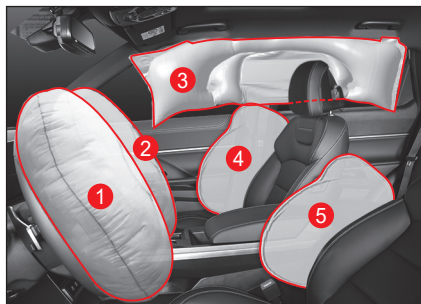
Air bag crash sensor and air bag control module

The vehicle is equipped with sensors that can detect a collision and a module that controls the air bag operation.



- ① Air bag control module
- ② Front impact sensor (G-sensor type)
- ③ Side impact sensor (pressure sensor type)
- ④ Side impact sensor (G-sensor type)

Configuration of air bag



- ① Driver air bag
- ② Front passenger air bag
- ③ Curtain air bag
- ④ Front seat side air bag
- ⑤ Far side air bag
- ⑥ Driver knee air bag

Passenger Air Bag ON/OFF Switch*



2

The front passenger air bag is disabled (not inflatable) when placing the passenger air bag ON/OFF switch to "OFF" position. This switch is located on the right side of the instrument panel, and you can see it when opening the front passenger door. Press and turn this switch to operate.

"OFF" position: disabled (not inflatable)

"ON" position: enabled (inflatable)



Driver air bag

The driver air bag protects the driver's head in the event of a front collision.

The driver air bag is installed in the center of the steering wheel.



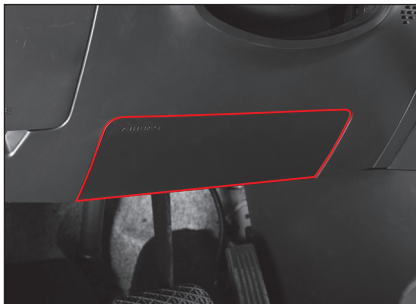
Warning

- The driver should sit as far as possible from the steering wheel within the range that it does not hinder the driver from controlling the vehicle. If the driver sits too close to the steering wheel, a fatal injury may occur when the air bag inflates.
- Do not place any object on or attach an accessory or a sticker to the air bag cover (steering wheel cover). Doing so may hinder the air bag from operating normally and increase a risk of injury when the air bag inflates.

Driver knee air bag

The driver knee air bag operates along with the driver air bag at the same time in the event of a front collision, protecting the driver's knees.

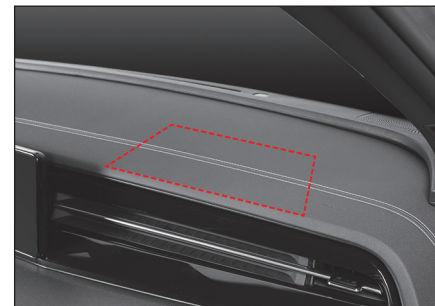
The driver knee air bag is installed in the dashboard under the steering wheel.



Front passenger air bag

The front passenger air bag protects the front passenger's head in the event of a front collision.

The front passenger air bag is installed inside of the dashboard in front of the front passenger seat.



Warning

- Sit as far as possible from the dashboard where the front passenger air bag is installed. If the front passenger sits too close to the dashboard, a fatal injury may occur when the air bag inflates.

Notice

- The front passenger air bag operates along with the driver air bag at the same time.



Front seat side air bag

The front seat side air bag protects the side of the front seat occupant in the event of a side collision that meets the condition for inflating the air bag.

The front seat side air bag is mounted in the side of the driver seat backrest and the front passenger seat backrest.



Warning

- Do not hang clothes or accessories or use seat covers on the seats where the side air bag is mounted.
- Do not apply impact to the area where the collision detection sensor for the side air bag (bottompart of the B pillar) is installed. Doing so may cause the side air bag to malfunction.

Far side air bag

The far side air bag unfolds between the passenger and the driver in the event of a side collision to prevent the passengers from being injured by a physical collision between them.



Warning

- Do not use seat covers or hang clothes/ accessories on the seats with front seat center side air bag.
- Do not apply impact to the area where the collision detection sensor for the far side air bag (bottompart of B pillar) is installed. Doing so may cause the far side air bag to malfunction.

Curtain air bag

The curtain air bag protects the head of the front seat occupants and the rear seat occupants in the event of a side collision that meets the condition for inflating the air bag.

The curtain air bag is mounted on the roof at the top of the front and rear doors on both sides.



Warning

- Do not apply impact to the curtain air bag crash sensor (bottompart of the B pillar). Doing so may cause the curtain air bag to malfunction.
- Do not slam the door. Doing so may cause the air bag to malfunction.

2



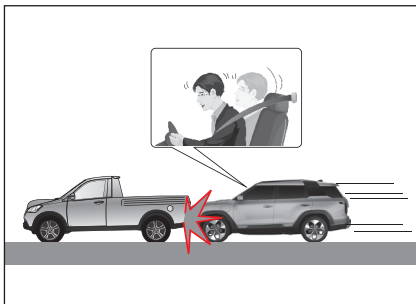
Notice

- The side air bags and the curtain air bags operate at the same time in the event of a side collision, but the left and right side air bags and curtain air bags operate separately.

Cases where the air bag does not inflate

The air bag does not inflate in all collision accidents. The air bag may not inflate, in any of the following cases:

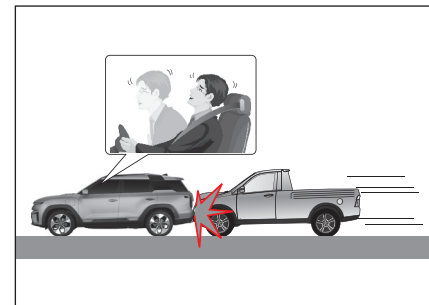
In the event of a slight collision



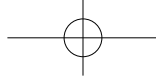
The air bag may not inflate in the event of a slight collision that the collision detection sensor cannot detect or the strength of collision is weak.

In such case, the seat belt can provide enough protection and the air bag operation may instead give secondary damages to the occupant such as a burn or an injury.

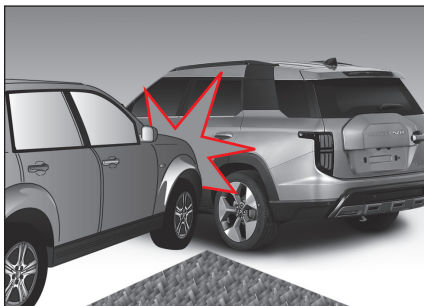
In the event of a rear end collision



In the event of a rear end collision by another vehicle, the body of the occupants move backwards, so the air bag cannot provide enough protection even if it inflates. In such case, the air bag may not inflate.



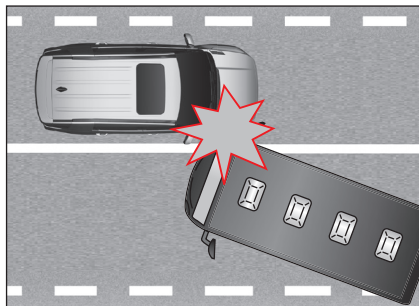
In the event of a side collision



In the event of a side collision, the occupants cannot be protected by the front air bags, so the front air bags may not inflate.

However, the curtain air bags and the side air bags operate depending on the degree of impact in the event of a side collision, protecting the front seat occupants.

In the event of a diagonal collision



Since the impact of a collision in the diagonal direction is weaker than the impact of a collision in the front or side direction, the air bag may not inflate.

In the event of a collision with a narrow object

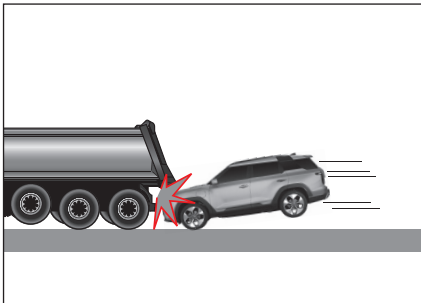


In the event of a collision with a narrow object such as a street light, utility pole or tree, the degree of impact applied to the sensor may not be enough, so the air bag may not inflate.

2



In case the vehicle moves beneath another vehicle



Generally, most drivers apply a sudden brake when an accident occurs, so the front part of the vehicle becomes lower. Therefore, the vehicle often moves beneath the opposing vehicle in the event of an accident against a tall vehicle such as a bus or a truck. In such case, the air bag may not inflate.

In the event of a rollover accident



If the vehicle turns over or rolls over, the occupant cannot be protected fully by the air bag alone. In such case, the air bag may not inflate.

However, the curtain air bag or the side air bag may inflate according to the degree of impact applied to the side when the vehicle turns over.

Secondary injury due to air bag deployment



If the air bag control module detects the impact during an accident, it transmits the signal to deploy the air bag. This signal triggers the explosion of the powder, which is included in the air bag module, and the air bag deploys in a very short time to protect the occupants. When the air bag inflates, there will be heavy noise, glare and smoke. You could suffer secondary injuries caused by inflated air bag such as an abrasion, a bruise, a burn or injury by broken glasses.



Other cases

Cases where the driver/front passenger air bags do not inflate

- When the air bag warning lamp is on
- When an impact is applied to the top of the hood by a falling rock, etc.
- When the vehicle falls into a drainage ditch or a puddle

Cases where the side air bags or curtain air bags do not inflate

- When the air bag warning lamp is on
- In case of a front or rear collision
- When the vehicle rolls over or turns over in the side direction with a moderate degree of impact

Warnings for the air bag

Warning

Seating an infant or a small child

- Do not let an infant or a small child sit in the front passenger seat or ride with an infant or a small child in your arms. The infant or the small child and you may get seriously injured or killed when the air bag inflates.
- Do not install a child restraint for an infant or a small child in the front passenger seat. If the air bag inflates, the infant or the small child may get seriously injured or killed due to the impact.
- When installing the child restraint for an infant or a small child in the rear seat of a vehicle where the curtain air bag is installed, install it as far as possible from the door. Failure to do so may cause serious injury or death of an infant or a small child when the curtain air bag inflates.

Warning

Driving and riding position

- Only hold the rim of the steering wheel when driving. Doing so ensures that the air bag inflates fully when it operates.
- Do not lean against the steering wheel or maintain your arms in an “X” shape. You may get seriously injured when there is a problem in the air bag operation or the air bag inflates.
- Do not drive while leaning forward or come too close to the steering wheel. You may get hit by the air bag and seriously injured on your head and neck or even killed before it inflates fully.
- If you wear the seat belt in an unstable position or while leaning to one side, the air bag cannot provide enough protection. You may even get seriously injured by the air bag.
- Do not place your feet or hands on the dashboard. You may get seriously injured when the air bag inflates.
- Do not lean against the door or stick your arm out of the window. You may get seriously injured when the curtain air bag inflates.



! Warning

Handling the air bag

- Do not apply impact to air bag-related devices including the steering wheel, the part where the air bag is installed, wires and the seat belt pretensioner system. You may get seriously injured when the air bag inflates suddenly.
- Do not apply impact to the seat backrest where the side air bag is installed. Doing so may cause the side air bag to malfunction.
- Do not slam the door when closing the door. Doing so may cause the curtain air bag or the front air bag to malfunction.
- Do not place any object between the air bag and the occupant. Doing so may hinder the operation of the air bag and you may get injured by such an object when the air bag inflates.
- After the air bag and the seat belt pretensioner operate, their relevant components become very hot. Never touch such components until they have cooled down.

! Warning

Operation of the air bag

- The air bag is a unit that protects the life of a passenger from a sudden accident, and it inflates at high speed by hot gas. The occupant may suffer injuries such as a burn, abrasion or bruise according to the circumstances at the time when the air bag inflates.
- A loud noise, dust, smoke or gas that occurs when the air bag or the seat belt pretensioner operates is normal.
- Gas generated when the air bag or the seat belt pretensioner operates is nontoxic, but if your skin, eyes or nose becomes irritated, wash with clean water. If the symptom persists, consult your doctor.
- Caution should be taken that the windshield or window glasses may be broken due to an impact from the operation of the front seat air bag or curtain air bag.

! Warning

Do not modify the air bag or change the structure

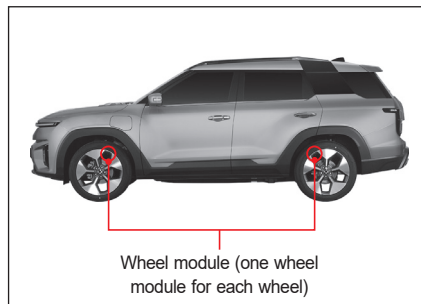
- Do not modify or change the structure of any air bag-related devices including the steering wheel, the part where the air bag is installed or the wires. Do not check an air bag-related circuit with a tester. Doing so may cause the air bag system to malfunction or break down, resulting in personal injury and property damage.
- Do not replace the steering wheel with a product which is not a KG Mobility Corporation genuine part. Doing so may cause the air bag in the steering wheel not to operate normally.



Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)*

The tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) is an auxiliary safety unit that detects if the tire pressure is abnormally high or low and informs such fact to the driver, preventing an accident that may occur due to the tire pressure.

- The TPMS warning light (⚠) comes on if the tire pressure is abnormal.
- Also, if there is abnormality in the tire pressure monitoring system (including the sensor), the TPMS warning light (⚠) blinks and stays on.



The electronic control unit of the TPMS receives various data including the tire pressure and temperature from the wheel module mounted on each wheel and displays such data on the instrument cluster.

- Proper tire pressure: 36 psi, 2.48 bar
- The proper tire pressure is the value measured at room temperature (20 °C) in the condition of an empty vehicle when the tires have been cooled properly.

Notice

- If the vehicle is driven at a speed of 30 km/h or faster after the vehicle is started, the tire pressure is detected within 5 minutes although it might be slightly different depending on the system status. If the tire pressure is not sensed, “-” will be displayed.

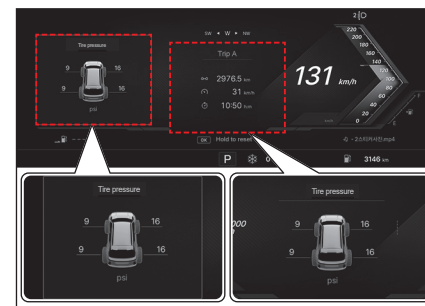


Caution

- The tire pressure displayed on the display of the instrument cluster can be changed by various environmental factors including the driving status of the vehicle, number of occupants in the vehicle and the status of air injection into the tires.
- When air is injected into a tire, airs with different temperature are mixed, so the tire pressure may be changed until a temperature balance is reached.

2

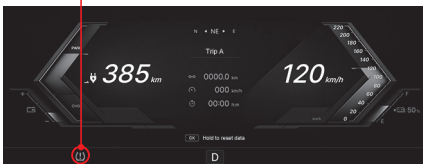
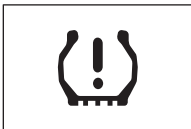
Checking the tire pressure



Select "Show Tire Pressure (TPMS)" from the instrument panel trip menu to view the pressure of all tires on the instrument panel.



If the tire pressure or the TPMS is abnormal



If the tire pressure or the tire pressure monitoring system is abnormal, the TPMS warning light blinks or comes on.

- Abnormal tire pressure (low/flat): The TPMS warning light stays on.
- Abnormal tire pressure monitoring system (including the sensor): The TPMS warning light blinks for approximately 70 seconds and stays on.

Warning

- If the TPMS warning light comes on in the instrument cluster, the tire pressure is insufficient, excessive or uneven. Make sure to park your vehicle at a safe place and check the tire pressure.
- If the TPMS warning light stays on after checking the tire pressures, starting the vehicle and driving the vehicle for more than 10 minutes at a speed over 30 km/h, have your vehicle checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Corporation Authorized Service Center.
- A sudden tire damage due to an external factor such as a nail or a road debris, etc. may not be detected immediately. If the vehicle becomes unstable while driving, slow down, move the vehicle to a safe place and check the vehicle.
- Do not modify or remodel your vehicle in a way that hinders the operation of the TPMS.
- For safety, always use genuine wheels equipped with the tire pressure monitoring sensor.

Caution

- Adjust the tire pressure when the tires are cold (no driving for 2 or 3 hours).
- Even if the tire pressure has been adjusted to a proper tire pressure, the TPMS warning light (⚠) may come on due to a difference in the internal tire temperature and air temperature. This is the phenomenon that the tire pressure drops in proportion to the temperature and this does not indicate that the TPMS is abnormal.
- If you need to drive while the ambient temperature rises or drops rapidly, check and adjust your tire pressure to the prescribed inflation pressure in advance before driving.
- For safe driving, check your tire pressure regularly without simply depending on the TPMS.

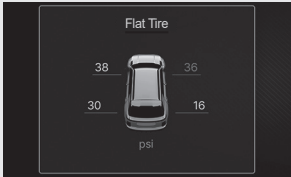


Display of the TPMS status on the instrument cluster

Item		Pop-up	Operating condition
Tire pressure OK			It is displayed when the tire pressure is normal.
Low pressure		-	In order to detect whether the tire pressure is normal or insufficient, the TPMS wheel module must be properly installed on each wheel. After IGN ON, it takes several seconds for the TPMS ECU and TPMS wheel module to communicate normally, and during this time, each state is displayed.
			It is displayed when the tire pressure is insufficient to the extent that it is to be checked (approximately 20% less than the specified tire pressure). The corresponding tire's pressure indicator blinks (alternating white and red) and the TPMS warning light turns on.
Check tires			It is displayed when the tire pressure is insufficient to the extent that it is to be checked (approximately 23.9 psi or less). The corresponding tire's pressure indicator blinks (alternating white and red) and the TPMS warning light turns on.

2



Item	Pop-up		Operating condition
Flat tire			It is displayed when the tire pressure drops sharply or there is a flat tire. The corresponding tire's pressure indicator blinks (alternating white and red) and the TPMS warning light turns on.
High pressure			It is displayed when the tire pressure is excessive. The corresponding tire's pressure indicator blinks (alternating white and red).
Pressure imbalance			If the left/right tire pressure differs by more than 5 psi, the corresponding tire pressure indicator blinks (alternating white and orange).
Notice	- If a certain tire pressure is shown as "--" while the other tire pressures are shown normally, the TPMS wheel module of the relevant tire may be abnormal. Have your vehicle checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Corporation Authorized Service Center immediately. - If all tire pressures are displayed as "--", it is possible that two or more TPMS wheel modules are defective or communication with the ECU has failed. In this case, immediately have the vehicle checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Dealer or KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.		



When low tire pressure is detected

When a tire with significantly low pressure is detected, the TPMS warning light (⚠) comes on and the position of the relevant tire with low pressure is indicated on the instrument cluster.

In such case, slow down, bring your vehicle to a KG Mobility Corporation Authorized Service Center and have your vehicle checked and serviced.



Caution

- If you drive the vehicle continuously with a low tire pressure, the life of the tires, vehicle operating force, brake force and vehicle fuel efficiency may decrease.
- If you cannot bring your vehicle to a KG Mobility Corporation Authorized Service Center, add air to the tire using the service kit for tire repair.

📖 Refer to "Inflating a tire" (p.5-13)

When you have rotated the tires

When you have rotated the tires, the TPMS resets the position of each tire.

If the vehicle is driven at a speed of 30 km/h or faster, typically the system completes the reset within 5 minutes although it might be slightly different depending on the system status.

📖 Refer to "Rotating the tire positions" (p.6-31)



Warning

- If you replace a tire where sealant has been injected for repairing the tire, be sure to have the exterior of the TPMS sensor and the TPMS checked for normal operation at a KG Mobility Corporation Authorized Service Center.

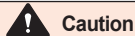


Caution

- If you rotated the tires or replaced a wheel module including the tire pressure detection sensor, the tire position may not be recognized correctly at the beginning of driving so that the previous tire pressure may be displayed or the TPMS warning light (⚠) may turn on. This is a temporary state which is not a failure.
- The time taken for resetting the tire position may vary depending on the driving condition of the vehicle.



Cautions for the TPMS



Caution

- If a wheel without a wheel module (tire pressure detection sensor) is installed to the vehicle, the TPMS warning light turns on and the TPMS does not operate.
- Do not rely too much on the TPMS and be sure to check the tire pressure status before driving the vehicle.
- The TPMS operates in a way that it communicates with the wheel module by wireless. Therefore, if an electronic device such as a mobile speed camera detector that can create radio interference is installed to the vehicle, the TPMS may not operate normally.
- In an area with a strong electromagnetic field (police stations, government offices, broadcasting stations, military facilities, transmitting towers, etc.), the TPMS may fail and the TPMS warning light (⚠) may turn on.
- If any foreign object is caught in the transmitter attached to the tire wheels while driving on a muddy or snowy road, hindering the communication with the receiver of the vehicle, the radio interference occurs due to strong external waves or a metal object is located near the TPMS, the tire pressure may be displayed with a time delay or may not be displayed normally.



Caution

- When you drive the vehicle with snow chains installed, the snow chains may hinder the communication between the wheel module and the antenna so that the TPMS may not operate normally. However, this does not impair the operation of the vehicle.
- When air is injected into a tire, the tire pressure displayed on the air injection device may be different from the tire pressure displayed on the TPMS. This difference is caused by factors including the driving status of the vehicle, number of occupants in the vehicle and the status of air injection into the tire and this does not indicate the failure of the TPMS.
- Be careful not to damage the wheel module when the tires are replaced. If the wheel module receives an impact or is damaged when the tires are replaced, the tire pressure detection function does not operate.
- If you have your tires replaced at a tire shop other than a KG Mobility Corporation Authorized Service Center, be sure to inform that the TPMS has been fitted to the tires.
- The life of the battery in the tire pressure detection sensor (wheel module) may be reduced if abnormalities such as checking tire pressure, low pressure, high pressure and pressure imbalance occur frequently.



Anti-theft and warning system

Immobilizer system*

The immobilizer system is a vehicle anti-theft system that prevents it from starting the vehicle unless a permitted key is used.

The vehicle can only be started when authentication is done by comparing the password of the transponder built into the smart key with password of the electric vehicle control unit.

Caution

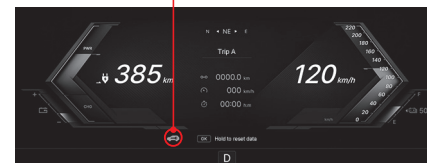
- The immobilizer system cannot be removed from the vehicle under any circumstance. If you arbitrarily remove or damage the immobilizer system, you cannot start the vehicle. Never remove, damage or modify the immobilizer system.
- The immobilizer system should be repaired only by a licensed technician at a KG Mobility Corporation Authorized Service Center.
- When the code of the transponder is deleted or an additional key is registered, observe the process in person.
- Do not install a metallic accessory near the smart key. Such accessory changes the signal delivered to the ignition switch, preventing it from starting the vehicle.
- Do not drop the smart key or apply impact to it. Doing so may damage the transponder.
- Do not modify the vehicle arbitrarily to install a remote starting device. Doing so may cause a problem in starting the vehicle or a fatal accident.

Immobilizer/smart key warning light

If the immobilizer or the smart key system is abnormal, the immobilizer/smart key warning light will blink.



2



Notice

- The communication time between the transponder and the vehicle control unit varies depending on the case. If the communication time is short, the warning lamp may not be lit.



If the vehicle does not start

In the event of the communication error between the transponder and the vehicle control unit due to a system internal fault or external communication obstacle, the vehicle will not start.

In such case, the immobilizer warning light will blink.

You may not be able to start the vehicle in a vehicle with the immobilizer system, in any of the following cases:

- When two or more smart keys come into contact with each other are used
- When the smart keys is used near a device that sends or receives electromagnetic fields or waves
- When the smart keys is used near electric or electronic devices such as lighting equipment, security keys or security cards
- When the smart keys is used near a key chain, a magnet, a metallic object or a battery



Caution

- **You may not be able to start the vehicle due to an external factor (key chain, magnet, etc.) or early starting before the vehicle preheating time to cause communication failure with the immobilizer. In such case, eliminate the factor preventing it from starting the vehicle, place the smart key outside the operation range of the antenna for approximately 10 seconds or longer and start the vehicle again.**
- **If the immobilizer/smart key warning light blinks continuously and you still cannot start the vehicle after eliminating the external factor, have your vehicle checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.**

When the transponder is damaged

You can't start the vehicle with a key whose transponder is damaged. In such case, replace the smart key with a new one and register the relevant code on the vehicle control unit.

When you lose the key

When you lose your key, the transponder code of the lost key registered on the vehicle control unit should be deleted.

Have KG Mobility Authorized Service Center take measures for preventing vehicle theft by a lost key.



Theft deterrent system

The theft deterrent system is a device that prevents theft of the vehicle by activating the anti-theft alarm when the door, tailgate or hood is open in an armed mode.

Entering the theft monitoring mode

When the door lock button (including the door lock/unlock button on the exterior of the front doors) of the smart key is pressed with all doors, tailgate and hood closed, the system enters the theft monitoring mode.

- When the system enters the theft monitoring mode, the warning light blinks twice and the warning buzzer sounds once.
- If approximately 30 seconds have passed without opening the door after unlocking the door using the smart key in the theft monitoring mode, all doors are locked again and the system enters theft monitoring mode.



Caution

- If you insert the key into the door key hole and lock the doors, only the doors are locked but the theft deterrent system is not activated.
- The system enters the theft monitoring mode only when the ignition switch is on Off and all doors, tailgate and hood are closed completely.
- If the ignition switch is on Acc or On or the vehicle is being started, the system does not enter the theft monitoring mode.

2



Activating the theft alarm

In the theft monitoring mode, the warning light and the warning buzzer operate at an interval of 1 second for 30 seconds in any of the following cases:

- When an attempt to open the door, tailgate or motor room hood without using the smart key is made
- When the key is inserted into the key hole to open the door
- When the door lock lever is placed in the unlock position forcibly

When the theft deterrent system is activated, the alarm stops in any of the following cases: However, the theft monitoring mode is maintained at this time.

- When the door lock button or door unlock button on the smart key is pressed
- When the door lock/unlock button on the exterior of the front door is pressed
- When the ignition switch is On

Holding the theft alarm

The alarm does not sound and is on hold in any of the following cases:

- When the tailgate is opened by pressing the open tailgate button on the smart key
- When the tailgate is opened by pressing the open button inside the tailgate door handle with the smart key detected

Notice

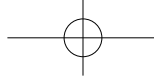
- **An armed mode is maintained even if the tailgate is open in an anti-theft alarm hold state. When the tailgate is closed, it also returns to an armed mode.**

Canceling the theft monitoring mode

The theft monitoring mode is canceled when the door is switched to the Unlock position using the smart key (including the door lock/unlock button on the exterior of the front doors).

Notice

- **When the theft monitoring mode is canceled, the warning light blinks once and the warning buzzer sounds twice.**
- **All doors are locked again and the system enters theft monitoring mode, when approximately 30 seconds have passed without opening the door after unlocking the door using the smart key in the theft monitoring mode.**



3. Convenient Equipment

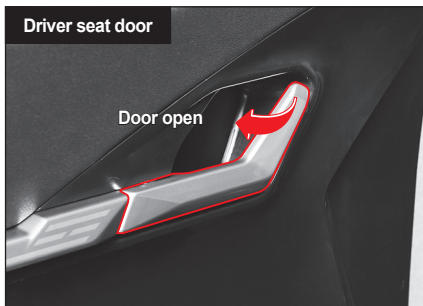
You can check information regarding devices that allow you to drive the vehicle conveniently and wisely and how to use such devices.

An explanation is provided for doors, seats, windows as well as various convenient equipment including the tailgate, various lights and lamps, mirrors, heater and air conditioner, AV/navigation, storage and cargo box.



Door

How To Lock/Unlock & Open Door



Door Opening Lever

- Driver door opening lever
Pulling the door opening lever with the door locked will unlock all doors and open the driver's door.
- Front passenger door opening lever
Pulling the door opening lever with the door locked will unlock all doors. At this time, pull the door opening lever again to open the front passenger's door.
- Rear door opening lever
Pulling the door opening lever with the door locked will unlock that rear door only. At this time, pull the door opening lever again to open the door.



Warning

- Take care not to allow the door to open by pulling the door opening lever while driving. If any door is open while driving it can pose a serious risk.

How To Check If Door Locked/Unlocked



- The buttonless integrated control panel allows you to confirm that the door is locked/unlocked.

Notice

- When any door is unlocked, the door unlock indicator is displayed.

Door Lock/Unlock button

Each time the door Lock/Unlock button on the driver seat is pressed, the status of all doors and the tailgate is changed between locked and unlocked alternately.



Caution

- You cannot lock the door using the door Lock/Unlock button or the smart key when the door is opened even slightly.
- You cannot unlock the door with the driver door Lock/Unlock button in theft monitoring mode.



Warning

- Before driving the vehicle, lock all doors from the driver seat using the door lock/unlock lever. Be sure to drive the vehicle with all doors locked when a child is present in the vehicle. If the door is opened suddenly while driving, you may face a serious risk.
- Before you get out of the vehicle, check the rear and front sides of the vehicle first to see if there is any vehicle, motor cycle, bicycle or person passing by. In particular, opening the door without checking the rear side may lead to an accident.

Auto door lock function at the time of driving

When the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed, all doors and tailgate are automatically locked.

Notice

- In the main menu of the hypervisor control panel, select Vehicle Settings (⚙️) → Door/Tailgate → Auto locking → OFF / When driving / When shifting to R, N or D gear.

Auto door unlock function at the time of collision

When a collision accident occurs with all doors locked and the air bag is activated, all doors are unlocked automatically.



Warning

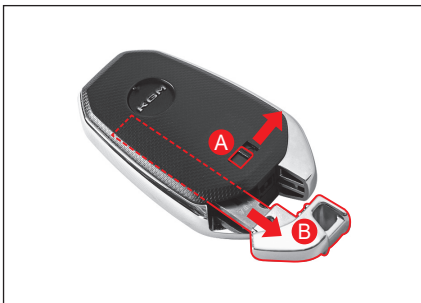
- If the vehicle body or a door has been deformed due to an impact from an accident, the auto door unlock function may not operate normally.



How To Lock Doors In Emergency

If you cannot lock the doors using a smart key because of dead battery, wave interference or etc., you may use the mechanical key (secondary key) to lock the doors manually. (excluding driver door)

☞ Refer to "Using the emergency key" (p.4-14)



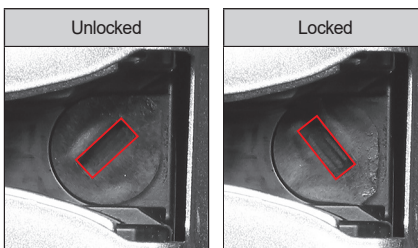
- Remove the emergency key (B) from its body while pressing the emergency key lock (A) at the smart key in the direction of the arrow.

Caution

- Attempting to fold in the mechanical key without pressing the mechanical key release button can lead to smart key breakage.

To lock doors with mechanical key (excluding driver door)

- 1 Open the door, insert the mechanical key into the emergency lock located behind the door and turn the key in the direction of the arrow.



- 2 Close the door with the groove of the emergency lock still locked.

Caution

- If the door is locked using an emergency lock, the door can be unlocked using the Smart key/REKES key or by pulling the door opening lever from the vehicle interior.



Child safety door lock

The child safety door lock is installed in order to prevent a child from opening the door in the vehicle when a child is present in the rear seats.

The child safety door lock is provided at the inner side of the rear seat doors.

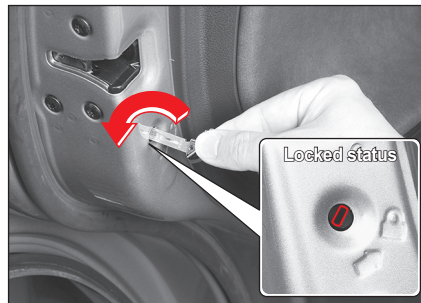


Locking/unlocking the door lock

When the child safety door lock is locked, the rear seat doors cannot be opened with the door open lever in the vehicle even if the rear seat doors are unlocked. In such case, the rear seat doors can be opened only from the outside of the vehicle.

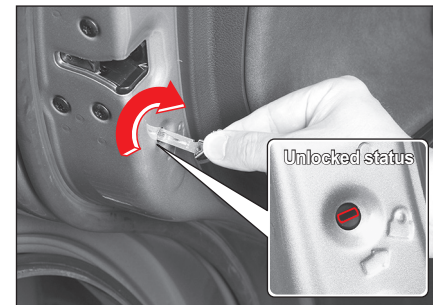
Locking the child safety door lock

Place the child safety door lock lever in the lock position by turning it counterclockwise.



Unlocking the child safety door lock

Place the child safety door lock lever in the unlock position by turning it clockwise.



3



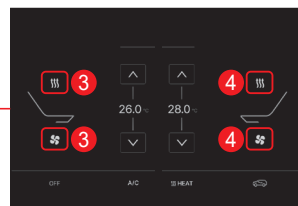
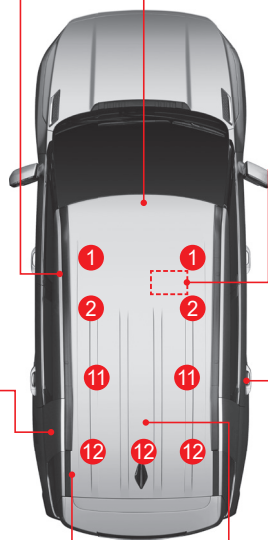
Warning

- When a child is present in the vehicle, place the child safety door lock lever in the lock position to prevent the child from opening the door in the vehicle.



Seat

Seat & adjustment switch / button / lever



Front seat

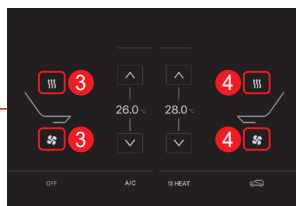
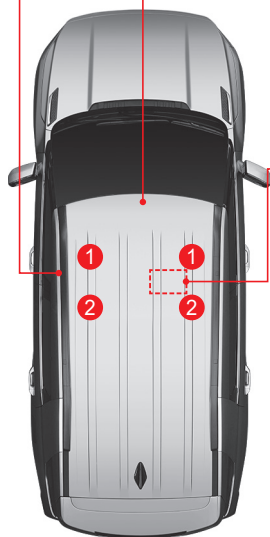
- 1 Front seat
- 2 Sliding head restraint
- 3 Driver seat heating and ventilation switch
- 4 Passenger seat heating and ventilation switch
- 5 Seatback reclining adjustment lever
- 6 Seat cushion tilt adjustment lever
- 7 Seat height adjustment lever
- 8 Seat position adjustment lever
- 9 Lumbar support adjustment button
- 10 Walk-in button for passenger seat adjustment

Rear seat

- 11 Rear seat (4:6 split type)
- 12 Head restraint
- 13 Rear seat warmer button
- 14 Rear seat armrest (cup holder)
- 15 Rear seat webbing guide
- 16 Seatback reclining adjustment lever (folding)



Seat & adjustment switch / button / lever (VAN)*



Front seat

- ① Front seat
- ② Sliding head restraint
- ③ Driver seat heating and ventilation switch
- ④ Passenger seat heating and ventilation switch
- ⑤ Seatback reclining adjustment lever
- ⑥ Seat cushion tilt adjustment lever
- ⑦ Seat height adjustment lever
- ⑧ Seat position adjustment lever
- ⑨ Lumbar support adjustment button
- ⑩ Walk-in button for passenger seat adjustment

3



Front seat

Adjusting the headrest

Adjusting the front and rear angles

- Push the rear section of the headrest (1) in the arrow direction. The angle of the headrest can be adjusted in 3 levels.
- To return the headrest to its original position, push it to the end in the arrow direction again and release it.



! Caution

- Do not hang heavy clothing from the hanger-type headrest. Doing so can damage hanger-type hooks.

Adjusting the height

- To raise the headrest, hold and pull the headrest up.
- To lower the headrest, push the headrest down with the Lock button (1) pressed in the arrow direction.



! Warning

- Do not drive the vehicle with the headrest lowered excessively. Doing so may cause fatal injury to body parts including head, neck or spine if an accident occurs.

Separation/installation

Separating the headrest

- 1 Recline the seat backrest to secure necessary space for separating the headrest safely.
- 2 With the Lock button (1) pressed in the arrow direction, separate the headrest by lifting it to the end.



- 3 Return the seat backrest to its original position.

! Warning

- Never drive the vehicle with the headrest separated. Doing so may cause head, neck or spine injury.



Installing the headrest

- 1 Recline the seat backrest to secure necessary space for installing the headrest safely.
- 2 Insert the headrest into the groove of the seat backrest.
- 3 With the Lock button (1) pressed in the arrow direction, pull down the headrest to the desired position.
- 4 Return the seat backrest to its original position.

Adjusting the power seat*

Front and rear position adjustment (driver seat/front passenger seat)

Set the seat to the desired position by pulling or pushing the front and rear position adjustment lever.



Adjusting the height (driver seat/front passenger seat)

Set the desired height by raising or lowering the height adjustment lever.



3



Adjusting the cushion angle (driver seat/ front passenger seat)

Set the desired angle by raising or lowering the cushion angle adjustment lever.



Adjusting the backrest angle (driver seat/ front passenger seat)

Set the desired angle by pulling or pushing the backrest angle adjustment lever.



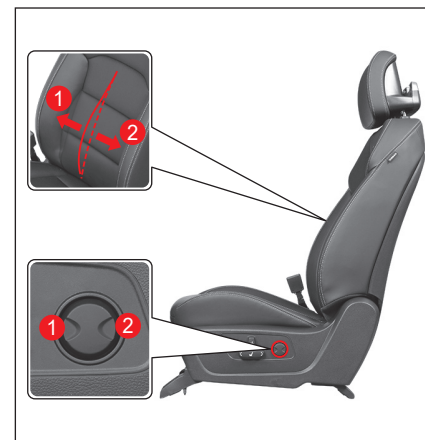
Warning

- Adjust the seat backrest to be upright as possible to maintain a comfortable position. Reclining the seat backrest excessively may cause the occupant to slip down below the seat belt in the event of a vehicle collision or sudden stopping. In such case, the occupant cannot be protected by the seat belt and the air bag, so the occupant may receive a serious injury or lose his/her life.

Adjusting the lumbar support (driver/ passenger)

Set the lumbar support to the desired position by pressing the Lumbar support adjustment button.

- When you press the Forward/Backward adjustment button (1 / 2), the lumbar support is extended or retracted.





Warning

- Never adjust the seat while driving. If the seat moves suddenly, it may lead to a dangerous situation.
- After adjusting the seat, check that the seat is secured firmly.
- If there is an occupant in the rear seat, adjust the seat while paying attention to the safety of the occupant.
- If the power seat does not operate, drive the vehicle after checking and taking measures.



Caution

- Operating the power seat excessively may damage the electric devices. Use it only for adjusting the seat.
- Operating a number of seat adjustment switches at the same time may damage the motor. Be sure to finish using one function before using another function.
- The power seat operates even when the START/STOP switch is in the OFF status. However, caution should be taken that operating the power seat too frequently when the vehicle is turned off may cause depletion of the battery.
- If the height of the seat and headrest is high with the front seats pulled forward, be careful when folding the seat backrest forward. Failure to do so may cause the front seats, headrest, sun visor and other components to bump against each other, causing damage.
- If the power seat comes into contact with an object so that it does not move or operate, do not operate it forcibly. Operate it again after eliminating the cause. If there is abnormality, have your vehicle checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Corporation Authorized Service Center.

Adjusting the seat manually

Front and rear position adjustment (driver seat/front passenger seat)

With the front and rear position adjustment lever pulled up, set the seat to the desired position by pulling or pushing the seat.



3



Adjusting the backrest angle (driver seat/ front passenger seat)

With the backrest angle control lever pulled up, move and set the backrest at the desired angle.



Warning

- Adjust the seat backrest to be upright as possible to maintain a comfortable position. Reclining the seat backrest excessively may cause the occupant to slip down below the seat belt in the event of a vehicle collision or sudden stopping. In such case, the occupant cannot be protected by the seat belt and the air bag, so the occupant may receive a serious injury or lose his/her life.

Adjusting the height (driver seat)

Set the desired height by raising or lowering the height adjustment lever.



Front passenger walk-in switch

The front and rear position of the front passenger seat and the angle of its backrest can be adjusted from the driver seat or the rear seats for improving the convenience of occupants.

Adjusting the front and rear positions

Set the seat to the desired position by pressing the Front and Rear position adjustment button (1 / 2).





Adjusting the angle of the backrest*

Set the backrest at the desired angle (1 / 2) pressing the Backrest angle control button.



Warning

- Adjust the seat backrest to be upright as possible to maintain a comfortable position. Reclining the seat backrest excessively may cause the occupant to slip down below the seat belt in the event of a vehicle collision or sudden stopping. In such case, the occupant cannot be protected by the seat belt and the air bag, so the occupant may receive a serious injury or lose his/her life.

Caution

- Do not use the Front passenger walk-in button when an occupant is sitting in the front passenger seat. Doing so may cause injury to the occupant.
- The Front passenger walk-in button operates even when the engine is not running. However, caution should be taken that operating the Front passenger walk-in button too frequently when the engine is turned off may cause depletion of the battery.

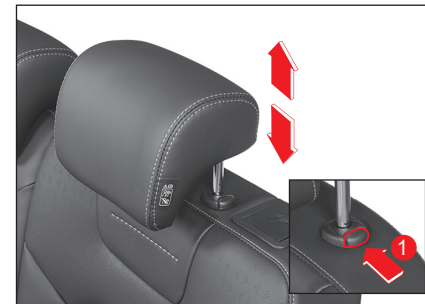
Notice

- When you operate the Walk-in button and the power seat adjustment lever at the same time, the power seat adjustment lever operates on the preferential basis.

Rear seat

Adjusting the height of the headrest

- To raise the headrest, hold and pull the headrest up.
- To lower the headrest, push the headrest down with the Lock button (1) pressed in the arrow direction.



3



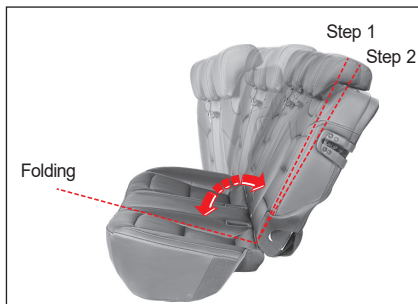
Warning



- Adjust the height of the headrest so that the center of the headrest is aligned with the occupant's eye level.
- Do not drive the vehicle with the headrest lowered excessively. Doing so may cause fatal injury to body parts including head, neck or spine if an accident occurs.
- When there is no occupant in the rear seats, the rear head restraints should be kept as low as possible as since they may obscure the rear view.

Seatback reclining adjustment

You can adjust the reclining in step 1 or 2 while pulling the seatback release lever (1) at the side of the rear seat backrest.



Caution

- When locking the rear seat backrest, make sure that the backrest unlock lever (1) clicks into the locked position so that the red label ("Unlocked" indicator) is not visible.

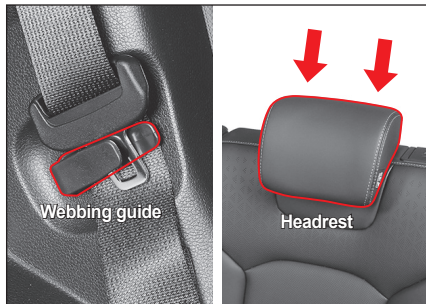




Rear seat backrest folding

1 Insert the seat belt into the webbing guide to prevent the seat belt from being damaged.

2 Position the headrest to its lowest level.



Caution

- When folding or unfolding the seat, it may hit and damage other components. To prevent such damage, lower the headrest of the seat to be folded to its lowest position and position the backrest of the seats in front of the folded seats.

3 Pull the rear seat backrest release lever (1).



4 Fold the backrest toward the front side of vehicle.



When returning the backrest to its original position, operate it in the reverse order.

Warning

- After returning the seat to its original position, gently rock the seat to make sure it is securely locked. If the seatback is not locked completely, it can be folded down unexpectedly.
- Be careful not to get your body parts to be caught in between the seats when folding the seat.
- Do not sit on the folded seat. You cannot be protected by the seat belt and other safety units and may be seriously injured in the event of an accident.
- When placing an article on top of the folded seat, secure the article firmly so that it won't move while driving. If the article moves, the driver and other passengers may get injured by the moving article. Also, a secondary accident may occur accordingly.

3



Seat ventilation and heating*

Front seat ventilation and heating*



- 1 Heater and A/C controller toggle switch
- 2 Driver seat heating and ventilation switch
- 3 Passenger seat heating and ventilation switch
- 4 Rear seat left side heating switch
- 5 Rear seat right side heating switch

Front seat ventilation

- 1 Touch the heater and A/C controller toggle switch (1) with the engine started.
- 2 Touch the ventilation switch (2) on the Heater and A/C Controller screen. When the ventilation feature is activated, its level at the corresponding seat is displayed.

- Off: Gray symbol shown
- On: Blue symbol + corresponding levels shown



- Each time the ventilation switch is touched, ventilation operates in order of OFF → 3rd level → 2nd level → 1st level → OFF.



Warning

- Do not insert your hand under the seat cushion while the seat ventilation function is operating. Doing so may cause your hand to be hit and injured by the spinning ventilation fan.

Notice

- The seat ventilation function is not the cooling seat that blows out cold air from the air conditioner.
- Since the seat ventilation function draws in air from inside the vehicle and performs the ventilation function, it is efficient to use it together with the air conditioner.
- When you turn off the vehicle while the seat ventilation function is operating, the ventilation function also turns off. The seat ventilation function won't turn on even if you start the vehicle again.
- Ventilation is turned off by touching the ventilation switch or turning the engine off and on.



Front seat heating*

- 1 Touch the heater and A/C controller toggle switch (1) with the engine started.
 - 2 Touch the heating switch (111) on the Heater and A/C Controller screen. When the heating feature is activated, its level at the corresponding seat is displayed.
- Off: Gray symbol shown
 - On: Red symbol + corresponding levels shown



- Each time the heating switch is touched, heating operates in order of OFF → 3rd level → 2nd level → 1st level → OFF.

Smart front seat heating control

This function controls the heating operation status automatically while assisting you to drive safely in a proper temperature condition.

- If the status of level 3 is maintained for approximately 30 minutes, the status of the heating function is changed to level 2 automatically.
- After the status is changed to level 2
 - When you activate the heating function in level 3 again within 5 minutes, the status of level 3 is maintained for approximately 8 minutes and then the status is changed to level 2 automatically.
 - When you activate the heating function in level 3 again after 5 minutes later, the status of level 3 is maintained for approximately 30 minutes and then the status is changed to level 2 automatically.
- If the status of level 2 is maintained for approximately 60 minutes, the status of the heating function is changed to level 1 automatically.



Warning

- Using seat heating excessively on the driver seat may cause drowsiness and interfere with safe driving.

Notice

- The seat heating function is designed to stop its operation when the temperature rises to a certain level and resume its operation when the temperature falls below a certain level.
- When you turn off the vehicle while the seat heating function is operating, the heating function also turns off. The seat heating function won't turn on even if you start the vehicle again.
- Heating is turned off by touching the heating switch or turning the engine off and on.

3



Rear seat heating*

With the vehicle on, press the 1st row rear seat heating button.

The operation indicator (yellow) turns on and the heating function is activated in the relevant seat.



- Every time the heating button is pressed, the warmer is operated in the order of OFF → Level 2 → Level 1 → OFF.

Rear seat heating smart control

- This function automatically controls the operation status of the warmer and helps the driver to operate the vehicle safely at an appropriate temperature.
- After operating for about 30 minutes in level 2, it automatically changes to level 1.
- After being changed to level 1
 - If you operate the warmer at level 2 again within 5 minutes, it will stay the level for about 8 minutes and change to level 1 automatically.
 - If you operate the warmer at level 2 again after 5 minutes, it will stay the level for about 30 minutes and change to level 1 automatically.



Warning

- Caution should be taken that using the seat heating function excessively may cause a minor burn. Pay particular attention to an infant, a small child, an elderly, a disabled person, a person who took a drug that induces sleep, a drunk person, an over-worked person or a person with delicate skin.
- Caution should be taken that you may get a low temperature burn if your skin comes into contact with the heated seat for a long period of time.
- While using seat heating, do not place a blanket, cushion or sitting mat on the seat to prevent overheating.
- Using the seat heating excessively may cause overheating or fire. Be sure to check whether the seat heating is operating or not when getting in and out of the vehicle.
- If the seat becomes hotter continuously and out of control, turn off the seat heating function first. And, have your vehicle checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Corporation Authorized Service Center immediately.

Notice

- The seat heating function is designed to stop its operation when the temperature rises to a certain level and resume its operation when the temperature falls below a certain level.
- When you turn off the vehicle while the seat heating function is operating, the heating function also turns off. The seat heating function won't turn on even if you start the vehicle again.

Warnings and cautions related to the seats

Warning

- Be sure to finish adjusting the seat before driving.
- Never adjust the seat while driving. If the seat moves suddenly, it may lead to a dangerous situation.
- Adjust the seat backrest to be upright as possible to maintain a comfortable position. Reclining the seat backrest excessively may cause the occupant to slip down below the seat belt in the event of a vehicle collision or sudden stopping. In such case, the occupant cannot be protected by the seat belt and the air bag, so the occupant may receive a serious injury or lose his/her life.
- Never drive the vehicle with the headrest separated. Doing so may cause head, neck or spine injury.
- If the power seat does not operate, drive the vehicle after checking and taking measures.
- Caution should be taken that using the seat heating function excessively may cause a minor burn. Pay particular attention to an infant, a small child, an elderly, a disabled person, a person who took a drug that induces sleep, a drunk person, an over-worked person or a person with delicate skin.



Caution

- The power seat operates even when the START/STOP switch is in the OFF status. However, caution should be taken that operating the power seat too frequently when the vehicle is turned off may cause depletion of the battery.
- Operating a number of seat adjustment switches at the same time may damage the motor. Be sure to finish using one function before using another function.
- If the power seat comes into contact with an object so that it does not move or operate, do not operate it forcibly. Operate it again after eliminating the cause. If there is abnormality, have your vehicle checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Corporation Authorized Service Center.
- Do not place an object that can damage the seat upholstery on top of the seat.
- Do not use organic solvents such as thinner, benzene, alcohol or gasoline for cleaning the seat upholstery. Doing so may damage the surface of the upholstery.



Caution

- The leather in vehicle seats is divided into natural leather and synthetic leather.
- Since natural leather is made from animal epidermis, it's not uniform in thickness or density from area to area, and it can be affected by temperature and humidity, which can cause it to stretch and shrink, creating natural wrinkles.
Also, since the fabric is stretched to improve comfort, any wrinkles, shine, or texture changes that may occur with use are natural and should not be considered product defects.
Therefore, naturally occurring creases, wear and tear, pressure marks, or discoloration that arise during use are excluded from warranty repairs.



Window (power window)*



- 1 Driver seat window button (AUTO)
- 2 Front passenger seat window button (AUTO)
- 3 Rear left window button
- 4 Rear right window button
- 5 Rear seat window lock button

Notice

- To operate the window, the START/STOP switch should be in the ON status or the vehicle should be running.
- Even if the START/STOP switch is switched from the ON status to the ACC status or the OFF status, the Window button can be operated for approximately 30 seconds. However, the operation stops immediately when you open the front door.

Opening the driver seat/front passenger seat window



- Press the Driver seat/Front passenger seat window button slightly. The Window opens only while the button is being pressed.
- Press the Driver seat/Front passenger seat window button to the end and release it. The window opens to the end automatically (auto down).
- When you slightly press or pull the Driver seat/Front passenger seat window button up while the window is opening, the window stops.

Notice

- The vehicles with Auto Down have not fitted with the Auto Up and the window is closed only while the switch is being pulled.

Closing the driver seat/front passenger seat window



- Pull the Driver seat/Front passenger seat window button up slightly. The window closes only while you are pulling the button.
- Pull the Driver seat/Front passenger seat window button up to the end and release it. The window closes to the end automatically (auto up).
- When you press or slightly pull the Driver seat/Front passenger seat window button up while the window is closing, the window stops.

3



Driver seat window safety function

The driver seat window safety function controls the driver seat window equipped with the auto up function to move down slightly and stop without moving up from its position when it is recognized that a body part or an object is caught in it when the window is closing.



Notice

- The window safety function is activated on the driver seat & passenger seat window equipped with the auto up function.
- The safety function is not activated for some section of the window that is closed lastly.
- The window may get frozen during winter so that it may be misrecognized as a body part or an object being caught in it. In such case, close the window little by little by pulling the Window button slightly.
- When you do not release the Window button after pulling it up to the end, the window is closed to the end without stopping even if there is an obstacle in its moving path.

This function is intended to protect the driver from a crime such as robbery and injury.

Opening/closing the rear seat window



The window only works while pressing or pulling the rear seat window button.



Rear seat window lock function



This function locks the window so that it cannot be opened and closed from the rear seats.

Press the Rear seat window lock button.

Warning

- If a small child is seated in the rear seat, be sure to press the Rear seat window lock button to make the Window buttons inoperative. It can prevent an accident caused by the child's mischief.

What is wind buffeting?

Wind buffeting is the phenomenon when you feel pressure upon your ears or hear some noises such as the sound of a helicopter when you drive the vehicle with a rear seat window or the sunroof opened to a certain position.

This phenomenon occurs when air flows in through the rear seat window or the sunroof, creating resonance.

If you adjust the open space of the rear seat window or the sunroof when the wind buffeting occurs, such phenomenon disappears or is reduced.

Warning

- While driving or stopping, do not hold a part of your body such as your hand or head out of the window. You may get injured by a passing vehicle or an outside obstacle.
- Be careful not to get a part of your body such as your hand or head to be caught in the window when operating the window.

Caution

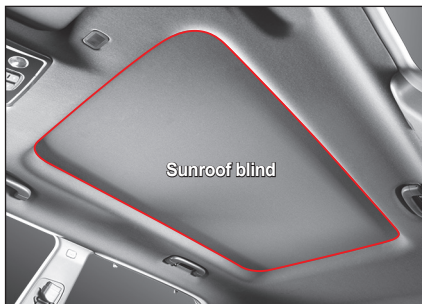
- Operating a number of Window buttons at the same time may damage the fuse that is the over-current protective device or the window system.
- Operating the Window buttons on the driver seat door and a different door in the opposite direction at the same time may damage the window system.

3



Sunroof (Type A)*

- A sunroof is an auxiliary window installed on the roof of a vehicle to aid in ventilation and lighting, contributing to a more comfortable driving experience.
- The sunroof glass can be opened and closed using an external sliding mechanism.
- The sunroof glass operates using a tilt mechanism, where the rear part is slightly raised.



Warning

- Do not put any part of your body, such as your hands or head, outside the sunroof while driving or stopped. You may be injured by passing vehicles or external obstacles.



Caution

- The sunroof operates even when the ignition switch is in the ON position. However, please note that excessive use without starting the engine may discharge the battery.
- Release the operation button when the sunroof operation is complete. Continuous operation may cause a breakdown.
- Wind buffeting may become more severe if the sunroof is fully opened. In this case, be sure to adjust the sunroof position manually.
- In winter, if the sunroof mechanism is frozen, operate it only after the frozen areas have completely thawed.
- Regularly remove dust and foreign matter from the rubber parts around the perimeter of the sunroof glass. If there is dust or foreign matter, noise may occur when operating the sunroof and cause a malfunction.

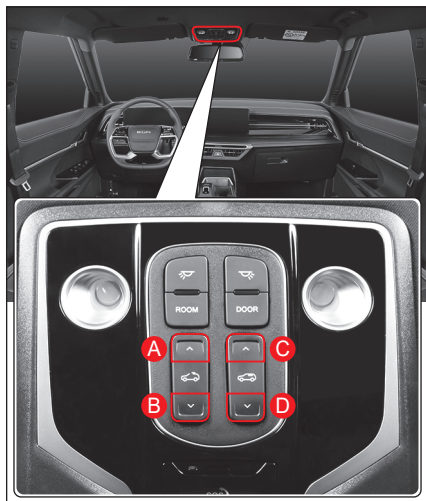
- Do not use abrasive polishing products on the sunroof.
- Never use wax on the rubber molding around the sunroof.
- When washing with a high-pressure gun, do not aim the water directly at the rubber molding surrounding the sunroof glass.
- Operate the sunroof only when the vehicle is stopped. Operating the sunroof while driving may interfere with driving and cause a serious accident.
- Do not push or pull the sunroof blind by hand. This can cause the sunroof blinds to malfunction and eventually lead to a breakdown.
- Do not operate the sunroof when the roof rack is loaded with cargo or other items. This can cause damage and failure of the sunroof.

Notice

- The start button must be in the ON position or the engine must be started to operate the sunroof.



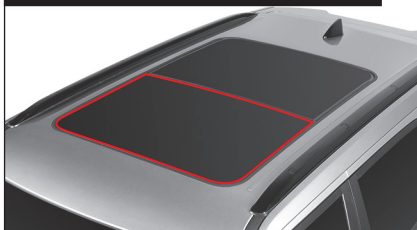
Sunroof control button



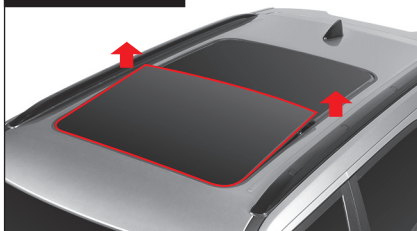
- A** Sunroof glass open button
- B** Sunroof glass close button
- C** Sunroof blind open button
- D** Sunroof blind close button

Basic operating conditions of sunroof

Sunroof glass in completely closed position



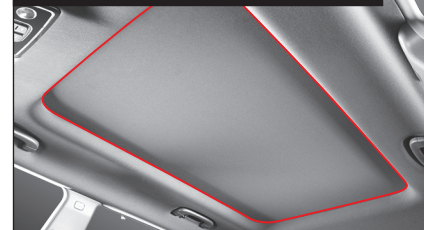
Tilted sunroof glass



Sunroof glass 1st and 2nd stage (fully) open position



Sunroof blind in completely closed position



Sunroof blind in half-open position



Sunroof blind in full open position



3



Opening / Closing Sunroof

Opening sunroof automatically



Press the sunroof glass open button (A) briefly. Depending on the sunroof glass and sunroof blind status, the sunroof glass and blind will open automatically as follows:

Notice

- If you press the button while the sunroof is in operation, the operation will stop.
- The sunroof glass opening (including tilting) opens after the sunroof blind operation is complete.
- Press the sunroof blind open button (C) briefly to fully open the sunroof blind.

Completely closed position

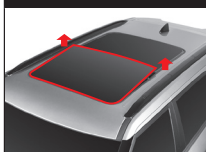


Fully closed position



Short press of A button

Tilted state



Half-open position



Short press of A button

1st stage open position



Fully open



Short press of A button

2nd stage (fully) open position



Fully open



Opening sunroof manually

Press and hold the sunroof glass open button (A). The sunroof operates only while the button is pressed. To fully open the sunroof glass, keep pressing the corresponding button.

What is Wind Buffeting?

Wind buffeting is a phenomenon in which the ears feel pressure or hear noise, such as the sound of a helicopter, when driving with the rear window or sunroof in a specific position.

This phenomenon occurs when air enters through the rear window or sunroof, causing a resonance.

If the wind buffeting phenomenon occurs, adjusting the rear window or the open space of the sunroof will reduce or eliminate the phenomenon.



Closing sunroof automatically

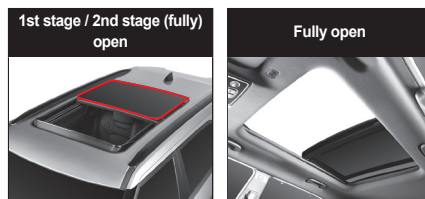


Press the sunroof glass close button (B) briefly. Only the sunroof glass will close automatically. Then, press the sunroof blind close button (D) briefly. The sunroof blinds close automatically.

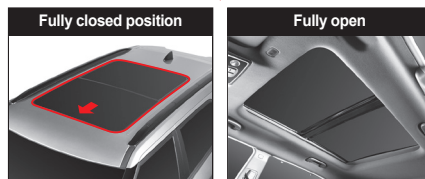
Notice

- If you press the button while the sunroof is in operation, the operation will stop.
- The sunroof blind closes after the sunroof glass operation is complete.
- Press the sunroof blind close button (D) briefly to completely close the sunroof glass and blind.

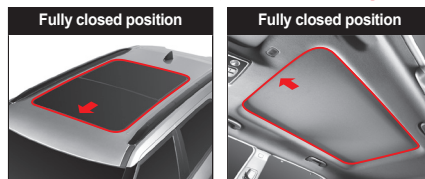
- Using switch for sunroof glass (B) and blinder (D)



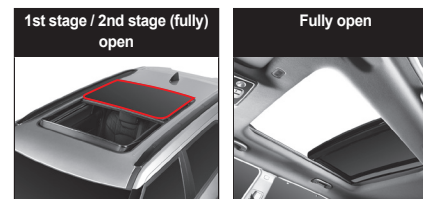
Short press of B button



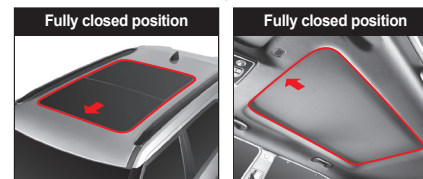
Short press of D button



- Using switch for sunroof blinder (D)



Short press of D button



3

Closing sunroof manually

Press and hold the sunroof glass closing button (B) or the sunroof blind closing button (D). The sunroof operates only while the button is pressed.



Sunroof Open Warning

If the sunroof is left open, and the ignition button is set to ACC or OFF while the driver's door is opened, a sunroof open warning chime will sound.

The warning sound stops when the door is closed.

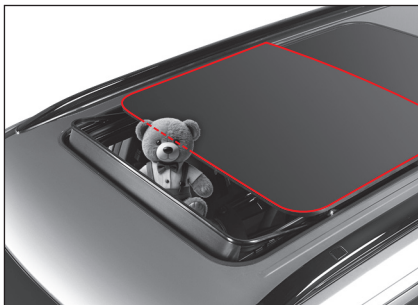
If the sunroof open warning sounds, leave the vehicle after closing the sunroof completely.

Caution

- **Make sure that the sunroof is completely closed when leaving the vehicle. If you leave the vehicle with the sunroof open, you may be a victim of a theft. In addition, rain or snow can get into the vehicle through the open sunroof.**

Sunroof Safety Feature

The sunroof safety feature controls the sunroof to open again instead of closing further at that position for safety purposes when it detects that a part of the body or an object is caught when the sunroof is automatically closing.



Caution

- **In the final closing phase of the sunroof, the sunroof safety feature does not operate.**
- **The sunroof safety feature is an auxiliary device and cannot replace the driver's attention. Please be careful as it may not operate depending on the electrical device or other circumstances.**
- **Continuous use of the sunroof opening/closing, tilt-up/down, etc. may cause noise and malfunction. In addition, if the sunroof motor overheats due to excessive use, it may become very slow or stop working for a while.**

Resetting Sunroof

Resetting is required if:

- The battery is discharged or the power supply is interrupted (replacement of the relevant fuse, etc.) while the sunroof is open.
- The sunroof cannot be fully opened/closed with a single press of the button.
- The distance moved when opening or tilting the sunroof sliding is significantly shorter.
- The sunroof does not operate at all or does not operate normally even after pressing the sunroof button.

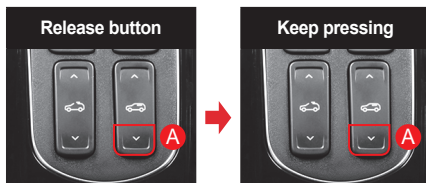


Resetting

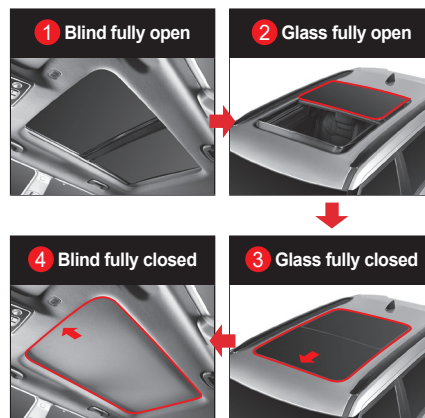
- 1 Start the engine or leave the vehicle's power switch in the "ON" position.
- 2 Press the sunroof blind close button (A) to completely close the sunroof glass and blind, then release the button.



- 3 Press and hold the sunroof blind close button (A) again (for at least 10 seconds). When the glass and blind move slightly once, release the button.



- 4 If the sunroof blind close button (A) is pressed continuously within 5 seconds, it will operate sequentially as follows:
 - 1) The sunroof blind will fully open.
 - 2) The sunroof glass will fully open.
 - 3) The sunroof glass will completely close.
 - 4) The sunroof blind will completely close.



- 5 When the sunroof glass and blind are completely closed, the sunroof reset is complete.

Do not release the button before the sunroof opening/closing operation is complete. If you release the button during the reset, you will need to start the initialization process from the beginning.



Caution

- If the sunroof does not operate normally even after resetting the sunroof, please have your vehicle inspected and serviced at our Authorized Service Center.

Notice

- Do not release the button until the sunroof has fully opened or closed. If you release it during the reset process, please restart the initialization from the beginning.

3



Sunroof (Type B)*

The sunroof is a secondary window installed on the vehicle roof for supporting pleasant driving such as ventilation and lighting in the vehicle.

The sunroof window can be slide opened and closed and it also operates in a tilting way to lift the rear section of the sunroof up slightly.

The sunroof cover can be opened and closed by hand.



Warning

- While driving or stopping, do not hold a part of your body such as your hand or head out of the sunroof. You may get injured by a passing vehicle or an outside obstacle.

Caution

- The sunroof operates even when the START/STOP switch is in the ON status. However, caution should be taken that using the sunroof excessively while the vehicle is not running may cause depletion of the battery.
- After finishing the sunroof operation, release the Control button. Pressing the Control button continuously may cause a malfunction.
- If the sunroof is opened completely, the wind buffeting may become intensified. In such case, adjust the open space in the sunroof.
- If the sunroof operation part is frozen during winter, operate it after the frozen part melts completely.
- Remove dust and foreign materials from the rubber part around the sunroof window periodically. If dust and foreign materials are present, noise may occur when the sunroof operates and it may cause a malfunction.

Notice

- To operate the sunroof, the START/STOP switch should be in the ON status or the vehicle should be running.



Opening the sunroof

Opening automatically

Press the sunroof open button briefly. The sunroof opens automatically.

The rear part (6cm) of the sunroof will not open.

To open the sunroof fully, press the sunroof open button again.



Notice

- Operating the switch while the sunroof is opening stops the sunroof operation.

Opening manually

Press and hold the sunroof open button. The sunroof will only open while the open button is pressed.

To open the sunroof fully, you must keep the open button pressed.

What is wind buffeting?

Wind buffeting is the phenomenon when you feel pressure upon your ears or hear some noises such as the sound of a helicopter you when you drive the vehicle with a rear seat window or the sunroof opened to a certain position.

This phenomenon occurs when air flows in through the rear seat window or the sunroof, creating resonance.

If you adjust the open space of the rear seat window or the sunroof when the wind buffeting occurs, such phenomenon disappears or is reduced.

Closing the sunroof

Closing automatically

Press the sunroof close button briefly. The sunroof closes automatically.



Notice

- Operating the switch while the sunroof is closing stops the sunroof operation.

Closing manually

Press and hold the sunroof close button. The sunroof will be closed only while you are pressing the close button.

In order to close the sunroof fully, you have to keep pressing the close button.

3



Tilting the sunroof up/down



Tilting up (opening the rear section)

With the sunroof closed, press the sunroof closed button. The rear section of the sunroof will open.

Tilting down (closing the rear section)

With the rear section of the sunroof opened, press the sunroof open button. At this time, the sunroof closes only while the button is being pressed.

To close the sunroof completely, you should press and hold the button.

Sunroof open warning

When you place the START/STOP switch in the ACC or OFF position and open the driver seat door with the sunroof opened, the sunroof open warning buzzer will sound.

When you close the door, the warning buzzer will be turned off.

When the sunroof open warning buzzer sounds, leave the vehicle after closing the sunroof completely.

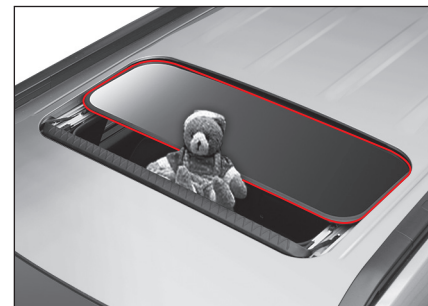


Caution

- When leaving the vehicle, check if the sunroof is closed completely. Leaving the vehicle with the sunroof opened may cause a robbery case through the sunroof. Also, the inside of the vehicle may get wet when it rains or snows.

Sunroof safety function

The sunroof safety function controls the sunroof to open without closing from its position for safety when it is recognized that a body part or an object is caught in it when the sunroof is closing automatically.



Caution

- The sunroof safety function is not activated for the last section of the sunroof to be closed.
- The sunroof safety function is just an auxiliary system and it is no substitute for the driver's attention. Always exercise caution since it may not operate according to an electrical device or other situations.



Resetting the sunroof

Cases requiring the resetting of the sunroof

- When the battery is depleted or the power supply is suspended with the sunroof opened
- When the sunroof does not open or close completely by operating the button once
- When the sunroof is tilted without stop after it is closed in the sliding method
- When the moving distance has decreased significantly when sliding or tilting the sunroof
- If the sunroof does not operate or operates abnormally when the Sunroof button is pressed

Resetting

With the sunroof tilted up (opening the rear section), press the sunroof closed button continuously for approximately 20 seconds.

- A clicking sound occurs once approximately 5 seconds later and once again approximately 20 seconds later after pressing the sunroof closed button. The sunroof resets along with the second clicking sound.
- When you press the sunroof open button slightly after resetting, the sunroof opens and closes again automatically.



Caution

- **If the sunroof does not operate normally after resetting the sunroof, have your sunroof checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Corporation Authorized Service Center.**

3



Tailgate

The tailgate is a unit that increases the convenience in loading or unloading an article from the vehicle.

The power tailgate allows the user to open and close the tailgate using a simple button operation.

Also, the smart tailgate opens the tailgate automatically when a user approaches to the detection area at the back of the tailgate.

Warning

- Do not disassemble the manual and power tailgate support bars. It is composed of the high pressure devices, which may cause injuries.
- Do not apply heat the manual and power tailgate support bars. It may be damaged by heat and cause injuries.
- Do not dismantle the tailgate's gas lifter. It is composed of the high pressure devices, which may cause injuries.
- Do not heat the tailgate's gas lifter. It may be damaged by heat and cause injuries.
- In order to replace or dispose of the gas lifter, please visit our nearest KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.

Manual tailgate

Opening

- 1 Press the Tailgate open button on the inner side of the tailgate door handle while carrying the smart key.

The tailgate will be unlocked.



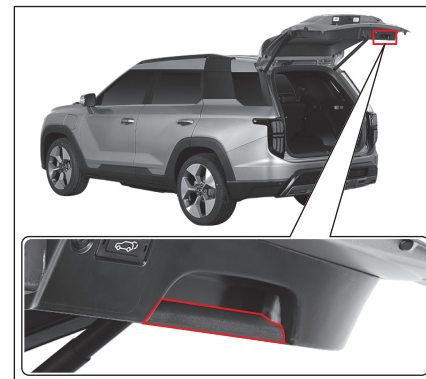
- 2 Lift the tailgate up.

Notice

- The range that the tailgate can recognize the smart key is within approximately 1 m.
- When you press the Tailgate open button, only the tailgate is unlocked. The door, motor room hood and other devices remain locked.

Closing

- 1 Hold the inner handle of the tailgate and pull the tailgate down.



- 2 Close the tailgate by pushing it slightly.

Caution

- When the tailgate is opened and closed with the theft monitoring canceled, the mode is not switched to the theft monitoring mode automatically. Be sure to switch the mode to the theft monitoring mode by pressing the Door lock button on the smart key.



Notice

- When the tailgate is opened and closed in the theft monitoring mode, the mode returns to the theft monitoring mode automatically. At this time, the hazard warning lamp blinks twice and the warning buzzer sounds once.

Power tailgate*

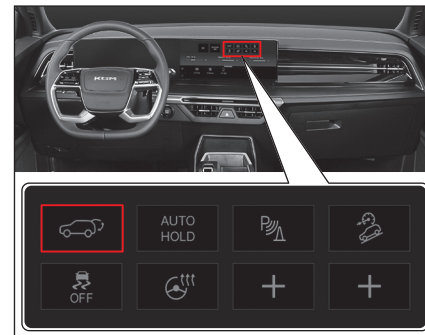
The power tailgate is a unit that allows the user to open and close the tailgate using a simple button operation.

The power tailgate operates when the SBW (shift by wire) is in P (Parking) position with the START/STOP switch in the ON status or in all positions of the SBW (shift by wire) when the vehicle is turned off.

Notice

- If the vehicle speed is 3km/h or faster with the START/STOP switch in the ON status, the tailgate cannot be opened automatically.

Open/Close Tailgate With Interior Switch



3

- Touch and hold the tailgate switch on the hypervisor control panel side. The tailgate opens or closes with the emergency warning lights and chimes activated. If the tailgate is currently closed, it will be opened; if it is open, it will be closed.

Notice

- When you press the Tailgate button while the power tailgate is opening or closing, the tailgate stops on that position.
- The interior switch for the power tailgate remains visible even when the buttonless integrated control panel is switched off.



Opening/closing with the smart key



- Press and hold the Tailgate button on the smart key.
The tailgate opens or closes with the emergency warning lights and chimed activated.
The tailgate opens if it is closed or it closes if it is open.

Notice

- When you press the Tailgate button while the power tailgate is opening or closing, the tailgate stops on that position.

Opening/closing with the button on the tailgate

- Press the Tailgate outside button while carrying the smart key.
The tailgate opens with the emergency warning lights and chimed activated.



Notice

- The range that the tailgate can recognize the smart key is within approximately 1 m.
- When you press the Tailgate outside button, only the tailgate is unlocked. The door, motor room hood and other devices remain locked.

Press the Tailgate inside button with the tailgate opened.

The tailgate closes with the emergency warning lights and chimed activated.





Open/close with cargo compartment-mounted buttons

- With the tailgate closed, pull the cargo area tailgate button in the direction of the arrow. The tailgate opens with the emergency warning lights and chimed activated.
- With the tailgate open, pull the cargo compartment tailgate button in the direction of the arrow. The tailgate closes with the emergency warning lights and chimed activated.



Anti-pinch protection function

The anti-pinch protection function controls the tailgate to stop at that position or open completely for safety when a strong impact is received from the outside or a certain level of force is detected while the power tailgate is opening or closing.

Warning

- The anti-pinch protection function may not operate if the resistance detected by the power tailgate is smaller than a certain level of force or the tailgate is in the position that it is almost closed.
- Do not place a part of your body or an article on the moving path of the tailgate on purpose in order to check the anti-pinch protection function during the power tailgate operation. Doing so may cause serious injury or article and device damage.

Caution

- If the anti-pinch protection function operates repeatedly for a number of times, close the tailgate manually and operate it again. If there is an abnormality, have your vehicle checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Corporation Authorized Service Center.

Resetting the opening height

The maximum opening height of the power tailgate can be reset in accordance with the user's physical condition or other conditions such as the parking space.

- 1 Open the tailgate manually and adjust it to a desired height.
- 2 Press the Power tailgate inside button for 3 seconds or more.
When the resetting is completed, a beep sound occurs.
- 3 Close the tailgate completely by pressing the Power tailgate inside button.

3

When the opening height is reset, press the Power tailgate outside button to see if the tailgate opens to the set position.



Resetting the power tailgate

If the power supply is reconnected after the battery is fully depleted or the power supply is disconnected or if the power tailgate does not function normally, reset the power tailgate.

- 1 Park the vehicle on a flat ground and shift the gear shift lever to the P (Parking) position.
- 2 With the Tailgate inside button pressed, press and hold the Outside button for 3 seconds or more.

When the resetting is completed, a beep sound occurs.

- 3 Close the tailgate completely by hand.

When the resetting is completed, check that the power tailgate opens and closes normally.



Caution

- Do not operate the power tailgate in any of the following cases since it may malfunction.
 - When one wheel of the vehicle is lifted up for vehicle check or tire replacement
 - When one wheel of the vehicle is in the air unevenly on a sloping road or paving blocks
 - When the vehicle is parked or stopped on a slope or an uneven surface
- The power tailgate operates even when the START/STOP switch is in the OFF status. However, caution should be taken that operating the power tailgate excessively with the START/STOP switch turned off may cause depletion of the battery.
- When you operate the power tailgate for 5 times or more consecutively, the warning buzzer sounds 3 times and the power tailgate stops in order to prevent the drive motor from being overheated. In such case, stop the operation of the power tailgate for 1 minute or longer and then operate the power tailgate again.

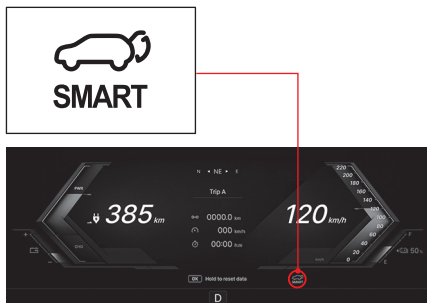
- Do not operate the power tailgate manually if possible.
- If it is necessary to operate the power tailgate manually since it does not operate normally, do not apply excessive force. Doing so may damage the power tailgate unit.
- Do not apply excessive force to the tailgate while the power tailgate is operating. Doing so may damage the power tailgate.
- If you close the tailgate immediately after opening it, the tailgate may not be closed. This is a normal operation. Close the tailgate after a short time interval.
- Do not attach a heavy object to the power tailgate. Doing so may damage the power tailgate.
- Do not modify or repair the power tailgate and relevant components arbitrarily.

Smart tailgate*

The smart tailgate is a function that opens the tailgate automatically when a user carrying the smart key approaches the detection area at the back of the vehicle. This is particularly convenient when you are carrying packages in both hands.

Activating/deactivating the smart tailgate

- From the main menu of the hypervisor control panel, select Vehicle Settings (🔧) → Door/Tailgate → Smart Tailgate Off or On.



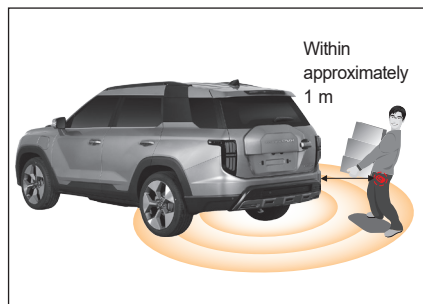
Notice

- You must enable the power tailgate to enable the smart tailgate.

Opening the smart tailgate

Operating condition

- The vehicle should be turned off and all doors and the tailgate should be in locked status (theft monitoring mode).
- You should stay in an area within approximately 1 m from the smart tailgate sensor at the back of the vehicle for approximately 3 seconds or more while carrying the smart key.



Operation step

The tailgate opens automatically in the following steps after the smart key is detected.



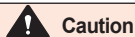
3

- Step 1**
The hazard warning lamp and the warning buzzer sound three times at an interval of 1 second (beep~ beep~ beep~)
- Step 2**
The hazard warning lamp and the warning buzzer sound three times (beep beep beep)
- Step 3**
The hazard warning lamp and the warning buzzer sound two times (beep beep)
Next, the tailgate opens.



Stopping the smart tailgate function

- Press any button on the smart key.
- Or, get out of the detection area of the smart tailgate.



Caution

- The smart tailgate begins operating when 30 seconds have passed after entering the theft monitoring mode. This is for preventing the smart tailgate from malfunctioning.
- In any of the following cases, the smart tailgate operation may be delayed or the operating range may change due to frequency interference.
 - When you are in or near a facility where a strong radio frequency is emitted including a police station, government office, broadcasting station, military unit, transmitting tower, airport, harbor, etc.
 - When you carry the smart key along with a mobile phone or a radio set, etc.
- In any of the following cases, the detection range of the smart key may vary, affecting the operation range of the smart tailgate.
 - When one wheel of the vehicle is lifted up for checking the vehicle or replacing tires
 - When the vehicle is parked or stopped on a sloping road or an uneven surface

- Do not stay in the detection area of the smart tailgate unnecessarily while carrying the smart key.
- Familiarize yourself with how to deactivate and stop the smart tailgate function in preparation for an emergency as well as various other situations.
- Be sure to deactivate the smart tailgate function when you wash your vehicle. Failure to do so may cause the tailgate to open automatically, causing a personal injury or damage to the vehicle and other facilities.

Opening the tailgate in the event of emergency

You can open the tailgate using the unlock lever in the tailgate in the event of depletion of the battery, failure of the tailgate devices or other emergency situations.

- 1 Remove the emergency key (B) from its body while pressing the emergency key lock (A) at the smart key in the direction of the arrow.

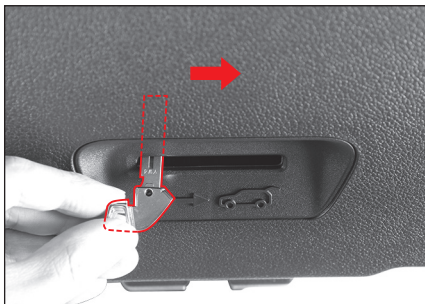




- 2 Insert the mechanical key into the unlock lever hole (1) at the bottom center.



- 3 Press the mechanical key in the direction of the arrow. It unlocks the tailgate.



- 4 Push open the tailgate.

Warning

- Only use the tailgate unlock lever in the event of emergency.
- Do not allow children to play in the luggage compartment. If the tailgate unlock lever operates, opening the tailgate suddenly while driving, a serious accident may occur.

Caution

- Familiarize yourself with the position of the tailgate unlock lever and how to use it in preparation for an emergency.

Warning

- Avoid driving the vehicle with the tailgate open.
 - Exhaust gas may flow into indoors, resulting in gas poisoning.
 - An article from the inside of the vehicle may fall out, causing an accident.
 - The tailgate or other vehicle parts may get damaged.

- Driving the vehicle at a speed of 4km/h or faster with the tailgate open, the tailgate open warning light turns on and the warning buzzer sounds 10 times. Move the vehicle to a safe place immediately and close the tailgate firmly.
- Open or close the tailgate after confirming the safety inside and outside of the vehicle. In particular, be careful not to get a part of an indoor occupant or a near-by person's body caught.
- Be careful not to allow a child to operate the power tailgate or smart tailgate by accident while carrying the smart key. Failure to do so may cause damage to a near-by person, article or vehicle, etc.
- Do not open the tailgate after parking or stopping the vehicle on a sloping road. Doing so may cause an article loaded in the vehicle to fall out, causing injury to a user.
- When you close the tailgate, the tailgate may close suddenly due to the weight of the tailgate and other external factors. Be cautious for preventing injury when closing the tailgate.

3

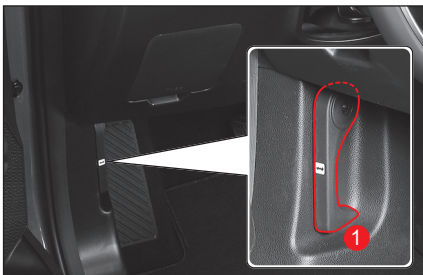


Motor room hood

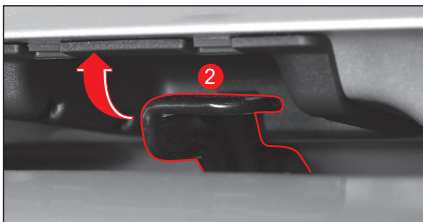
Opening the motor room hood

- 1 Pull the motor room hood open lever (1) located at the bottom left side of the driver seat.

The motor room hood will be opened slightly.



- 2 Lift the motor room hood slightly to pull the motor room hood latch lever (2) up and lift up the motor room hood completely.



- 3 Lift the motor room hood up.
When you lift motor room hood half way, it will open to the end automatically.

Closing the motor room hood

Checking before closing the motor room hood

- Make sure that all inlet caps in the engine room are closed properly.
- Check that no unnecessary items including gloves and tools are left in the engine room.

Closing the motor room hood

Pull the motor room hood down and close it by pressing it down.

Caution

- If the motor room hood is lifted slightly while it is closed, open the motor room hood again and close it by pushing it with stronger force.
- The side garnish (A) mounted on the motor room hood is a component for design purposes. Do not use side garnish for hanging ropes, hoops, etc. This may lead to damage to the side garnish and damage to the vehicle.



Warning

- Open the motor room hood after turning off the engine. However, if you need to check and carry out services with the engine on, pay particular attention not to be injured by the operating devices in the engine room.
- Check the motor room hood in a place where no wind blows. You may get injured if the motor room hood is closed by wind.
- Be careful not to get any of your body parts such as fingers caught when closing the motor room hood.
- Confirm that the motor room hood is closed completely before driving. If you drive the vehicle with the motor room hood open, the vehicle may get damaged and it may block the driver's vision, causing a serious accident.
- Do not disassemble the hood gas lifter. It is composed of the high pressure devices, which may cause injuries.
- Do not apply heat the hood gas lifter. It may be damaged by heat and cause injuries.
- When Replacing and disposing of gas lifter, have your vehicle serviced at a KG Mobility Corporation Authorized Service Center.

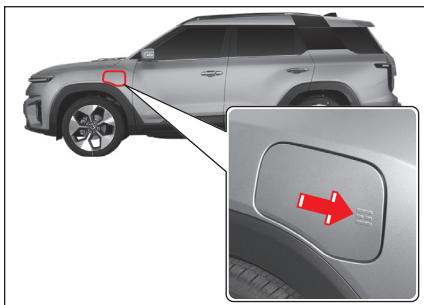


EV charge port door

Opening EV charge port door

The charging door can only be open when the driver's door is unlocked.

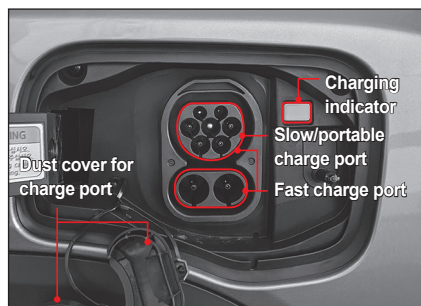
- 1 Depress the brake pedal and leave the parking brake applied.
- 2 Shift the SBW (shift by wire) to the P (Parking) position.
- 3 Be sure to turn off the vehicle.
- 4 Push on the center edge of the charge port door in the arrow direction.



Caution

- If the charge port door is frozen during winter, do not open it forcibly. Open it by gently tapping on the edge of the cover.

- 5 Open the charge port door completely by pulling it in the arrow direction.
- 6 Remove the dust cover for the charge port.



Closing EV charge port door

- 1 Fit the dust cover for the charge port.
- 2 Press on the center edge of the charge port door to close.
- 3 If you press the charging door hard to close it, it may reopen. At this time, close it gently again.

3



Charging type and precautions

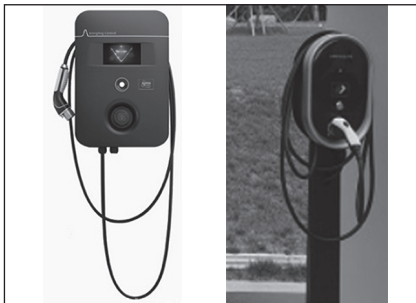
- The charging time can be changed based on the environment (temperature, humidity, vehicle and charger conditions) during charging.
- The shape and procedure may vary depending on the manufacturer. Follow the instructions on the manual provided by the manufacturer.

Notice

- **The difference between the cumulative charge displayed by the charger during slow or fast charging and the cumulative charge delivered to the high-voltage battery may vary depending on the charger condition, voltage drop, and the amount of power used by the vehicle during charging.**

Slow charging

Use a slow charger in a public charging station.



Notice

- It takes about 9 hours to fully charge the battery when using a 11 kW charger.

Fast charging

Use a fast charger in a public charging station.
Follow the instructions on the manual provided by the manufacturer.



Warning

- **Consecutive or repetitive fast charging may lead to the impaired battery capacity or reduced service life. Use a fast charger only in an emergency as much as possible.**



Notice

- It takes about 54 minutes to charge to 80% using a 50kW-level fast charger at room temperature. (possible to charge to 100%)
- It takes about 42 minutes to charge to 80% using a 100kW-level fast charger at room temperature. (possible to charge to 100%)
- Charging from 20% to 80% using a 150kW fast charger at room temperature takes about 37 minutes.
- The time it takes to charge may vary depending on the condition and life of the high voltage battery, the specification and condition of the charger, and the ambient temperature.

Portable charger*

In the event of an emergency you can charge the battery from an ordinary household outlet (220 V) using a portable charger.



Notice

- Please keep in mind that there could be problems related to electricity bills and electrical load when charging from a household outlet.
- It takes about 27 hours (16A) / 30hours (10A) to charge to 100% using a portable (emergency) charger at room temperature.
- The time it takes to charge may vary depending on the condition and life of the high voltage battery, the specification and condition of the charger, and the ambient temperature.



Warning

- The shape and procedure may vary depending on the manufacturer. Follow the instructions manual provided by the manufacturer when charging a battery.
- The electromagnetic wave generated by the charger can affect a medical device (cardiac pacemaker, etc.) If you or your friend is using a medical device, consult with the healthcare professionals and/or representative of the manufacturer regarding the effects that charging may have on implanted devices before using a charger.
- Make sure there is no dirt, dust or any fluid on the charging connector and the plug before connecting to the charge port. Failure to do so may cause an accident, fire or electric shock.
- When connecting the charging connector and plug, be careful to never let your any body part come in contact with engagement part. This may cause an electric shock.



Warning

- Do not pull the charge cable when connecting and disconnecting the charge cable and plug. Always hold the charge cable and the plug itself firmly when connect and disconnect them.



Charging plug
(Charger side)



Charging plug
(Charger side)

Warning

- To avoid an electric shock, read and observe the following instructions:
 - Use a waterproof charger.
 - Never touch the high-voltage parts including the connector and plug when your hand is wet.
 - Do not stand on a non-insulated surface, such as puddle or a metal sheet, when connecting the charging connector and plug to charge the battery.
 - Avoid using a charger in rainy or humid weather as much as possible.
 - Avoid charging when there is lightning and frequent buildup of static electricity as much as possible.
- Immediately stop charging when you find abnormal symptoms, such as an odor, smoke. And have the vehicle checked and service at the KG Mobility authorized dealer or KG Mobility service center.
- Do not use a damaged charge cable (stripped, stepped, etc.) and replace it with a new one.
- Make sure to use a charge cable for slow charging provided by KG Mobility.
- When using a charge cable for slow charging, never use a separate extension cable or adaptor.

Caution

- Keep the charge cable and plug clean and dry.
- Make sure to turn the START/STOP switch OFF before charging the HV battery.
- The cooling fan may operate unexpectedly to control the battery temperature during HV battery charging.
- Do not apply physical shocks to the charging connector and plug. They can be damaged or malfunction.



Connecting and disconnecting of charging connector

For driver's safety, the EV charging system allows the charging connector to be disconnected only when the connector release button is pressed.

Connecting charging connector

- 1 Open the charge port door and remove the dust cover for the charge port.
- 2 Check if there is any dust or fluid on and around the charge port.
- 3 Align the charging connector to the charge port and insert completely.



Notice

- If the green indicator lights up immediately after plugging in the charging plug, the connection is normal.
- If the indicator comes on red, pull the connector from the port and then reconnect.

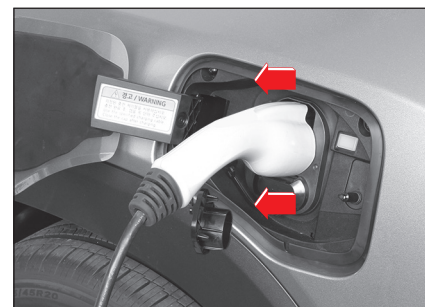
Disconnecting charging connector

- 1 Check the charging indicator is illuminated solid green or press the Stop charging button.
- 2 When charging is complete, disconnect the charging plug.



Warning

- Failure to follow the above instruction leads to malfunctions of the HV battery and related units or can cause fire and/or electric shock. Disconnect the charging connector in a controlled manner.
- For electric vehicle charging system, for the safety of the driver, a confirmation message (voice message saying charging is complete) indicating the end of charging must appear before the charging plug can be disconnected.

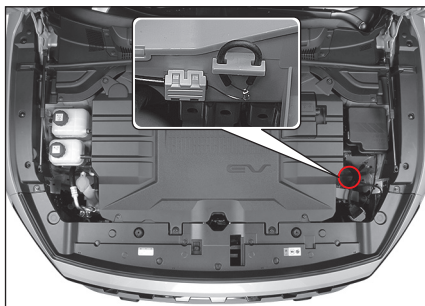


3

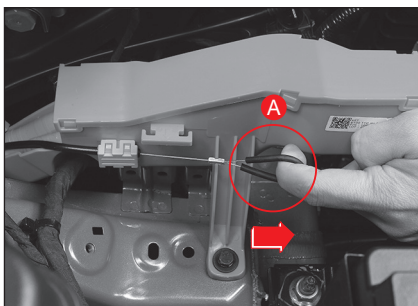


Emergency removal of charging connector

In an emergency, where the charging connector cannot be removed because of charging system malfunctioning or abnormality during charging, use the following procedure to remove the connector.



- 1 Open the motor room hood.
- 2 Pull the emergency release cable (A) for charging connector.



- 3 Check the charging connector is released before removing it.



Battery Pre-conditioning

Battery Pre-conditioning

This is a function to preheat the battery before charging it to improve the efficiency of battery charging. If you activate this function when the temperature is low (about 15°C), you can warm up the battery for about 30 minutes.

Enable/Disable Battery Pre-conditioning

- When the conditions for battery pre-conditioning are met, lightly tapping the switch will activate the battery pre-conditioning.
- While battery preconditioning is active, tapping the switch or meeting the deactivation conditions will immediately stop the function.



Battery Pre-conditioning Activation Conditions

Battery preconditioning operates only when all of the following conditions are met:

- Ignition switch in ON position and vehicle started
- Battery charge level of about 12.5% or higher
- Battery temperature 15°C or below
- Difference between maximum and minimum temperatures of battery cell 10°C or less

3

Battery Pre-conditioning Deactivation Conditions

Battery pre-conditioning will immediately stop if any of the following conditions are met:

- Ignition switch in the ACC position
- Battery in fast and slow charging
- V2L in operation
- High-voltage system warning light is on
- Battery charge level of about 9.5% or lower
- Battery temperature 20°C or higher
- Difference between maximum and minimum temperatures of battery cell 10°C or greater



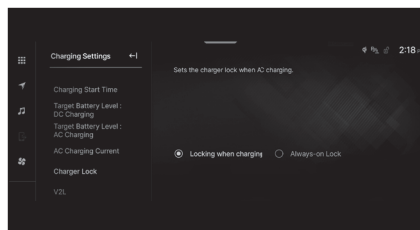
Charging connector lock

The charging connector lock prevents the charging connector from being removed and locks it in the charge inlet securely.

This function is useful to remove the cable when using a fast charger at a public charging station for the next user.

Locking charging connector

The charge plug lock setting can be selected when the vehicle is in EV Mode.



- Select EV Mode  → Charging setting → Charger lock → Locking when charging/Always-on lock, in the main menu of the hypervisor control panel.
- **When Always-on lock selected**
After charging is complete, the slow charger remains locked until you touch End Charge on the hypervisor control panel.
- **When Locking when charging selected**
It will remain locked when charging and will automatically unlock when charging is complete.

Notice

- Unlocking the vehicle door will still remain the charge plug locked.



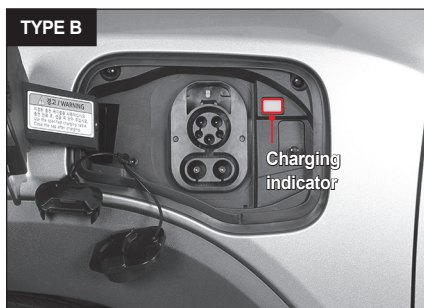
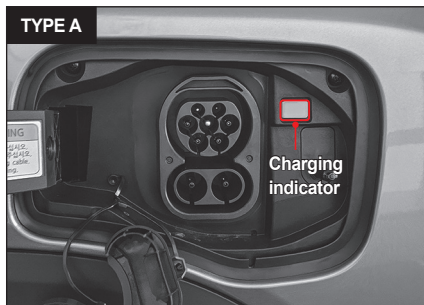
Caution

- Use AUTO cable lock function when using a public charger for the next user.
- If you use portable (emergency) charger in AUTO cable lock mode, please keep in mind that someone can take the charger once the charging process is completed.
- For public fast charger, the charging plug is always unlocked when charging is finished, whether in AUTO mode or LCOK mode, for the next user.



Charging indicator

The charging indicator indicates the status of charging system. It informs the driver of a charging system malfunctioning or abnormality during charging.



Notice

- The SoC of the HV battery can be check on the instrument panel or charger display.

Charging status indicator

Charging indicator behavior		Meaning
	Indicator off	Charging door open
	Lit in green	Charging plug connected or charging completed
	Flashing in green	Charging in progress
	Flashing in red	Problem with charging system or poor charging plug connection
	Lit in blue	Waiting for scheduled charging

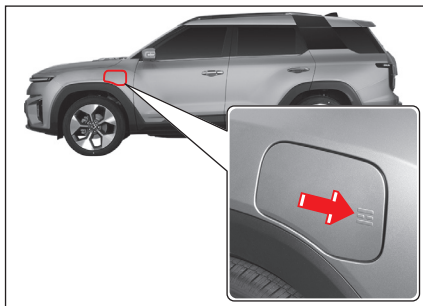
3



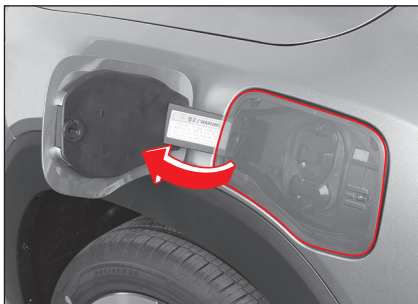
Slow and fast charging

Charging procedures

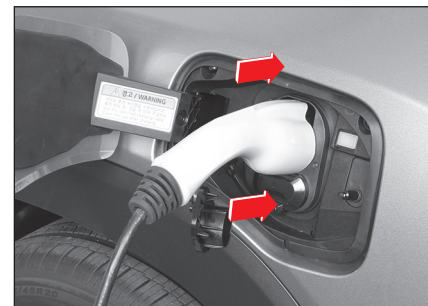
- 1 Depress the brake pedal and leave the parking brake applied.
- 2 Move the electronic shift lever into P (park).
- 3 Turn off the vehicle.
- 4 Press on the center edge of the charge port door in the direction of the arrow.



- 5 Pull the charge port door in the direction of the arrow to open it.



- 6 Open the charge port door and remove the dust cover for the charge port.
- 7 Check if there is any dust or fluid on and around the charge port.



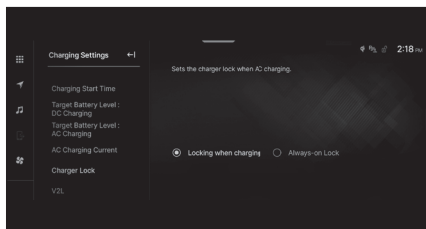
- 8 Align the charging connector to the charge port and insert completely.

Notice

- If the green indicator lights up immediately after plugging in the charging plug, the connection is normal.
- If the indicator comes on red, pull the connector from the port and then reconnect.



- 9 The charging plug lock status after charging is complete according to the charging plug lock setting mode is as follows.



Refer to "Locking charging connector" (p.3-50)

- When Always-on lock selected
After charging is complete, the slow charger remains locked until you touch End Charge on the hypervisor control panel.
- When Locking when charging selected
It will remain locked when charging and will automatically unlock when charging is complete.

Notice

- Unlocking the vehicle door will still remain the charge plug locked.

- 10 Start charging.

- 11 Check if the HV battery charging indicator (S) is turned on the instrument panel.

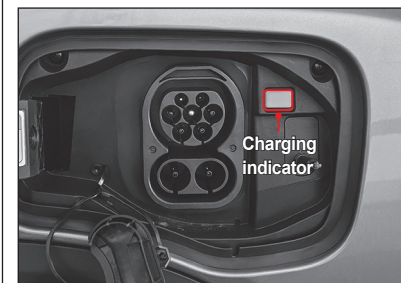


Caution

- To charge the battery, the electronic shift lever should be in P (park) position.
- The radio interference may occur during HV battery charging.
- You cannot move the electronic shift lever out of P (park) position while charging in progress.
- Some devices including the cooling fan may operate unexpectedly to control the battery temperature during HV battery charging. In this case, A/C system is activated which can lead to reduced cooling performance.

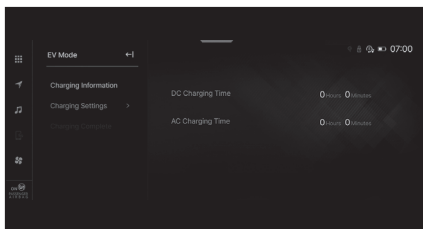
Notice

- If the charging indicator is turned off the charging process will not start.
- If the charging indicator is not illuminated, reconnect the charging connector.
- To use basic electronics of the vehicle during charging, set the START/STOP switch to ACC & ON. (The remaining charging time may vary based on the electronics that are being used)
- You can check the charging status by checking the indicator on the charge port door.
 - Blinks Green: Battery charging in progress
 - Solid Green: Charging completed





- 12 When charging begins, the estimated time to charge is displayed on the instrument cluster for a period of time.



Notice

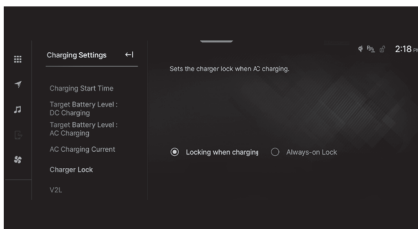
- When the driver's door is open during charging, the estimated time to charge is also displayed on the instrument panel for a period of time.
- If scheduled charging is set, the estimated time to charge is displayed as “__ hours __ minutes”.

After completing charging

- 1 Depending on the charge plug lock mode, the charge plug will remain locked and unlocked after charging is complete.

Notice

- **Methods to finish slow/quick and portable charging added**
 - Press **UNLOCK** button on smart key for more than 2 seconds to finish charging
 - Press the **End Charge** button on the hypervisor control panel to finish charging.



- Select EV Mode (EV) → Charging setting → Charger lock → Locking when charging/Always-on lock, in the main menu of the hypervisor control panel.

- When Always-on lock selected
After charging is complete, the slow charger remains locked until you touch End Charge on the hypervisor control panel.
- When Locking when charging selected
It will remain locked when charging and will automatically unlock when charging is complete.

Notice

- **Unlocking the vehicle door will still remain the charge plug locked.**

- 2 When charging is complete, disconnect the charging plug.



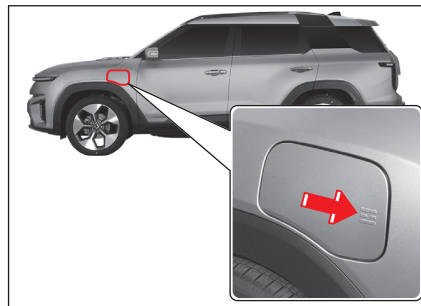
Warning

- **Failure to follow the above instruction leads to malfunctions of the HV battery and related units or can cause fire and/or electric shock. Disconnect the charging connector in a controlled manner.**
- **For electric vehicle charging system, for the safety of the driver, a confirmation message (voice message saying charging is complete) indicating the end of charging must appear before the charging plug can be disconnected.**

☞ Refer to “Emergency removal of charging connector” (p.3-48)



- 3** Check if there is any dust or fluid on and around the charge port and install it.



- 4** Press on the center edge of the charge port door to firmly close.
- 5** If you press the charging door hard to close it, it may reopen. At this time, close it gently again.

Notice

- If you leave the slow charging plug connected to the charging port for a long period of time after slow charging is complete, the low-voltage 12V battery may discharge and prevent the engine from starting. Be sure to disconnect the slow charging plug from the charging port when charging is complete.



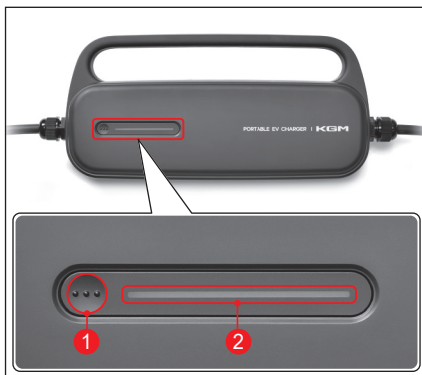
Portable charger*

Charger operation and settings

Charger operation

Connect the charging connector to the charging port of vehicle. Charging begins and the main unit's LED will remain steadily illuminated in blue.

The charger will automatically stop operating when charging is complete, and the main unit's LED will flash blue.



1 Charging Capacity setting button

2 LED display

Charging Capacity settings

Press the charging capacity button for 3 seconds to change the charging capacities and LED color. The LED remains illuminated during standby.

- White : 16A
- Sky blue :13A
- Yellow : 10A

Notice

- If high temperature occurs at the wall outlet during charging, the wall plug detect it and decrease charging.
- When the charging decreases, the front LED display blink red and blue (0.6s).

LED	Condition	Error Recovery Method
Red Flashing(0.5s)	- System over-voltage - System under-voltage	Automatic restart (after 30s)
Red ON	- Output over-current - Over temperature_1 (board) - Over temperature_2 (Cable) - Relay control Error - Residual Current Detected	Step1. Disconnect Vehicle connector Step2. Disconnect AC Plug and Reconnect



When you cannot drive to a public charging station because of low battery level, you can charge the battery from an ordinary household outlet (220 V) using a portable charger (optional).



- 1 Power plug
- 2 Control box
- 3 Charging connector



Warning

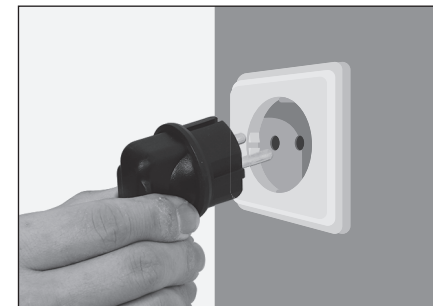
- When this charger is connected to a household outlet, it may exceed the capacity of the power distributor, resulting in safety problems such as electrical shutdown and fire. Check the power capacity before charging the vehicle.

Notice

- Please keep in mind that there could be problems related to electricity bills and electrical load when charging from a household outlet.
- It takes about 30 hours to charge to 100% using a portable (emergency) charger at room temperature.

Charging procedures

- 1 Check the rate current for the household outlet (220 V). (Rated current for portable charger: 10 A/13 A/16 A)
- 2 Plug the power plug into the power outlet (220 V).



3

Rated Current	Rated Voltage	Frequency	Rated Residual Current	Plug
10A	230V	50Hz	AC: 30mA DC: 6mA	EU MIAN TYPE E/F 



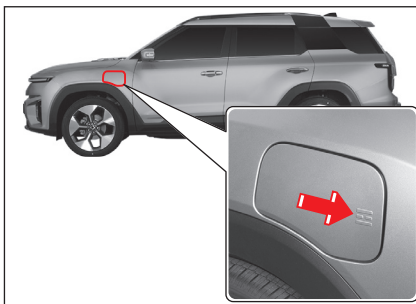
3 Check the display on the control box.



Notice

- Check rear side of the control box for more information regarding control box display.

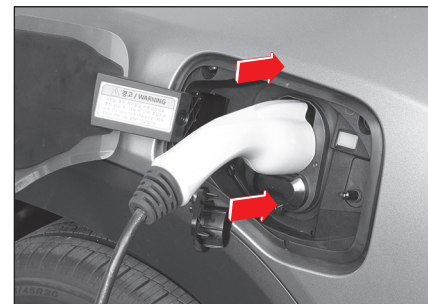
- 4 Depress the brake pedal and leave the parking brake applied.
- 5 Move the electronic shift lever into P (park).
- 6 Turn off the vehicle.
- 7 Press on the center edge of the charge port door in the direction of the arrow.



- 8 Pull the charge port door in the direction of the arrow to open it.



- 9 Open the charge port door and remove the dust cover for the charge port.
- 10 Check if there is any dust or fluid on and around the charge port.



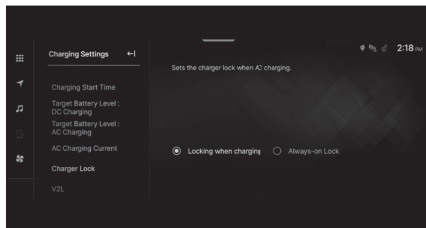
- 11 Align the charging connector to the charge port and insert completely.

Notice

- If the green indicator lights up immediately after plugging in the charging plug, the connection is normal.
- If the indicator comes on red, pull the connector from the port and then reconnect.



- 12 The charging plug lock status after charging is complete according to the charging plug lock setting mode is as follows.



☞ Refer to "Locking charging connector" (p.3-50)

- When Always-on lock selected
After charging is complete, the slow charger remains locked until you touch End Charge on the hypervisor control panel.
- When Locking when charging selected
It will remain locked when charging and will automatically unlock when charging is complete.

Notice

- **Unlocking the vehicle door will still remain the charge plug locked.**

- 13 Start charging.

- 14 Check if the HV battery charging indicator (S) is turned on the instrument panel.



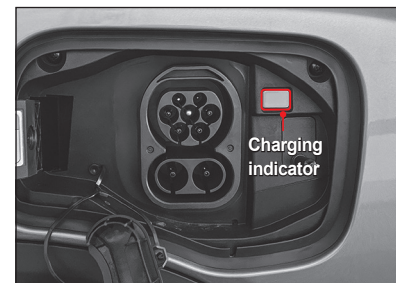
Caution

- To charge the battery, the electronic shift lever should be in P (park) position.
- The radio interference may occur during HV battery charging.
- You cannot move the electronic shift lever out of P (park) position while charging in progress.
- Some devices including the cooling fan may operate unexpectedly to control the battery temperature during HV battery charging. In this case, A/C system is activated which can lead to reduced cooling performance.

Notice

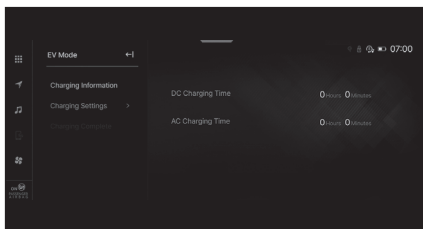
- If the charging indicator is turned off the charging process will not start.
- If the charging indicator is not illuminated, reconnect the charging connector.
- To use basic electronics of the vehicle during charging, set the START/STOP switch to ACC & ON. (The remaining charging time may vary based on the electronics that are being used)
- You can check the charging status by checking the indicator on the charge port door.
 - Blinks Green: Battery charging in progress
 - Solid Green: Charging completed

3





- 15 When charging begins, the estimated time to charge is displayed on the instrument cluster for a period of time.



Notice

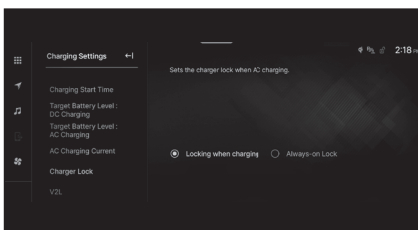
- When the driver's door is open during charging, the estimated time to charge is also displayed on the instrument panel for a period of time.
- If scheduled charging is set, the estimated time to charge is displayed as “__ hours __ minutes”.

After completing charging

- 1 Depending on the charge plug lock mode, the charge plug will remain locked and unlocked after charging is complete.

Notice

- **Methods to finish slow/quick and portable charging added**
 - Press UNLOCK button on smart key for more than 2 seconds to finish charging
 - Press the End Charge button on the hypervisor control panel to finish charging.



- On the hypervisor control panel, set the EV charging mode from EV Mode (EV) → Charging Settings → Charger lock → Locking when charging/Always-on lock under main menu.

- When Always-on lock selected
After charging is complete, the slow charger remains locked until you touch End Charge on the hypervisor control panel.
- When Locking when charging selected
It will remain locked when charging and will automatically unlock when charging is complete.

Notice

- Unlocking the vehicle door will still remain the charge plug locked.

- 2 When charging is complete, disconnect the charging plug.



Warning

- Failure to follow the above instruction leads to malfunctions of the HV battery and related units or can cause fire and/or electric shock. Disconnect the charging connector in a controlled manner.
- For electric vehicle charging system, for the safety of the driver, a confirmation message (voice message saying charging is complete) indicating the end of charging must appear before the charging plug can be disconnected.

☞ Refer to “Emergency removal of charging connector” (p.3-48)



- 3 Check if there is any dust or fluid on and around the charge port and install it.



- 4 Press on the center edge of the charge port door to firmly close.
- 5 Remove the plug of the portable charger from the power outlet (220 V).
- 6 Fit the dust cover on the charging connector.
- 7 Store the portable charger in a safe place and keep it from dirt or dust.

Warning

- Use a portable charger which is a genuine part of KG Mobility.
- Do not attempt to modify, disassemble, or service any part of the portable charger.
- Never use a separate extension cable or adaptor when using a portable charger. Failure to do so may cause a fire.
- Do not use the portable charger if it is abnormal.
- If the cable of the portable charger is stripped, excessively bent or there are dings on it, do not use the charger.
- Never use the portable charger, if there are signs of damage in the control box, power plug, charging connector part of it.

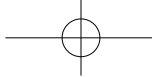
Warning

- Do not touch or use the portable charger connector with your wet hand or in very humid conditions.
- Always use the portable charger within the rated voltage.
- Keep out of the reach of children or incompetent persons. Understanding the safety precautions and risks thoroughly is necessary to use this device.
- Do not step on the portable charger cable or place items on it.
- Make sure that the cable of the portable charger is not twisted.
- Do not charge the vehicle when there is lightning.
- Never charge the battery near fire or heat.

3

Caution

- Keep the power plug and charging connector clean and free from any fluid and/or dust.



How to store and care for slow charging cable



Store the slow charging cable in the luggage compartment.



Scheduled Charging

How to perform scheduled charging

Scheduled charging for the high voltage battery can be performed at a set time via the hypervisor control panel.

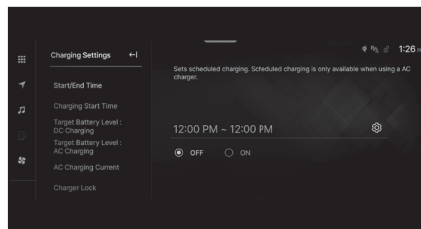
Cautions

- For scheduled charging, the user must use a slow charger or portable charger.

Notice

- For a detailed description of scheduled charging, please see the manual provided separately.
- What needs to be set up for charging management
 - Start/end time of scheduled charge
 - Charging start time
 - Set the amount of battery to fast charge
 - Set the amount of battery to charge at slow speed
 - Slow (station) charge current
 - Slow (portable) charge current
 - Charging finished

- 1 Set up scheduled charging from the hypervisor control panel.
 - On the hypervisor control panel, set the EV charging mode from EV Mode  → Charging Settings under main menu.



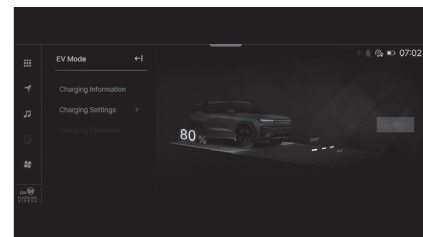
Notice

- What needs to be set up for scheduled charging
 - Set scheduled charge start/end times
 - Set the amount of battery to charge at slow speed
 - Slow (station) charge current
 - Slow (portable) charge current

- 2 Install the charging plug in the vehicle according to the slow charging procedures and portable charging procedures.
 - ☞ Refer to "Slow and fast charging" (p.3-52)
 - ☞ Refer to "Portable charger*" (p.3-56)

To charge immediately after canceling scheduled charging

- 1 Even when the slow charging and portable charging plugs are connected while the scheduled charging is set, the high voltage battery will not be charged until the scheduled time is reached. At this point, touch the "START" button on the EV Mode screen.



- 2 This will temporarily turn off scheduled charging, and start high voltage charging immediately.

Cautions

- To be able to charge immediately, you must press the Scheduled Charging OFF button within 3 minutes of plugging in the charging plug.

3



Bi-directional Charging (V2L)*

Bi-directional charging (Vehicle to Load) is a system that utilizes power from a high-voltage battery installed in the vehicle to provide power outside the vehicle, allowing it to be used with common household electronics.

Cautions

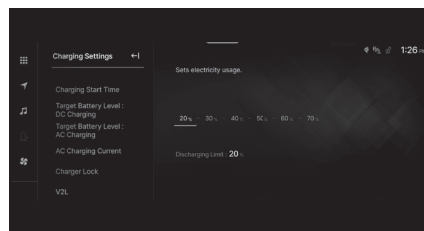
- Do not use the system in environments with rain, snow, or condensation (near V2L connectors). This may result in electric shock.
- Undercharged or overloaded high-voltage batteries can lead to power interruptions and damage to high-voltage systems. Always check the status of your vehicle.
- Be sure to check the wattage of your electronics before using them to ensure they do not exceed the maximum wattage of the bi-directional charging (V2L) we provide.

Notice

- To prevent bi-directional charger (V2L) theft, it cannot be removed when the vehicle door is locked.
- To prevent safety incidents, the bi-directional charger (V2L) cannot be removed while it is in operation.
- You can use the bi-directional charger (V2L) up to 20% of the high-voltage battery capacity.

How To Set Vehicle

- 1 Open the 220V power socket cover of the bi-directional charger (V2L) in the direction of the arrow.



- From the main menu of the hypervisor control panel, navigate to EV Mode  → Charging Settings → V2L and set the desired discharge limit (%) in the range of 20% to 70%.

Notice

- Bi-directional charging (V2L) usage can be set from 20% to 70% in 10% increments.
- When the capacity of the high-voltage battery reaches the set value, the bi-directional charging (V2L) is automatically blocked.
- Output: Max. 3.52kW, Max. 220V 16A

Designation of each part of bi-directional charging (V2L) connector

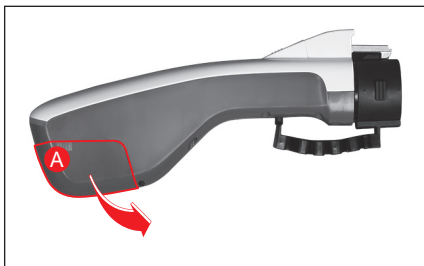


- 1 Dust cover
- 2 Unlock button
- 3 Operation switch (push-lock type)
- 4 Operation indicator (LED)
- 5 Socket cover
- 6 Locking fastener
- 7 Connector (charging port fastener)
- 8 220V power socket

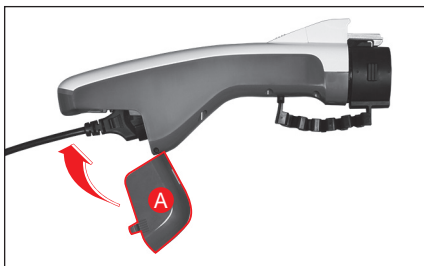
How to use bi-directional charger (V2L)

How to plug in

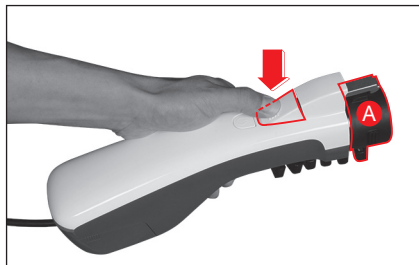
- 1 Open the 220V power socket cover (A) of the bi-directional charger (V2L) in the direction of the arrow.



- 2 Be sure to close the cover (A) after connecting to an outlet for products that require power.



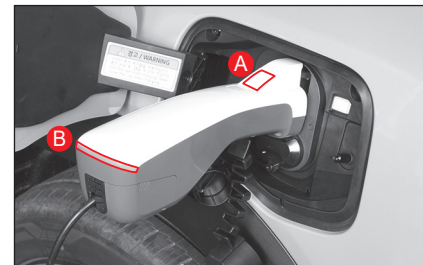
- 3 Press the unlock button on the bi-directional charger (V2L) in the direction of the arrow and remove the dust cover (A).



- 4 Plug the bi-directional charger (V2L) into your vehicle's charging port.



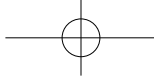
- 5 Press the bi-directional charger (V2L) operation switch (A) to verify that the operation indicator (LED) (B) is lit.



Notice

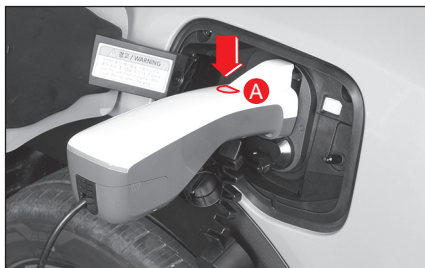
- The operation light (LED) must be lit to receive power from the vehicle.

3



How to disconnect

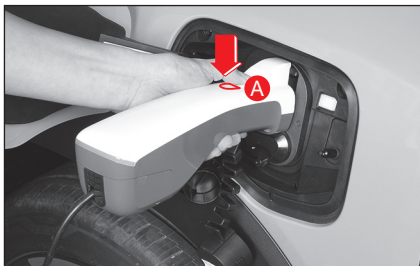
- 1 Press the bi-directional charger (V2L) operation switch (A) to stop operation.



- 2 Verify that the operation indicator light (LED) (A) is off.



- 3 Disconnect the bi-directional charger (V2L) while pressing the unlock button (A) in the direction of the arrow.



Messages On Instrument Cluster

V2L operation has ended as the battery discharge limit has reached its set target level.

V2L available.

Check the conditions to operate V2L.



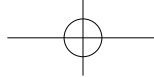
Cautions

- Never use the bi-directional charger (V2L) if its connector and 220V power socket, cable, exterior, etc. are damaged or foreign objects are found.
- Avoid using it in high humidity, snow, or rain.
- Do not use if there is a risk of lightning strikes.
- Do not use the bi-directional charger (V2L) with wet hands.
- Use the connector and socket portions of the bi-directional charger (V2L) only when they are fully engaged with their relevant parts.
- Do not touch the conductor portion of the bi-directional charger (V2L) with bare hands.
- Do not use electrical heaters (such as hot air blower, electric pad, electric kettle, iron, etc.) inside or outside the vehicle. This can lead to a fire hazard as well as overloading the vehicle's high-voltage battery.
- When using a bi-directional charger (V2L), heat can be generated from high-voltage battery. In this case, the cooling system can be activated to run the cooling fans in the motor room.



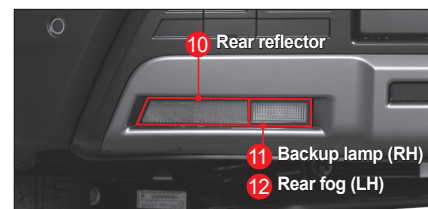
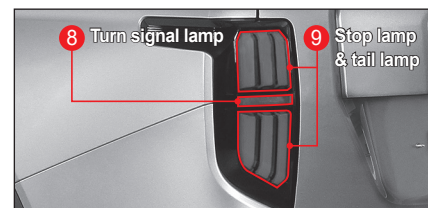
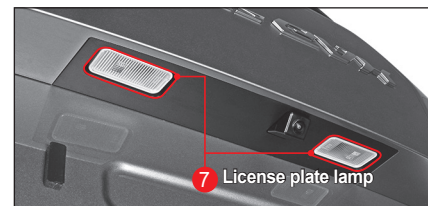
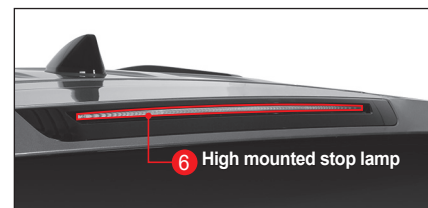
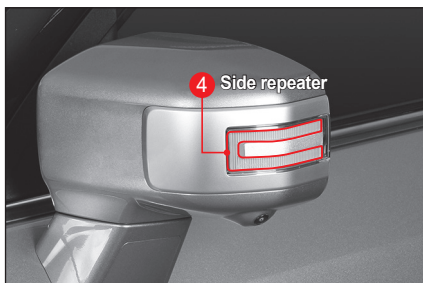
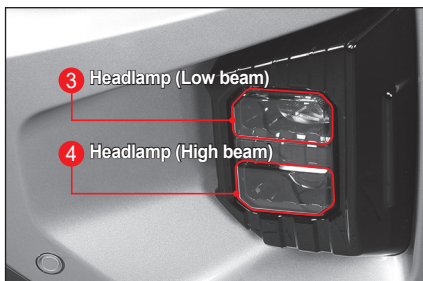
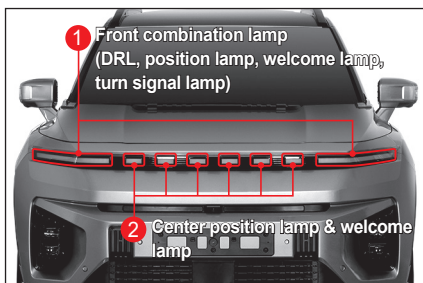
Cautions

- Do not tamper with or disassemble any part of the bi-directional charger (V2L). This can expose you to the risk of fire and electric shock, and is not eligible for warranty repair.
- When you are finished using the bi-directional charger (V2L), disconnect it from the vehicle immediately.
- Do not place objects on top or apply excessive force while the bi-directional charger (V2L) is connected to the vehicle. It may lead to fires and electric shocks due to damage.



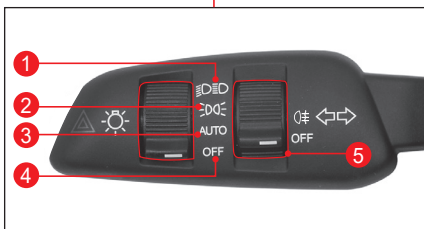
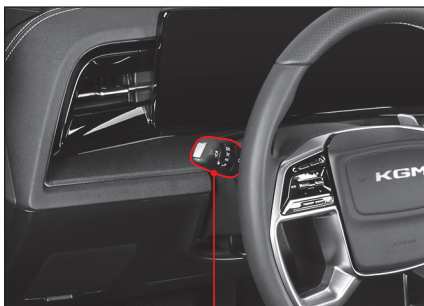
Lights and lamps

Outdoor lights/lamps





Light switch



- 1 Head light
- 2 Tail light
- 3 Auto light function
- 4 Turning off all lights
- 5 Rear fog light

Turning on the head light

The head light turns on along with the sidelight, tail light, license plate lamp, front fog light (in the ON status) and other interior lights.

Turning on the tail light

The tail light turns on along with the sidelight, license plate lamp, front fog light (in the ON status) and other interior lights.

Activating the auto light function*

The head light and the tail light turn on or off automatically according to the amount of sunshine received by the auto light sensor.

Turning on Smart High Beam (SHB)

Pushing the Light switch in the direction of instrument cluster with the Light switch in the AUTO position activates the SHB.

 Refer to "Smart High Beam (SHB)*" (p.3-73)

Turning off all lights

All lights turn off.

Notice

- For the vehicles without the auto light and fog lamp, the light switch has no corresponding function.

Turning on the rear fog light*

With the headlights turned on, if you rotate the switch in  position, rear fog lights turn on and the switch returns back in front fog light position. Rear and front fog lights turn on simultaneously. Turning it again will turn off the rear fog lamp.

Turning off the fog light*

The fog light turns off.

Turning on/off the left/right turn signal



- When you push the Light switch down (1), the left turn signal blinks. At this time, the turn signal on the instrument cluster also blinks.
- When you push the Light switch up (2), the right turn signal blinks. At this time, the turn signal on the instrument cluster also blinks.



Turning on/off the high beam



- When you push the Light switch in the direction of instrument cluster and release it with the low beam on, the high beam turns on. At this time, the high beam indicator on the instrument cluster also turns on.
- When you pull the Light switch in the driver's direction and release it with the high beam on, the high beam turns off.

Warning

- Do not turn on the high beam if there is an oncoming vehicle or a vehicle at the front. The high beam may block the other drivers' vision, causing an accident.

Turning on the high beam and low beam at the same time (passing light)



The high beam and the low beam turn on at the same time while pulling the Light switch in the driver's direction.

Notice

- This function operates regardless of the position of the Light switch.

Hazard warning lamp

The hazard warning lamp is used to give warning to other vehicles in the event of emergency for preventing an accident.

- When you press the Hazard warning lamp switch, all turn signals blink.
- When you press the Hazard warning lamp switch again, the hazard warning lamp turns off.

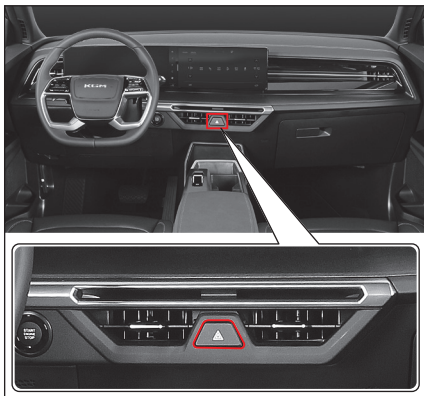
☞ Refer to "Emergency Stop Signal (ESS)" (p.4-117)

Caution

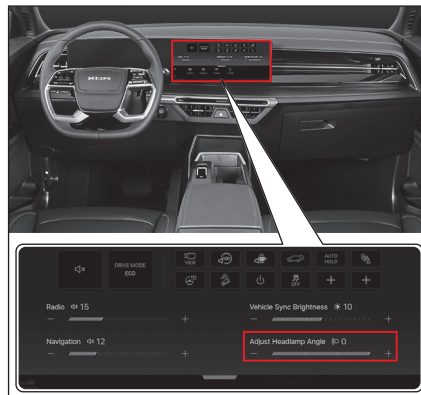
- Do not operate the hazard warning lamp for a long period of time with the vehicle off. Doing so may cause confusion to other vehicle drivers as well as depletion of the battery.

Notice

- The hazard warning lamp operates regardless of the status of the START/STOP switch
- While the hazard warning lamp is operating, the turn signal does not operate independently.



Adjusting the angle of the head light



The front and rear slope of the vehicle may vary depending on the number of occupants, weight and center of gravity of luggage.

In such case, you can adjust the angle of the head light to secure proper vision at night and not to obstruct an oncoming vehicle or a vehicle at the front with a strong light from the head light.

Headlight Angle Adjustment Levels

The headlight angle can be adjusted in 4 levels (from 0 to 3) depending on the front/rear inclination of the vehicle.

- If the vehicle is leaning forward: Lightly touch the headlight angle adjustment switch (+) to set it to level 0. The headlights are adjusted to point upward.
- If the vehicle is leaning backward: Lightly touch the headlight angle adjustment switch (-) to set it to level 3. The headlights are adjusted to point downward.

3



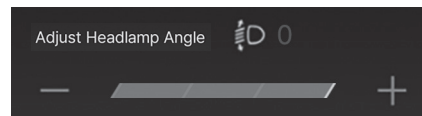
Warning

- Before starting the vehicle, adjust the headlight angle according to the standard, based on the number of passengers, the weight of the load, and the center of gravity. Otherwise, it may cause an accident.
 - Never drive the vehicle when the headlight angle is significantly misaligned with the adjustment standard, as in the following cases.
 - Driving with the headlight angle incorrectly set to level 3 instead of level 0 (headlights angled downward): In the event of an emergency on the road ahead, your reaction time may be delayed.
 - Driving with the headlight angle incorrectly set to level 0 instead of level 3 (headlights angled upward): This can obstruct the vision of oncoming drivers or those in vehicles ahead.
- In such cases, it can interfere with safe driving and lead to serious accidents.

Headlight angle adjustment standard (5-seater)

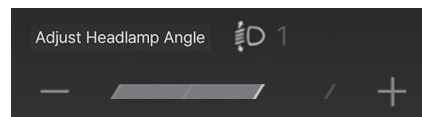
Level 0

- 1 to 2 occupants



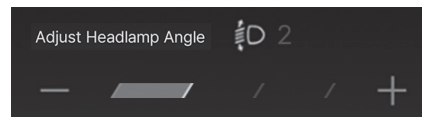
Level 1

- 5 occupants



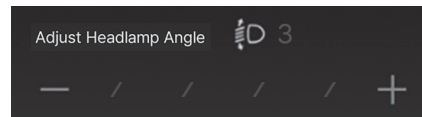
Level 2

- 5 occupants + 220kg load



Level 3

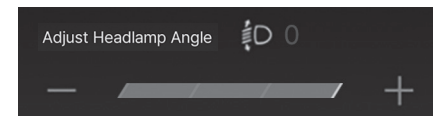
- 1 occupant + 480kg load



Headlight angle adjustment standard (2-seater VAN)

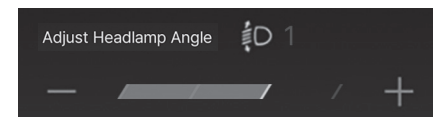
Level 0

- 1 to 2 occupants



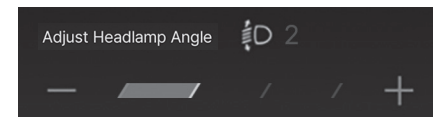
Level 1

- 1 occupants + 120kg load



Level 2

- 1 occupants + 365kg load



Daytime Running Light (DRL)

The DRL also turns on automatically during daytime, allowing you to recognize a vehicle easily.



In case the DRL turns on

- If the switch of the tail light, front fog light and head light is not operated with the START/STOP switch in the ON (irrelevant to whether the vehicle is started or not) status

Notice

- When the DRL turns on, the tail light also turns on at the same time.
- The same lamp is used for the DRL and the front position lamp in the front combi lamp, but the DRL is more brighter.

In case the DRL turns off

- When DRL deactivated
- When the START/STOP switch is in ACC or OFF status
- When you turn on the head light or the head light is turned on by the auto light function
- When you turn on the front fog light
- When parking brake (EPB) applied at the vehicle speed of 3 km/h or less (AUTO HOLD switch turned off)
- When the hazard warning indicator is activated
- When left/right turn signals operates (corresponding side's daytime running lights)

Smart High Beam (SHB)*

The SHB is the function to control the high beam not to obstruct the vision of a driver in an oncoming vehicle or a vehicle at the front with a strong light from the high beam.

The SHB detects the situation through the sensor at the top of the vehicle windshield (front camera module) and turns on or off the high beam automatically.

Setting the SHB

- 1 Place the Light switch in the AUTO position.



3



- 2 Push the Light switch in the direction of instrument cluster and release it.



- When the SHB function is activated, the SHB indicator turns on.



SHB indicator

In case the high beam turns on

All the following conditions are set with the SHB activated, the high beam turns on.

- When the vehicle speed is 35 km/h or faster
- When the surrounding area is dark that it is detected as night
- When an oncoming vehicle and a vehicle at the front are not detected

When the light beam turns on automatically, the SHB indicator turns on along with the high beam indicator.



SHB indicator



High beam indicator

In case the high beam turns off

The high beam turns off in any of the following cases.

- When the head light of an oncoming vehicle (including a bicycle and a motor cycle) is detected
- When the tail light of a vehicle (including a bicycle and a motor cycle) at the front is detected
- When it is bright in the surrounding area due to streetlights or other lighting sources in the surrounding roadside.
- When the light source of a tunnel is detected
- When the Light switch is not in the AUTO position
- When the SHB function is deactivated
- When the vehicle speed is less than 25 km/h

Notice

- When the high beam turns off and then turns on again automatically, there may be a delay time for few seconds.



Operating the Light switch

The detailed operation of the Light switch with the SHB set and activated is as follows.

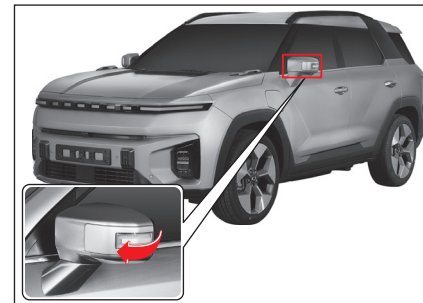
- When you push the Light switch in the direction of the instrument cluster with the SHB set and operating, the high beam turns on and the SHB setting is canceled.
- When you pull the Light switch in the driver's direction with the SHB set, the high beam turns on and the SHB setting is maintained only while pulling the Light switch.
- When you pull the Light switch in the driver's direction while the SHB is operating, the high beam turns off and the SHB setting is canceled.
- When you place the Light switch in positions other than the AUTO position, the SHB setting is canceled.

Caution

In any of the following cases, the SHB may not operate normally.

- When the vehicle windshield is damaged or contaminated by dust, mist, fog, sticker, snow, etc
- When the lamp of an oncoming vehicle or a vehicle at the front is damaged
- When an oncoming vehicle or a vehicle at the front is out of your front sight
- When an oncoming vehicle and a vehicle at the front are recognized only partially in an intersection or a winding road
- When there is a light source similar to a vehicle lamp or a reflector at the front
- When an illuminator or a reflector is installed in a construction section, etc.

AUTO Approach



3

AUTO approach (outside rearview mirror unfolded) is activated when you are approaching within 1 m of the vehicle while carrying the smart key in theft deterrent mode.

Notice

- From the main menu of the hypervisor control panel, select Vehicle Settings  → Convenience Features → Approach Welcome → Off or ON.



Coming home/leaving home light

The coming home/leaving home light is the function that turns on the head light automatically when the vehicle arrives or leaves in dark environments, increasing the safety and convenience.

Setting the coming home/leaving home light

- From the main menu of the hypervisor control panel, select Vehicle Settings () → Lights → Leaving Home Headlamp or Coming Home Headlamp → Setting Time (Off / 10s / 20s / 30s).

Operating the coming home light

- When you turn off the vehicle with the head light (low beam) on, the head light (low beam) stays on for the set duration.
- When a certain amount of time has passed with all doors and the tailgate closed, the head light (low beam) turns off.

Notice

- If you maintain the door or the tailgate opened within the set time after turning off the vehicle, the head light (low beam) turns off after 3 minutes.**
- When you open and close the door or the tailgate within the set time after turning off the vehicle, the head light (low beam) stays on for the set time and then it turns off.**
- When you place the Auto light and Head light (low beam) switches in the OFF position, the head light (low beam) turns off immediately.**

Operating the leaving home light

- When you cancel the theft monitoring mode by pressing the Door unlock button on the smart key or the Door handle switch, the head light (low beam) stays on for the set time.
- When the set time has passed, the head light (low beam) turns off.

Notice

- Conditions for turning off leaving home (low beam off)**
 - 1) Set time elapses after leaving-home light turned on
 - 2) Lock signal received from smart key
 - 3) Ignition turned on while leaving-home light in operation

Welcome mode

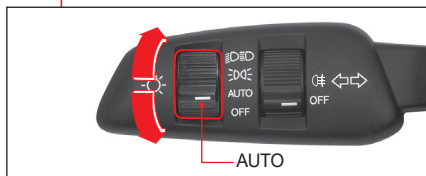
Unlocking the door when the theft monitoring mode is on, turn signal lights blink once and welcome animation operates. (front combi lamp, center position lamp)

Good-bye mode

Turning off the engine and locking the door, turn signal lights blink twice and good-bye animation operates. (front combi lamp, center position lamp)



Auto light function*



The auto light is the function that detects the amount of sunshine through the sensor and turns on or off the head light and the tail light automatically.

- The auto light function is activated when the Light switch is positioned in the AUTO position.

Auto light sensor



The auto light sensor is integrated with the rain sensor.

! Caution

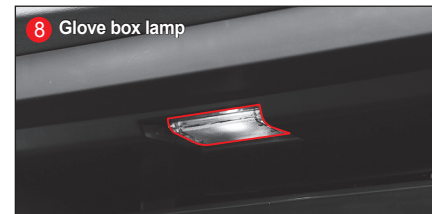
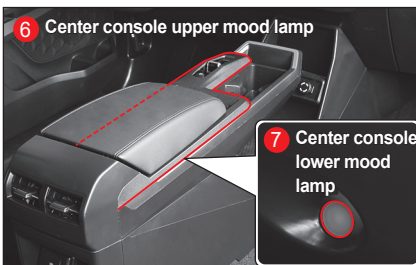
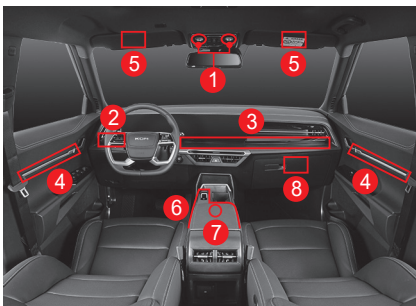
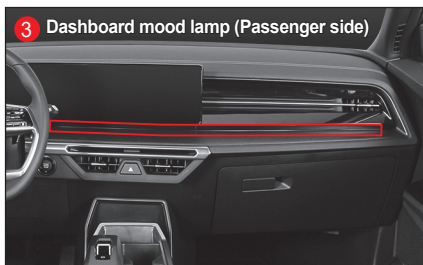
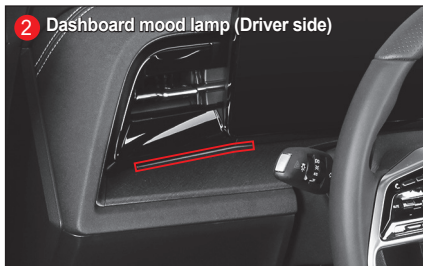
- When you shake or apply an impact to the auto light sensor, the auto light may malfunction.
- Do not wipe the auto light sensor installation part with cleaning agents or wax, etc. The auto light function may malfunction.
- Attaching commercially available window coating or tinting products to the windshield may cause the auto light function to malfunction.
- If the vehicle vibrates significantly just as driving on a road with an uneven surface, the auto light function may malfunction.

! Caution

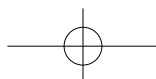
- The time to turn on and off the light may vary depending on a change in the climate condition such as fog, snow and rain and surrounding environment.
- When you change the Light switch to the AUTO position or from the AUTO position to another position, the lights inside the vehicle, tail light and head light may blink momentarily. This is a normal phenomenon for recognizing the status of the auto light.
- When passing through a dark place such as a tunnel, do not depend on the auto light function and turn on the head light manually.
- Use the auto light function for the head light and the tail light limitedly only at the time of sunrise and sunset. In general, operate the head light and the tail light manually.
- Do not use the auto light function for the head light and the tail light on a gloomy day. Operate such lights manually.



Interior lamp

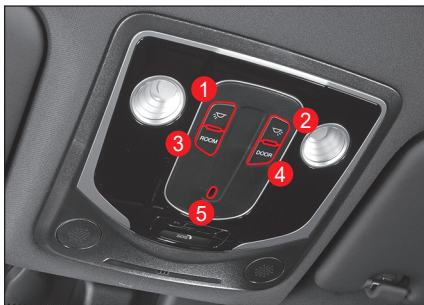


Rear room lamp





Front room lamp (overhead console)



- ① Driver seat spot switch
- ② Front passenger seat spot switch
- ③ Driver/passenger/rear room lamp/spot switch
- ④ Door-linked switch
- ⑤ Front spot lamp

Warning

- Avoid using the interior room lamp when driving at night or in a dark place. The light of the interior room lamp may obstruct the front vision of a driver, causing an accident.

Notice

- When the interior room lamp is turned on after the engine is turned off, the room lamp turns off automatically after approximately 10 minutes in order to prevent depletion of the battery.

Driver seat spot switch

When you press the switch (①), the driver seat front room lamp turns on.

Front passenger seat spot switch

When you press the switch (②), the front passenger seat front room lamp turns on.

Driver / passenger / rear room lamp spot switch

When you press the switch (③), the driver / passenger / rear room lamp turns on.

Door linkage switch

When you open the door with the switch (④) pressed, the front room lamp and the rear room lamp turn on, and when you close the door, those lamps turn off.

Front spot lamp (⑤)

It illuminates when the tail lamp is turned on.
It illuminates the front center area dimly.

Linkage function between the smart/rekes key and the front room lamp

When you unlock the door using the smart/rekes key with the front room Lamp door linkage switch pressed, the driver seat and front passenger seat room lamps turn on for 30 seconds.

At this time, when you lock the door by pressing the Door lock button on the smart/rekes key, the driver seat and front passenger seat room lamps turn off immediately.



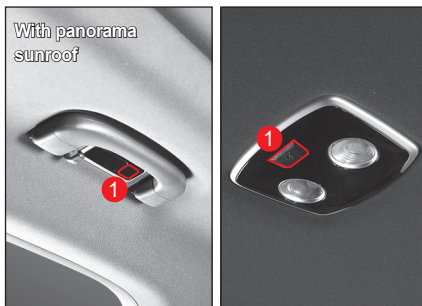
Caution

- Do not leave the door open for a long time with the room lamp linked to the door or leave the vehicle when the room lamp is turned on. If the room lamp stays on for a long period of time, the battery may be depleted.

3



Rear room lamp



Pressing the rear room lamp switch turns on the rear room lamp. Pressing the switch again turns off the rear room lamp. The rear room lamp comes on when the door is opened regardless of the rear room lamp switch operation if the door coupled switch is pressed in.

! Caution

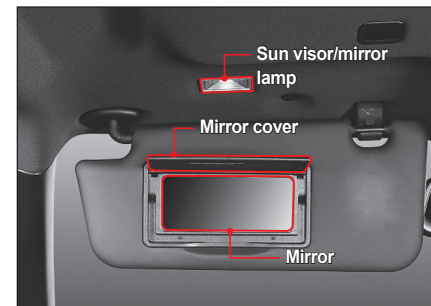
- Do not open the door for a long period of time with the Door linkage switch pressed. If the rear room/luggage room lamp stays on for a long period of time, the battery may be depleted.
- Do not leave the tailgate not closed completely for long period of time. If the rear room/luggage room lamp stays on for a long period of time, the battery may be depleted.

Luggage room lamp



- Pressing the switch (1) turns on the lamp and pressing it again turns it off with the tailgate open. (self-return type)
- When you close the tailgate with the luggage compartment lamp on, the luggage compartment lamp goes off.

Sun visor/mirror lamp



When you pull the sun visor down and open the mirror cover, the lamp turns on.

When you close the mirror cover, the lamp turns off.

! Caution

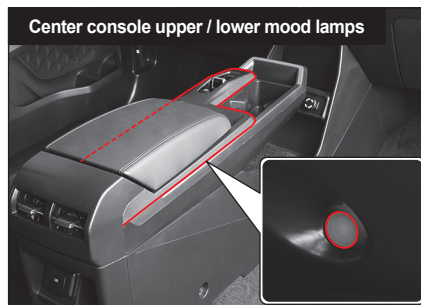
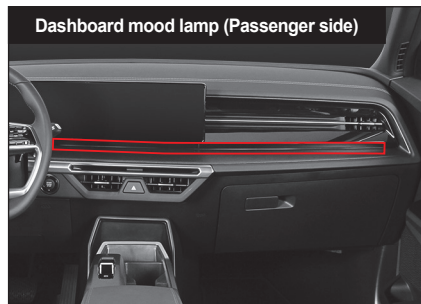
- Be sure to close the mirror cover after using the sun visor mirror. Failure to do so may cause the sun visor lamp to stay on and the battery may be depleted. Also, an open mirror cover may cause injury.

Notice

- When you pull the sun visor down and use it as a sunshade, you can adjust the position of the sun visor.



Mood lamp*

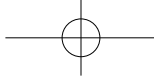


- When the mood lamp is set to enabled, the mood lamp is always lit if the engine is started or the ignition switch is turned on.
- When the tail lamp is turned on, the mood lamp gets dim and gives out a soft light.

Mood lamp setting

- 1 On the hypervisor control panel screen, touch Vehicle Settings.
- 2 In Vehicle Settings, touch Interior Lighting.
 - From the default colors, you can choose manual (6) and automatic colors. (including mood lamp brightness settings)
 - Custom colors give you the freedom to choose more colors from the default colors. (including setting the brightness of the mood lamp)
 - In your customization settings, you can choose to turn your interior mood lamps off and on, daytime OFF (mood lamps off during daylight hours), and more.

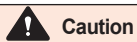
3



Glove box lamp



When you open the glove box, the lamp turns on, and when you close the glove box, the lamp turns off.

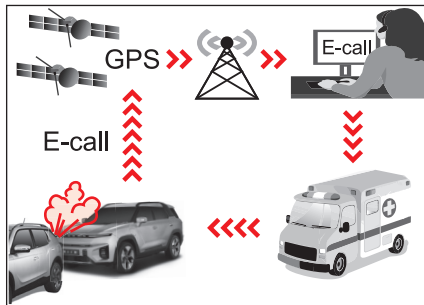


Caution

- Leaving the glove box opened may cause injury to an occupant in the event of an accident or sudden braking. Be sure to drive the vehicle with the glove box closed.



e-call (Emergency call)*



1. Accident occurs
2. Wireless network
3. Call center (PSAP)
4. Emergency center

The e-call is a system to minimize casualties by enabling the relevant information to be passed on to the nearest control center automatically or manually so that immediate action can be taken in case of traffic accidents and emergencies.

- **SOS button:** When the driver or passenger press this button, e-call is made to the service associate at the PSAP center.
- **LED indicator:** When turning the ignition on, the red and green LEDs light up. After 3 seconds, the red LED will go off during normal operation.

In the event of an issue with the system, the red LED lights up or blinks.



Caution

- If the red LED is still lit under normal driving conditions, it may indicate a malfunction of the E-CALL system.
- Contact the nearest authorized KG Mobility dealer immediately to determine whether the E-CALL system is faulty or not.
- Otherwise, normal operation of the E-CALL system is not guaranteed. The vehicle owner is responsible for the consequences of not observing the instruction above.

3



How to use E-CALL system

AutoCall Mode



The ERA-GLONASS (eCall) device automatically makes an emergency call to a single duty dispatcher service for the timely implementation of rescue operations in the event of a car accident.

For the timely provision of assistance and support, the ERA-GLONASS (eCall) system automatically transmits data on a traffic accident to a single duty dispatcher service.

In this case, the emergency call cannot be terminated by pressing the SOS button, and the ERA-GLONASS (eCall) system remains in the connected state until the Unified Duty Control Service operator receiving the call disconnects the emergency call.

Notice

- In cases of insignificant cost of accidents, the ERA-GLONASS (eCall) system may not make an automatic emergency call. In this case, it is possible to make an emergency call in manual mode by pressing the SOS button.

Notice

- The operation of the system will be impossible if there is no coverage of mobile communication networks and no GPS and GLONASS signal. (In Case of EU : Galileo Added)

Manual Mode



The driver / passenger can make an emergency call in single dispatch service manually by pressing the SOS button to call emergency services.

Call to the emergency service using the eCall system can be canceled by re-pressing the SOS button within 3 second. (EU)

After activating an emergency call in manual mode for timely assistance and support system ERA-GLONASS (eCall) transmits data on a traffic accident / other incident to the operator of the single duty dispatcher service during a call for help by pressing the SOS button.

- Stop your vehicle at a safe place.
- Lower the e-call button cover.
- Press the SOS button. (Minimal data set for the vehicle and its location is registered to the mobile network)
- The call is connected to the operator at the e-call center.
- EU: MSD (Minimum Set of Data) sent before the emergency call is made, not after it does
- EU: For the manual emergency call, you can cancel within 3 seconds after pressing the button.



Test mode

- EU: When you have replaced and checked the e-call system, you can use the scan tool to activate the SOS test mode.

e-call can't be canceled when:

- e-call is made automatically by crash signal from the air bag unit (terminated when an operator at e-call center ends the call)
- 3 seconds is elapsed since manual emergency call made by pressing the SOS button was connected (for EU)
- Operator at e-call center answers the call, for manual emergency call made by pressing the SOS button

Notice

- **The battery of the ERA-GLONASS (eCall) system provides power for one hour in case the main power supply of the vehicle is turned off as a result of a collision in an emergency situation.**



Warning

I can be dangerous to remain in the vehicle, even if you have pressed the SOS button in an emergency if:

- you see smoke inside or outside of the vehicle, e.g. if there is a fire after an accident
- the vehicle is on a dangerous section of road
- the vehicle is not visible or cannot easily be seen by other road users, particularly when dark or in poor visibility conditions

There is a risk of an accident and injury. Leave the vehicle immediately in this or similar situations as soon as it is safe to do so. Move to a safe location along with other vehicle occupants. In such situations, secure the vehicle in accordance with national regulations, e.g. with a warning triangle.



Notice

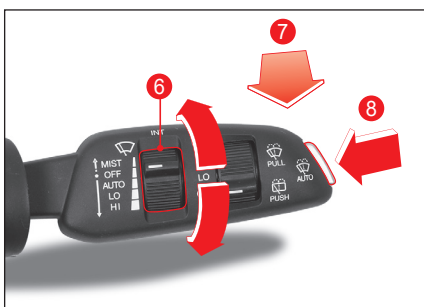
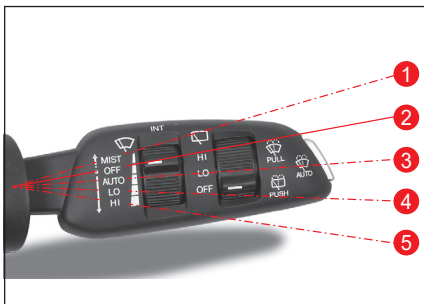
1. Our eCall system provides 112-based eCall service only and conforms to the General Data Protection Regulation specified in EU laws.
2. Processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling the emergency eCall to the single European emergency number 112
3. Type of data and its recipients
 - MSD Data Items
 - 1) Call Type : Auto Call / Manual Call
 - 2) Test Call : Test Call / Emergency Call
 - 3) Position Can Be Trusted : Yes/No
 - 4) Vehicle Type : M1/M2/M3/N1/N2/N3
 - 5) Vehicle identification number
 - 6) Propulsion Storage Type : Gasoline, Diesel
 - 7) RTA event timestamp : Road Traffic Accident event timestamp
 - 8) Vehicle Location : Latitude, Longitude
 - 9) Vehicle Direction : Vehicle orientation at the time of event
 - Call Log Data Items
 - 1) Trigger time : Time of call initiation event (crash detected or button press).
 - 2) DTC : Diagnostic Trouble Code
 - 3) Tigger type : Manual Call / Auto Call / Retry Call
 - 4) RSSI : GSM(2G) or UMTS(3G) signal strength
 - 5) Ec/No : Energy Carrier/ noise power density
 - 6) Call type : GSM(2G) / UMTS(3G) / Reserved
 - 7) Call end status : Reason for call end

4. The 112-based eCall in vehicle system is designed in such a way as to :
 - Ensure that the data contained in the system memory is not available outside the system before an eCall is triggered
 - Ensure that it is not traceable and not subject to any constant tracking in its normal operation status
 - Ensure that data in the system internal memory is automatically and continuously removed
5. The vehicle's owner has a right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or blocking of data, concerning him or her, the processing of which does not comply with the provisions of Directive 95/46/EC.
6. The data subject has a right to complain to the competent data protection authority if he or she considers that his or her rights have been infringed as a result of the processing of his or her personal data.



Wiper and washer fluid

Windshield wiper



1 MIST

The wiper operates while lifting the wiper operation lever up.

When you release the lever, the level returns to the OFF position and stops.

2 OFF

The wiper stops operating.

3 AUTO

The wiper operation speed is adjusted automatically according to the vehicle speed or the amount of rain (rain sensing wiper).

4 LO

The wiper operates in low speed.

5 HI

The wiper operates in high speed.

Adjusting the operation speed of the windshield wiper

When the wiper operation lever is placed in the AUTO position, the operation speed of the wiper is adjusted.

When you lift the wiper operation speed control lever (6) up, the operation speed of the wiper becomes faster and when you pull the lever down, the operation speed of the wiper becomes slower.

Notice

- When you place the wiper operation lever in the AUTO position with the START/STOP switch in the ON status, the wiper operates once.
- When it becomes dark so that the auto light operates, the wiper speed becomes faster.

Front windshield and washer fluid linkage



This function sprays washer fluid automatically when the windshield wiper is operated.

It operates as follows according to the time to pull the wiper operation lever (7).

- Pull the lever for less than 0.6 second
The washer fluid is sprayed and the wiper operates once.
- Pull the lever for 0.6 second or more
The washer fluid is sprayed and the wiper operates for three times.
- Pull the lever continuously
The washer fluid is sprayed and the wiper operates continuously.

3

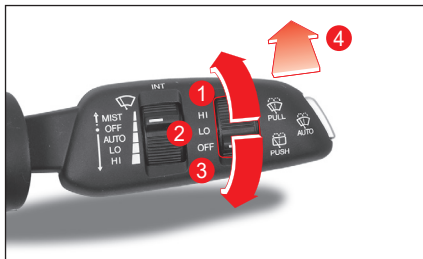
Front auto washer

With the wiper lever placed in the OFF position, press the Front auto washer switch (8).

The washer fluid is sprayed and the wiper operates for four times, and the washer fluid is sprayed again and the wiper operates for three times.



Rear window wiper



1 HI

The rear window wiper operates in high speed.

2 LO

The rear window wiper operates in low speed.

3 OFF

The rear window wiper stops operating.

Rear window wiper washer fluid linkage function



This function sprays washer fluid automatically when the rear window wiper is operated.

The washer fluid is sprayed and the wiper operates while pushing the wiper operation lever (4).

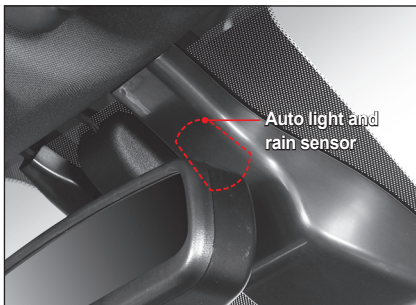
When you release the lever, the level returns to the OFF position and stops.

Rain sensing wiper*

The rain sensing wiper detects the amount of rain and controls whether or not to operate the windshield wiper and its operation speed automatically.

The rain sensing wiper is activated when the wiper operation lever is placed in the AUTO position.

Rain sensor



The rain sensor is integrated with the auto light sensor.

Warning

- When you place the wiper operation lever in the AUTO position with the START/STOP switch in the ON status, do not touch the windshield where the rain sensor is located or wipe it with damp cloth. Doing so may activate the rain sensing wiper, causing injury to your hand or other body parts.

Caution

- If the windshield is dry, do not only operate the wiper. Doing so may damage the windshield or the wiper blade. Be sure to activate the wiper after spraying the washer fluid.
- Before washing your vehicle, be sure to place the wiper operation lever in the OFF position. Failure to do so may activate the wiper by accident, causing body injury or damage to the vehicle.
- If it is not raining, place the wiper operation lever in the OFF position. It prevents the devices such as the rain sensor from operating unnecessarily.
- Activate the wiper in winter after verifying that the wiper blade is not frozen. Failure to do so may damage the windshield or the wiper blade.



Mirror

Outside rearview mirror

Folding/unfolding the outside rearview mirror



- When you press the left side of the button (), the outside rearview mirror is unfolded.
- When you press the right side of the button (), the outside rearview mirror is folded.

Auto folding/unfolding function

The following is the function to fold or unfold the outside rearview mirror automatically.

- When the door Lock/Unlock button on the smart key is pressed
- When the door handle Lock/Unlock button is pressed
- When the smart auto door lock function is activated
- When the auto approach function is activated

Activating/deactivating auto folding/unfolding function

- Activating the function
Place the Outside rearview mirror folding/unfolding button in the neutral () position.
- Deactivating the function
Press the left side () or right side () of the outside rearview mirror.



Caution

- The outside rearview mirror auto folding/unfolding function is activated only when the vehicle has entered the theft monitoring mode.

Adjusting the outside rearview mirror



3

- ① Outside rearview mirror selection dial (L R)
- ② Outside rearview mirror control switch ()

Selecting the outside rearview mirror

Turn the selection dial (①) to the left or the right and select a mirror you wish to adjust.

- Turning to the left: The outside rearview mirror on the driver seat side is selected.
- Turning to the right: The outside rearview mirror on the front passenger seat side is selected.



Adjusting the angle of the outside rearview mirror

Adjust the angle of the mirror according to the driver's view by moving the Control button (2) up, down, left, or right.

Warning

- Do not tint the driver seat and the front passenger seat windows. Doing so may make the outside rearview mirror less visible while driving at night, causing an accident.

Caution

- The outside rearview mirror can be folded or unfolded for a certain period of time after the vehicle is turned off.
- Do not operate the mirror excessively after the vehicle is turned off. Doing so may cause depletion of the battery.
- Do not operate the mirror more than needed. When the mirror reaches its maximum adjustment angle, its movement stops, but the motor operates continuously while the switch is being pressed, causing the motor to malfunction.

- Do not operate the outside rearview mirror using hands instead of the motor switch. Doing so may cause the mirror and relevant devices to malfunction.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly onto the mirror while washing the vehicle. The outside rearview mirror operates electrically, so it may not operate normally due to an electrical device failure.
- If the mirror is frozen and does not move during winter, do not adjust it forcibly. Adjust the mirror carefully after removing ice by using deicing spray or soaking a soft cloth or sponge in warm water and wiping the frozen part with it.
- Do not scrape ice off even if the surface of the mirror is frozen during winter. Doing so may damage the surface of the mirror.

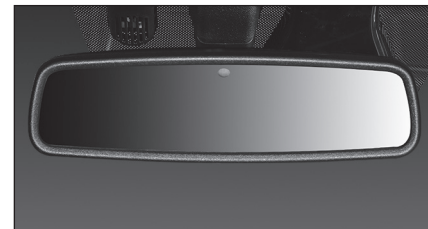
Interior mirror

The inside rearview mirror can be adjusted up, down or side ways to obtain the best rear view.

ECM room mirror*

The ECM (Electronic Chromic Mirror) room mirror detects a light from a following vehicle automatically through the light sensor and lowers the reflection rate of the mirror to prevent glare for the driver.

- To adjust the angle of the interior mirror, hold and move the body of the mirror with your hand up, down, left and right to obtain the best rear view.





Warning

- Be sure to finish adjusting the mirror before driving.
- Never adjust the mirror while driving. Doing so may distract the driver, causing an accident.
- If the interior mirror is broken, the electrolyte inside the mirror may flow out. Be careful not to allow this electrolyte come into contact with your skin or eyes. If the electrolyte comes into contact with your eyes, wash it with water immediately and consult a doctor.

Caution

In any of the following cases, the automatic anti-glare function of the ECM room mirror may not operate.

- If the head light of a following vehicle is not beamed directly to the light detection sensor
 - When the rear window is tinted darker
 - If the SBW (shift by wire) is in the R (Reverse) position
- At this time, the automatic anti-glare function is suspended to enable easy identification of an object.

Manual type inside rearview mirror



The inside rearview mirror can be adjusted up, down or side ways to obtain the best view by holding the body of the mirror with your hand.

Manual Day/Night Adjustment (A)

You can manually adjust the rearview mirror by pushing or pulling its adjusting lever to avoid blindness at night due to other vehicles behind you.

Warning

- For your safety, adjust the mirror before driving off the vehicle.

Caution

- When you are not able to see the back of your vehicle at night, adjust the rearview mirror by holding the mirror body and pushing or pulling it to a desired angle so that you can secure a clear rear view.

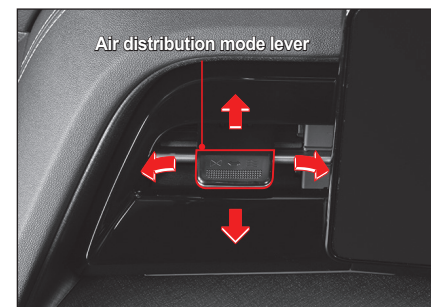


Heater and air conditioner



- | | |
|---|---|
| ① Heater and A/C controls
(Hypervisor control panel) | ⑥ Front foot air outlet |
| ② Vents (front seat center) | ⑦ Rear foot air outlet (Bottom of front seat) |
| ③ Vents (both front seat sides) | ⑧ Rear air outlet |
| ④ Solar radiation sensor | ⑨ Center defroster vents |
| ⑤ Windshield fog detection sensor | ⑩ Side defroster vents |
| | ⑪ Interior temperature sensor |

Adjusting the direction of air distribution and blocking the air distribution



- Adjust air distribution
You can adjust the direction of air distribution by moving the air distribution mode lever up, down, left and right.
- Open and close air vents
If you push the air distribution mode lever all the way to the closing (☒) direction, the air vent closes and the air does not come out. If you put it in the opening (≡) direction, air comes out.

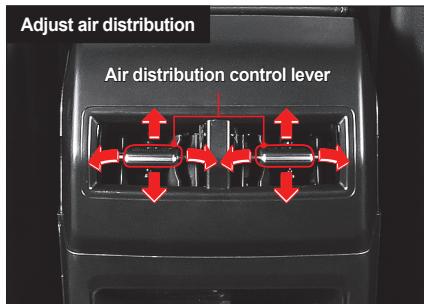


Caution

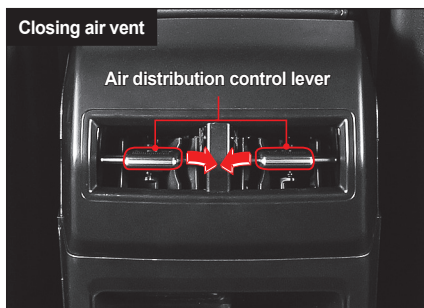
- Do not attach a cup holder or other devices to the air guide pin of the air outlet. Doing so may damage the air guide pin or other relevant devices.



Rear air distribution and fan speed control



- You can adjust air distribution by moving the air distribution control lever at the vent up and down and left and right.



- You can close the air vent by pushing the air distribution control lever all the way in the direction of the arrow.

Cautions for using the heater and air conditioner

Replacing A/C refrigerant/oil

Be sure to replace the A/C refrigerant and oil with the products that meet the specified standard and capacity. Failure to do so may damage the air conditioner system.

Type A

Classification	Specifications	
	H/P	Non H/P
Specification	R-1234yf	
Refrigerant capacity	800 ± 30g	600 ± 30g
Oil capacity	180 ± 10g	

Type B

Classification	Specifications	
	H/P	Non H/P
Specification	R-134a	
Refrigerant capacity	900 ± 30g	650 ± 30g
Oil capacity	180 ± 10g	



Warning

- While driving, select the fresh air mode if possible or open the window and ventilate frequently to allow fresh air to flow in. Failure to do so may make the air inside the vehicle to be stuffy, causing headache or dizziness.
- Caution should be taken that if exhaust gas flows in, it may cause carbon monoxide poisoning.
- When you drive in an area where dust and smoke may flow in, pass the area using the recirculation mode and switch it to fresh air mode for ventilation.
- Do not sleep or stay inside the vehicle for a long period of time while operating the air conditioner or the heater with the doors and the windows closed during midsummer or midwinter. Doing so may cause suffocation due to lack of oxygen inside the vehicle.
- Never leave an infant, a small child or an elderly alone in the vehicle even for a short period of time during midsummer. The temperature inside the vehicle may increase, causing risks such as suffocation.
- Refrigerant is flammable which can cause the fire by the gas leakage or static, so be very careful when handling Refrigerant (R-1234yf).



! Caution

- Before driving the vehicle, open all windows to ventilate the air inside the vehicle properly for the health of occupants and a pleasant indoor environment. Especially, if the vehicle has been parked on a place exposed to direct sunlight for a long period of time, the temperature inside the vehicle may have increased, causing volatile organic compounds that are harmful to human body to be emitted.
- Do not start the engine while electrical devices with high electrical load such as the air conditioner and fan are running. In such case, it may be difficult to start the vehicle.
- When you drive up on a long sloping road continuously, turn on and off the air conditioner every 3 to 5 minutes.
- Do not mix POE-based refrigeration oil for E-compressor with PAG-based refrigeration oil. Doing so will cause corrosion of the metal material inside the E-compressor.

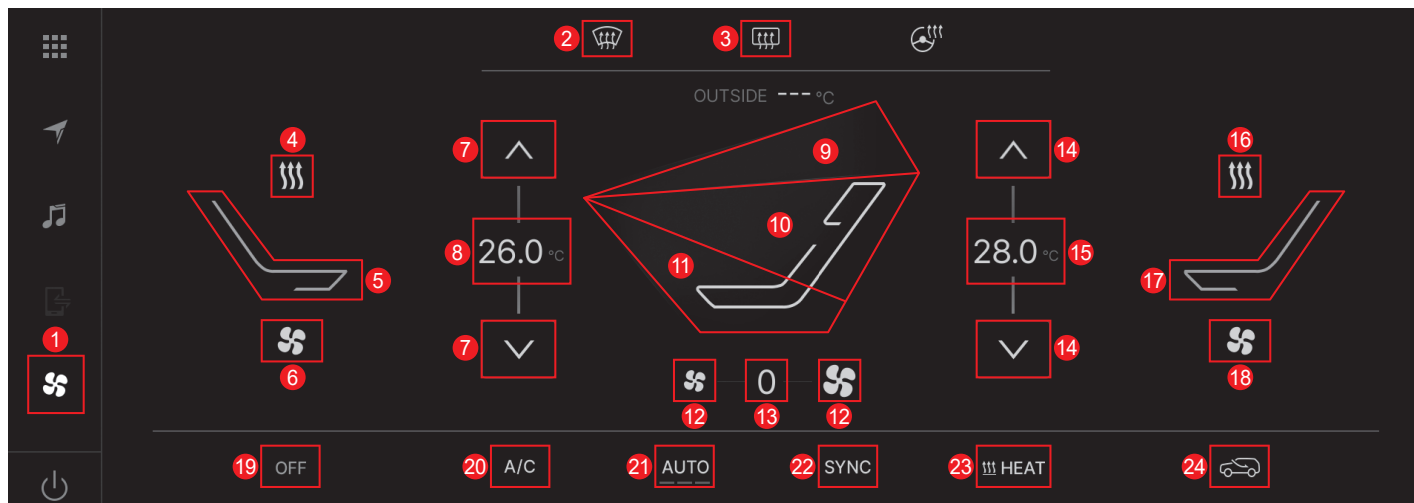
! Caution

- Be sure to operate the air conditioner at a low speed if you use the air conditioner again after it is not used for a while. If the air conditioner is not used for a long period of time, the oil in the compressor is not circulated, causing a failure.
- When you use the air conditioner after it is not used for a long period of time, there may be a smell from the air outlet. In such case, open the window and operate the air conditioner for 20 to 30 minutes to eliminate the smell.
- Do not turn off the vehicle suddenly while operating the air conditioner. The fan motor stops suddenly and cold or warm air in the duct is condensed in the pipe without being emitted to the outside, creating a bad smell. Before turning off the vehicle, turn off the air conditioner and emit air in the duct for 2 to 3 minutes in the fresh air mode.
- Do not operate the air conditioner for a long period of time while stopping the vehicle. Doing so may overheat the engine, causing a failure.
- If the motor vehicle is not running, do not operate the fan for a long period of time. Doing so may cause depletion of the battery.

! Caution

- Operate the air conditioner once a week in seasons other than winter to circulate the oil in the air conditioner compressor and relevant parts smoothly. This helps you to maintain the air conditioner in its best condition.

Heater & A/C Controls



- 1 Heater and A/C controls
- 2 Defroster switch
- 3 Glass heater switch
- 4 Driver seat heating switch
- 5 Driver seat heating / ventilation ON indicator
- 6 Driver ventilation switch
- 7 Driver side temperature control switch
- 8 Driver side temperature display
- 9 Air distribution mode switch (DEF mode)

- 10 Air distribution mode switch (VENT mode)
- 11 Air distribution mode switch (FOOT mode)
- 12 Air volume control switch
- 13 Fan speed display
- 14 Passenger's temperature control switch
- 15 Passenger side temperature display
- 16 Passenger seat heating switch
- 17 Passenger seat heating / ventilation ON indicator

- 18 Passenger seat ventilation switch
- 19 Recirculation switch
- 20 Heater and A/C ON/OFF switch
- 21 AUTO mode switch
- 22 A/C switch
- 23 SYNC switch (to sync with driver side set temperature)
- 24 Recirculation switch



Turning Heater & A/C ON/OFF

Lightly touch the OFF switch (1) to turn the heater and air conditioner.

- Heater & A/C OFF: Orange symbol shown
- Heater & A/C ON: White symbol shown



Notice

- The heater and air conditioner will operate as previous operation condition when they are turned on.
- When the heater and air conditioner are off, touch the relevant operation switch to turn them on.

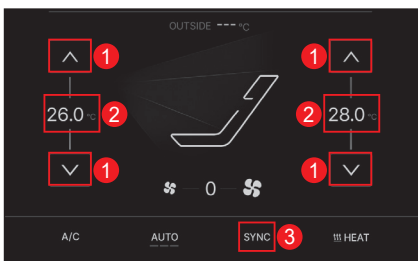
Notice

- If the vehicle is stored or parked for a long period, operate the air conditioning system for at least 15 minutes once a month.
- Running the air conditioner helps lubricate its components and maintain the overall performance of the climate control system.

Driver/Passenger Side Temperature Control

To adjust the temperature, lightly touch the driver/passenger side temperature control switch (1).

- The set temperature is indicated in the center of the temperature control switch (2).
- When the driver's seat set temperature synchronization (SYNC) indicator (3) is lit (Orange symbol shown), the driver's seat and the passenger seat's set temperature are changed equally.
- When the temperature control switch is operated, the increment values are:
 - 0.5°C on touch.



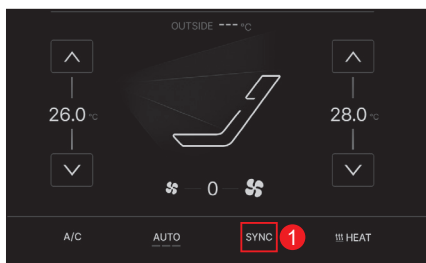
Notice

- Touching the AUTO switch in manual mode changes the climate control system to AUTO mode and the climate functions are controlled automatically based on the set temperature.

Independent Temperature Control (SYNC Off)

To independently adjust the set temperature for the driver's seat and front passenger's seat, operate as follows.

- Turn off the synchronization indicator (1) (White symbol shown) by lightly touching the driver's seat temperature synchronization (SYNC) switch and the front passenger temperature control switch.
 - Synchronization indicator (SYNC) on: White symbol shown
 - Synchronization indicator (SYNC) off: Gray symbol shown

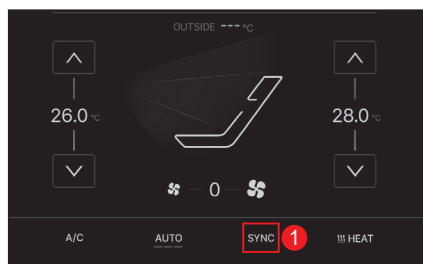


Synchronization Temperature Control (SYNC On)

Lightly touch the driver's seat set temperature synchronization (SYNC) switch to turn on the synchronization light (Orange symbol shown) (1). Then the set temperature of the passenger seat will follow the one of the driver's seat.

Notice

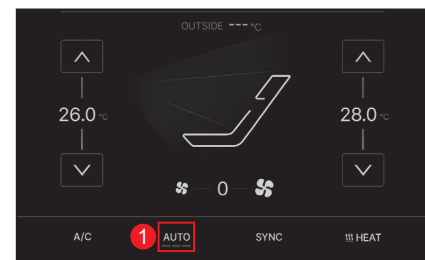
- Depending on the driver's seat set temperature, the air conditioner ON/OFF, air distribution, and air source mode are automatically set to:
 - Low temperature setting (LO): A/C ON, FACE mode, recirculation mode
 - High temperature setting (HI): A/C OFF, FOOT mode, fresh air mode



AUTO Mode

To enter AUTO mode, operate as follows with the engine started.

- Briefly touch the AUTO switch (1).
 - AUTO mode on: Orange symbol shown
 - AUTO mode off: White symbol shown
- Set the desired temperature by lightly touching the temperature control switch.

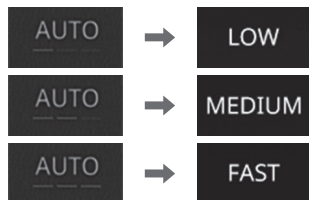


3



Notice

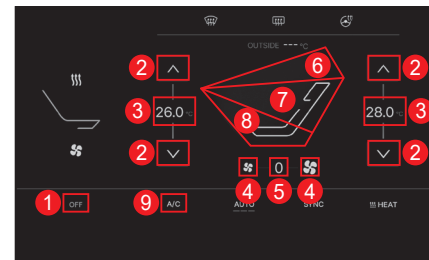
- In AUTO mode, the fan speed, air distribution and etc. are automatically adjusted according to the set temperature, room temperature, and outside temperature.
- Pressing the air source selection switch, fan speed switch, air distribution mode switch, A/C switch, or defroster switch in auto mode deactivates the auto mode and the system enters the manual mode.
- AUTO mode can be set in 3 steps.
- How to set AUTO mode
 - When you touch the switch briefly:
The setting is changed in order of **FAST → MEDIUM → LOW → FAST**.
 - When you touch and hold the switch:
A settings screen is displayed where you can select one of 3 levels (**FAST / MEDIUM / LOW**).
- The setting status is indicated by the bar(s) under the AUTO switch.



Manual Mode

Operate as follows with the engine started.

- Touch the ON/OFF switch (1).
- Set the room temperature by lightly touching the temperature control switch (2).
 - The currently set temperature is displayed (3).
- Lightly touch the fan speed switch - (decrease fan speed) / + (increase fan speed) (4) to set the fan speed one step at a time.
 - The current fan speed is displayed (5).
- Lightly touch the air distribution mode switch to select the desired air distribution mode. ((You can select more than one air distribution mode.))
 - DEF mode (6) switch
 - VENT mode (7) switch
 - FOOT mode (8) switch
- Press the air source selection switch to switch between the fresh air and recirculation modes.
 - Recirculation mode:
 - Fresh air mode:
- To use the air conditioner, lightly touch the air conditioner switch (9).

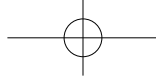


Warning

- Avoid using the recirculation mode for longer than necessary. Prolonged use of recirculation mode can cause headaches and drowsiness due to lack of oxygen in the cabin. It can also cause windows to fog up, making it impossible to see your surroundings, which can lead to accidents.
- Be careful not to allow exhaust gas to enter the cabin area. There is a risk of carbon monoxide poisoning.
- Switch to recirculation mode when driving through areas where dust, soot, etc. are likely to enter the cabin. Then switch to fresh air mode for ventilation.

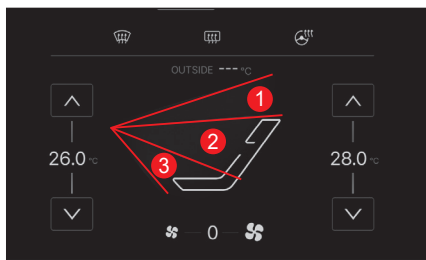
Notice

- Touching the AUTO switch lightly in manual mode changes the climate control system to AUTO mode and the climate functions are controlled automatically based on the set temperature.



Air Distribution

Lightly touch the air distribution mode switch to select the desired air distribution mode. (You can select more than one air distribution mode and selected mode is indicated by a white symbol.)



- DEF mode (1)
Blowing air in the direction of the windshield and door glasses (typical settings for defrosting and defogging)
- VENT mode (2)
Air directed toward face (typical settings for cooling)
- FOOT mode (3)
Blowing air in the direction of driver's and/or passenger's feet (typical settings for heating)

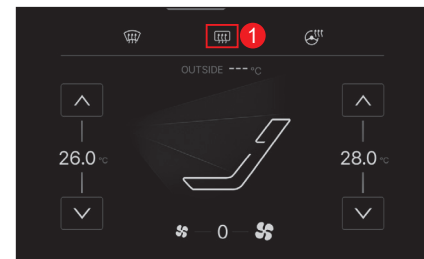
Notice

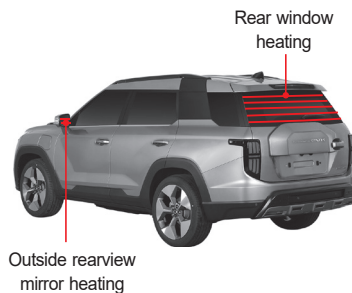
- When the air distribution is set to FOOT mode, some air is blown in the direction of the windshield and door glasses to prevent moisture buildup on the windshield.

Activating glass heater

- When frost or fogging occurs in the window, the glass heater can be activated to remove it.
- To activate the glass heater, lightly touch the glass heater switch (1). (The glass heater operates for about 12 minutes and the symbol changes to orange.)
- To deactivate the glass heater, lightly touch the glass heater switch (1) again. (The glass heater stops working and the symbol changes to white.)

3



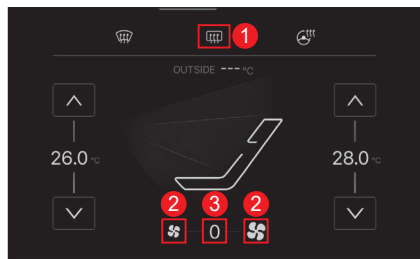


Notice

- The glass heater only works when the engine is on.
- When the glass heater is activated, the rear window heater and the outside rearview mirror heater are operated simultaneously.
- If the glass heater is operated again within 10 minutes after completing operation for 12 minutes, it will only operate for approximately 6 minutes.

How to Dehumidify Window Glass

- Lightly touch the defroster and defogger switch (1).
(The symbol changes to orange.)
- Lightly touch the fan speed switch - (decrease fan speed) / + (increase fan speed) (2).
(The current fan speed is displayed (3).)
 - To quickly remove moisture from the windows, set the fan to high speed.
 - To defrost the outdoor side window, set the temperature to high.



Warning

- If it is raining or humid, switch the air source selection switch to the fresh air mode and set the air distribution to the windshield. With rainy or highly humid condition, fog may appear on the windows as well as the windshield even the A/C is ON. If this happens, it is dangerous to drive because of poor frontal and side visibilities.



Cautions

- Avoid excessive use of A/C with the defroster and defogger turned on and the air distribution set to footwell or to footwell and the windshield. Otherwise, a temperature difference between indoor and outdoor may cause the fogging on the outside of the windshield. If this is the case, use the wiper blades to immediately clear fog on the windshield and change the air distribution mode to vent mode (toward face) to minimize the temperature difference.
- Make sure to remove any foreign materials such as snow and leaves on the air inlets to avoid window fogging, especially in winter and summer.



Notice

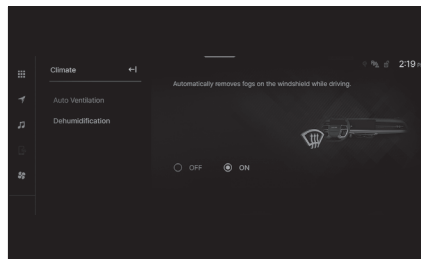
- Touching the defroster and defogger switch (1) activates the air conditioner automatically and sets it to fresh air mode and fan speed of 6th level. Touching the switch again returns the system to previous condition.
- To prevent the windshield from fogging up normally, it is recommended to set the air source selection switch (3) to the fresh air mode.

Auto Defogger System (ADS)

ADS (Auto Defogger System) is an auxiliary device that enables safe driving by automatically removing fog when fog is detected on the indoor windshield while the heater and A/C are in operation.

Enabling/disabling AUTO defogger

- From the main menu of the hypervisor control panel, select Vehicle Settings (P) → Climate → Dehumidification → ON or OFF.



Steps to activate AUTO defogger

The higher the humidity, the higher the AUTO defogger operation level. For example, if operation level 1 does not help operation level is switched from level 2 to level 4 in sequence until the humidity is controlled properly.

- Step 1 - Switch to fresh air mode
- Step 2 - Turn A/C on
- Step 3 - Distribute air toward windshield
- Step 4 - Increase airflow toward windshield



Warning

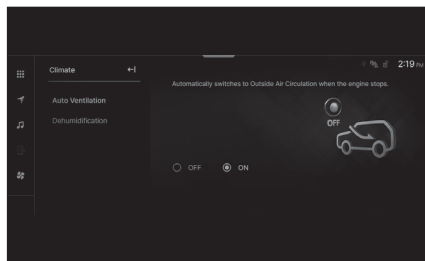
- Do not switch to recirculation mode when the AUTO defogger is operating. The effectiveness of moisture removal is reduced, making it harder to see safely, which can lead to accidents.
- Do not forcefully remove the sensor cover on the upper side of the windshield. The AUTO fog detection sensor can be damaged while removing the cover.

3



Automatic Ventilation Control

This function automatically switches to fresh air mode when the engine is turned off to ventilate the vehicle interior for automatic cabin air circulation.



Wash fluid interlock automatic internal circulation mode

This feature prevents the external washer fluid odor from entering the vehicle by automatically switching to circulation mode for a certain period of time when washer fluid function is operated.

- Vehicle status during operation
 - Air source selection: fresh air mode
 - Operating time: 40 sec
 - It does not work in ambient temperatures less than -10°C.

Eco Mode

This is a function that maintains the air source selection mode to recirculation mode for 20 minutes when the vehicle is started, in order to quickly lower the vehicle's cabin temperature during hot weather.

Conditions for activation

- Air source selection: fresh air mode
- Ambient temperature: 24°C or higher
- A/C status: ON



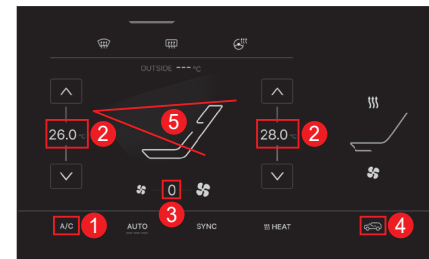
Caution

- The vehicle enters eco mode only once upon starting, with the above operating conditions met.
- When the A/C is changed to the fresh air mode with the eco mode activated, the eco mode is deactivated.
- After 20 minutes of eco mode (recirculation mode) operation, the air source selection changes to the state before eco mode is activated.

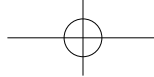
Maximum A/C operation

If you touch and hold the air conditioner switch (1) while the heater and air conditioner are running, the air conditioner MAX will operate as follows.

- Operating temperature: 18°C (2)
- Airflow: 8-speed (3)
- Recirculation (4)
- Air distribution: VENT (5)



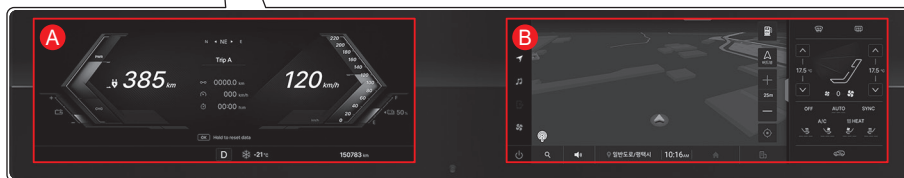
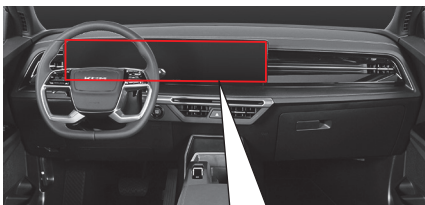
Touch the air conditioner switch (1) briefly to turn off the air conditioner MAX.



Hypervisor (HVC)

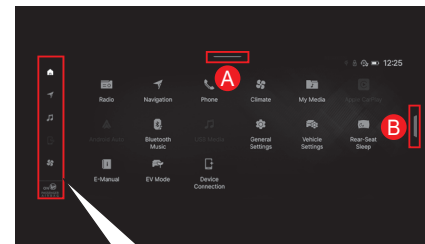
Hypervisor panel

- The hypervisor control panel is a panoramic display that combines a 12.3" instrument cluster with a 12.3" navigation.
- The navigation screen allows you to operate navigation and media, vehicle settings, heater and air conditioner, buttonless, and more.



- A** 12.3" instrument cluster
- B** 12.3" navigation (including control panel)

Names of parts of hypervisor control panel

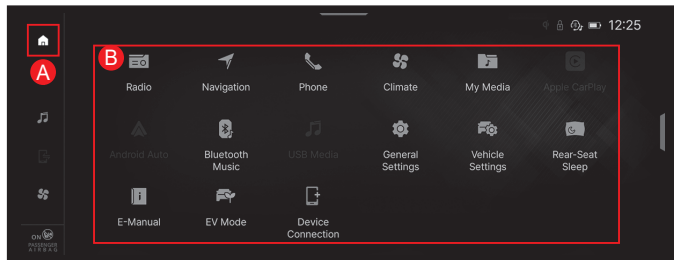


3

- Main menu control switch
 - Navigation operation switch
 - Media operation switch
 - Heater and A/C control switch
 - Passenger air bag ON/OFF indicator.
- A** Upper scroll
- B** Heater and A/C control pop-up scroll



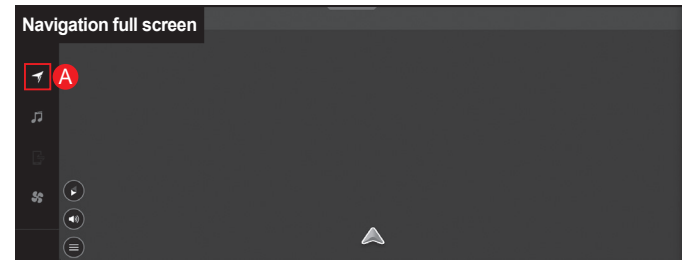
Main Menu Controls



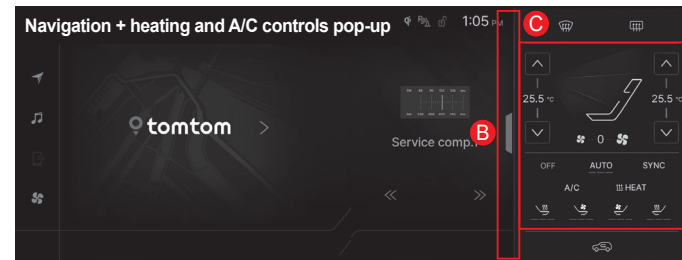
Lightly touch the Main Menu Controls switch (A) to display the switches (B) that allow you to set up your vehicle, which are detailed below.

- Radio
- Bluetooth music
- USB Media
- My Media
- Phone
- Navigation
- Rear-seat sleep
- E-Manual
- Climate
- General settings
- Vehicle settings
- Apple CarPlay
- Android Auto
- EV Mode

Navigation

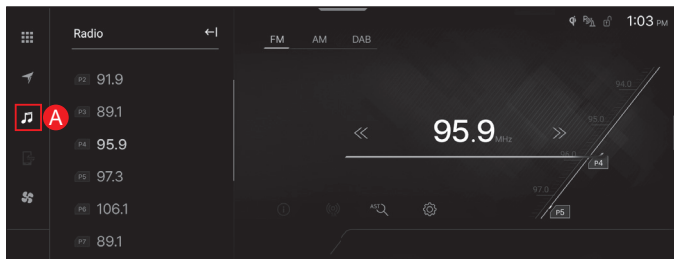


Lightly touch the navigation operation switch (A) to activate navigation.



Touching the heater and air conditioner controls pop-up scroll (B) during navigation displays the heater and air conditioner controls panel (C).

Media

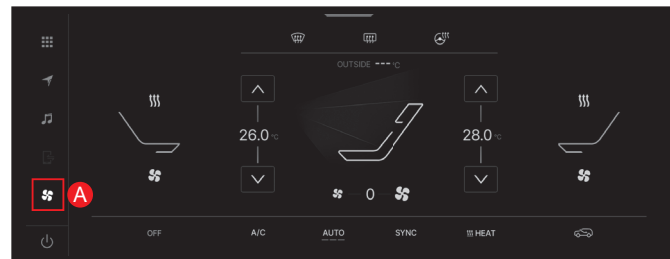


Lightly touch the media operation switch (A) to operate items related to the media.

The items are as follows:

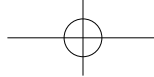
- Radio
- USB Media
- USB Video
- USB Photo
- Bluetooth Music
- My Media
- My Video
- My Photo
- Phone

Heater and A/C control

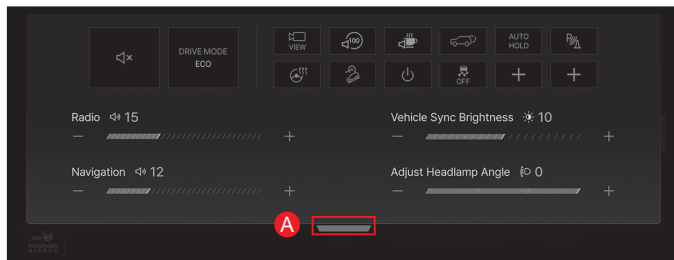


You can operate the heater and air conditioner by lightly touching the heater and air conditioner control switch (A) and then touching "Climate" (B).

3



Top scroll panel (buttonless quick panel)



Touch the upper scroll actuation switch (A) and gently pull it down to reveal the buttonless quick panel.

- Mute
- Drive mode switch
- Around view switch
- Tailgate open/closing switch
- AUTO HOLD switch
- Front obstacle detection ON/OFF switch
- Battery Pre-conditioning Switch
- HDC switch
- ESC OFF switch
- Steering wheel heating switch

Notice

- To add a quick menu, touch and hold the corresponding button (+) to set it up.

3-106 Convenient Equipment



Hypervisor (HVC) convenience features

Utility Mode

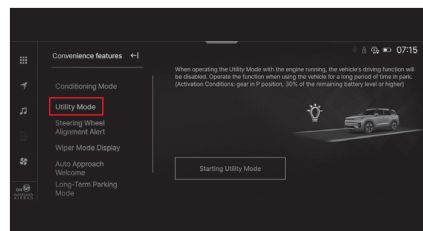
Utility Mode is a function that allows user to use the vehicle's air conditioning system and electrical equipment (such as seat heating) in addition to EV ON and charging the vehicle.

Notice

- Utility mode only operates in EV ON state.

To set Utility mode

- 1 In EV ON state, set utility mode as follows on the hypervisor control panel.



- From the main menu of the hypervisor control panel, select **Vehicle settings** (⚙️) → **Convenience features** → **Utility Mode** → **ON or OFF**
- 2 When utility mode operates,
 - Vehicle READY indicator turned on white
 - START/STOP switch ON position
 - 3 The following items can be operates in EV ON state.
 - Air conditioning system (heater and /AC)
 - Seat heating and ventilation
 - Fuctions related AVN
 - Other 12V powered systems

Notice

- Operate utility mode when using the vehicle's functionality for an extended period of time while parked.
- When running utility mode, driving function is deactivated.



Cautions

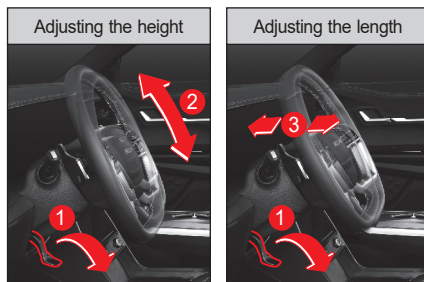
- Turn off the EV to deactivate utility mode.

3



Steering wheel

Adjusting the height/length of the steering wheel



- 1 Push down the steering wheel telescoping/tilt control lever (1).
- 2 Adjust the position of the steering wheel upwards and downwards (2) and forwards and backwards (3) properly.
- 3 Lift the steering wheel telescoping/tilt control lever (1) up.

After adjusting the steering wheel, check that the steering wheel is secured firmly.

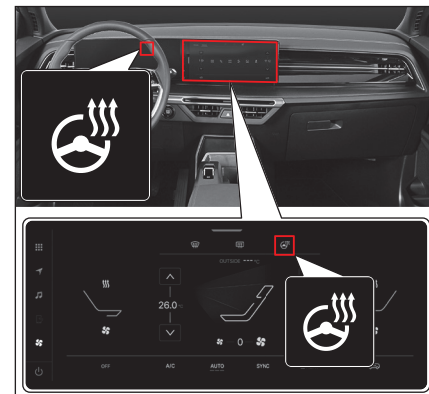
Warning

- Check that the steering wheel is secured firmly before driving.
- Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving. Doing so may cause a serious accident.

Caution

- Do not turn the steering wheel left or right to the end and maintain such position for 10 seconds or more with the vehicle started. Doing so may damage the power steering system due to overload.

Steering wheel heater*



- To activate the steering wheel heater, touch the steering wheel heater switch while the engine is running.
The operation indicator on the instrument cluster turns on.
- To deactivate the Steering wheel heater, touch the Steering wheel heater switch again.
The operation indicator on the instrument cluster turns off.



Caution

- Do not attach an assist knob to the steering wheel. Doing so may damage the heater in the steering wheel and impede safe steering.

Notice

- The status of the Steering wheel heater switch is maintained even if the vehicle is turned off and on again.

Horn

Warning horn is sounded while the horn is being pressed.



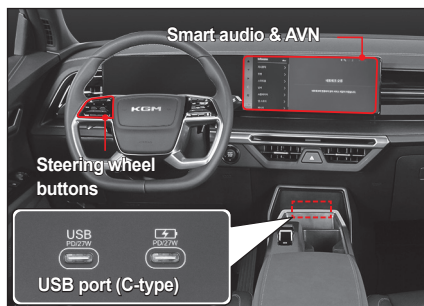
Caution

- Using the horn may startle pedestrians. Use it carefully only when it is necessary.



Infotainment system

Smart audio*



! Caution

- The Android auto and Car Play in the vehicle may not be supported or some functions may not be supported according to the specification or characteristics of the relevant device.
- The connection of the relevant devices to the vehicle may not be supported or some functions may not be compatible according to the specification or characteristics of the relevant video player, MP3 player.
- The method of use may be different or the connection to the vehicle may not be supported according to the specification or characteristics of the relevant Bluetooth device.

! Caution

- Some USB storage devices and SD cards may not be compatible with the relevant device in the vehicle. Using a non-compatible memory card may damage the relevant device in the vehicle, memory card or data saved in the memory card.

Notice

- For detailed explanation regarding the infotainment system in the vehicle including smart audio, AV/Navigation and slots for multimedia, refer to the owner's manual provided separately.
- If you wish to connect an external device to the infotainment system in the vehicle including smart audio, AV/Navigation and slots for multimedia, refer to the owner's manual of the relevant device for how to connect and use such device.

! Warning

- The rear camera screen does not work during software update. Always stop the vehicle to update the software and do not drive the vehicle until the update is completed.
- Be careful when reversing since the rear obstacle may be hidden by the warning messages and parking guide lines if the rear camera system is activated.
- The smart audio has an 12.3-inch touchscreen and four buttons, and can be operated with the buttons on the steering wheel.
- The USB port allows you to connect external devices to the multimedia socket.
- Including Bluetooth and rear view camera, the following apps are supported: Android Auto (for Android device) and CarPlay (for iOS device). (iOS devices can be charged through the USB port.)
- The operation information of the smart audio is displayed on the instrument cluster.



Caution

- During driving, video is not supported and only audio is supported for safety. When the vehicle stops, video is supported again.
- Do not use the audio system for a long period of time with the vehicle not started. Doing so may cause depletion of the battery in the vehicle.

AV/Navigation*

- The AV / navigation can be operated with the 12.3-inch electrostatic touch panel and the buttons on the steering wheel (voice recognition supported).
- The USB port (iPod, iPhone, iPad) allows you to connect external devices to the multimedia socket.
- It shows the control status according to the operation of the heater and the air conditioner to improve the visual comfort of the driver.
 - The heater and the air conditioner can not be controlled by screen touch.
- Supported features include: Bluetooth, micro SD card (navigation), rear view camera as well as Android Auto (for Android device) and CarPlay (for iOS device). (iOS devices can be charged through the USB port.)
- Some operation information of AV / navigation is displayed on the instrument cluster.



Warning

- Be sure to use the navigation and video-related functions after stopping or parking the vehicle at a safe place for safe driving.



Caution

- Do not use the AV/navigation system for a long period of time with the vehicle not started. Doing so may cause depletion of the battery in the vehicle.

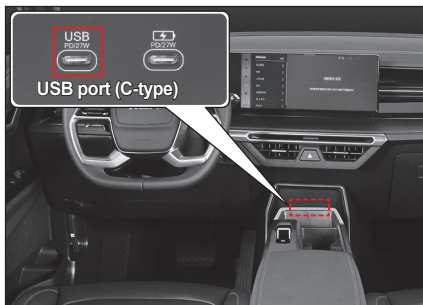


Warning

- The rear camera screen does not work during software update. Always stop the vehicle to update the software and do not drive the vehicle until the update is completed.
- Be careful when reversing since the rear obstacle may be hidden by the warning messages and parking guide lines if the rear camera system is activated.



Slots for multimedia



With the USB port, you can connect the external music / video playback devices such as USB storage and iPod to the vehicle.

! Caution

- Some USB storage and external music / video playback devices may not be played through the USB port.

Operating from the steering wheel



- 1 Bluetooth hands-free button
- 2 Voice recognition button
- 3 Mute button / Volume control lever
- 4 Media search (SEEK) lever
- 5 Mode selection button
- 6 LDW/LKA SET button

Bluetooth hands-free

You can connect and use your mobile phone in the vehicle through Bluetooth.

Notice

- For detailed explanation regarding the Bluetooth hands-free, refer to the owner's manual provided separately.

Voice recognition function

This convenient function allows you to use various functions of the infotainment system through voice recognition.

In Apple CarPlay mode

- operates Siri

In Android Auto mode

- operates Google Voice

Notice

- When you connect a USB cable to your phone, you can use voice recognition through Android Auto or Apple CarPlay.



MUTE Mute

- Tapping the Mute button with the audio system turned on turns off the voice output. Tapping it again turns on the voice output.
- Pressing and holding down the Mute button with the audio system turned on turns off the audio system.

± Controlling the volume

Raises or lowers the volume.

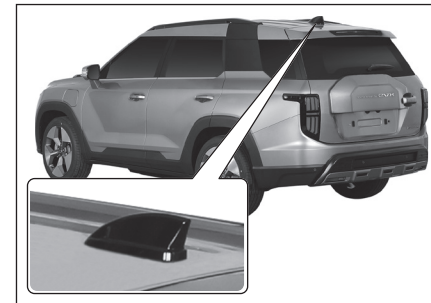
◇ Searching for media (SEEK)

Classification	Tap up/down the SEEK lever	Push up/down and hold the SEEK lever
When playing on the media screen	Plays the previous/next track	Moves to the previous/next list of tracks (The current playback is maintained)
When playing on a screen other than the media screen	Plays the next/previous track	Moves to the next/previous list of tracks (The current playback is maintained)
When listening in the radio screen	Moves to the previous/next saved channel	Moves to the next/previous available radio frequency
When listening in screens other than the radio screen	Moves to the next/previous saved channel	

MODE Selecting the mode

- The AV mode changes each time you press the Mode button.
- Tapping the Mode button with the AV system turned off, turns on the AV system.

Antenna



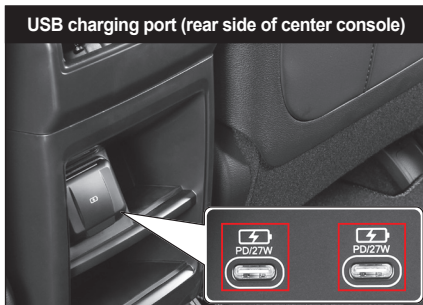
3

When the audio system is turned on, the antenna receives the following radio waves.

- Smart audio: GPS, radio, DAB (EU, GCC), GSM (e-call)
- AV/Navigation: GPS, radio, DAB, GSM (e-call)



USB charging port



- You can use the USB C-type charging port to charge devices such as smart phones and tablets.
- Connect the charging cable for the device you want to charge to the USB Type-C charge port (27W) located on the lower front of the center console, with the vehicle started.
- Connect the charging cable for the device you want to charge to the USB Type-C charge port (27W) on the rear of the center console, with the vehicle started.
- See the display screen of the device you're charging for whether charging is complete and for charging progress.



Caution

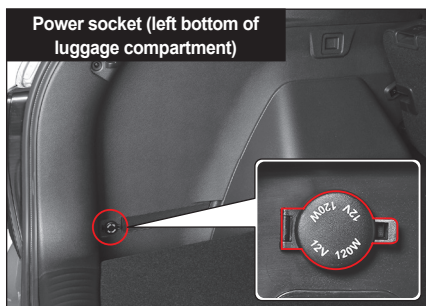
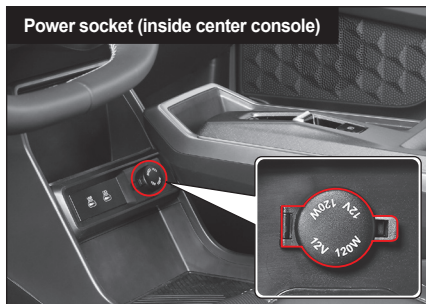
- Connect a device you wish to charge to the USB charging port after starting the engine and separate the device before turning off the engine. Failure to do so may damage the device being charged by sudden voltage variation when starting or turning off the engine.
- Caution should be taken that using the USB charging port with the engine turned off may cause depletion of the battery.
- Do not charge a device whose current consumption exceeds 3.6 A with the USB charging port. Doing so may disable charging, making the charging time longer or damage the USB charging port and the connected device.
- Caution should be taken that connecting the USB charging cable incorrectly may damage the fuses in the vehicle or the connected device due to a short circuit.
- Caution should be taken that if a foreign material or liquid such as water enters into the USB charging port, the charging port and the device may get damaged.

Notice

- The charging speed of the USB charging port may vary depending on the type of and compatibility with the connected device, charging cable and other vehicle conditions.



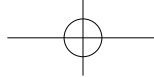
Power socket



The power socket (12 V, 120 W) is provided in the vehicle to enable the use of a separate electrical device.

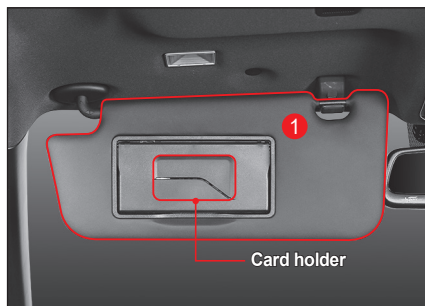
Warning

- Caution should be taken that inserting a finger into the power socket may cause injury such as an electric shock.
- Be sure to use a separate electrical device after connecting it to the power socket. Modifying the wires in the vehicle arbitrarily and using an electrical device may cause an accident such as a fire.
- Observe the rated capacity of the power socket (12 V, 120 W). Failure to do so may cause the power socket and the connected device to malfunction or fail.
- Caution should be taken that using the power socket with the engine turned off may cause depletion of the battery.
- If the power socket is not used, be sure to close the power socket cover. Failure to do so may let foreign material or liquid such as water enter into the power socket, causing damage to the device as well as an electric shock.



Indoor convenient equipment

Sun visor and card holder (driver seat)



Sun visor

You can block out the sun from the front or the sides by lowering the sun visor (1).

- You can adjust the position of the sun visor (2) for blocking out the sun from the sides.

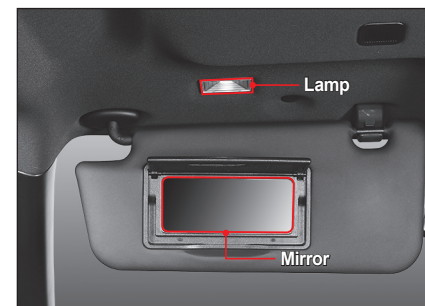
Card holder

The card holder is provided in the inside cover of the sun visor. It is convenient to store a motorway toll ticket or a card.

! Caution

- Adjusting the sun visor or using the card holder or mirror while driving may lead to careless driving or block the driver's vision, resulting in an accident.
- Adjust or use the sun visor and card holder after stopping or parking the vehicle.

Mirror and lamp



- You can use the mirror by lowering the sun visor and lifting up the cover.
- When you lift up the mirror cover, the lighting lamp turns on.

! Caution

- Be sure to close the mirror cover after using the sun visor mirror. Failure to do so may cause the sun visor lamp to stay on and the battery may be depleted. Also, an open mirror cover may cause injury.

Grip handle/coat hanger



- The grip handle is installed on the side ceiling of the front passenger seat and rear seats (head lining).
- The coat hanger is included in the grip handle on the ceiling of the rear seats.

Warning

- Do not hang articles other than cloth on the coat hanger. Doing so may cause the side air bag to operate at the time of an impact of an accident, resulting in damage to the vehicle as well as the injury or death of an indoor occupant.

Caution

- Do not hang a heavy cloth on the coat hanger. Doing so may damage the coat hanger and the ceiling (head lining).

Headrest hangers (coat hooks)*



The front seat headrests have hangers for hanging coats.

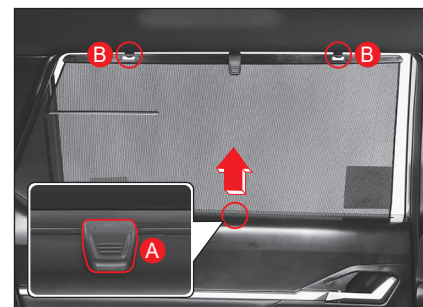
Warning

- Never hang anything other than clothing on the headrest hangers (sharp, fragile, heavy objects, including hangers). If the airbags deploy in a collision, the object could cause damage to the vehicle as well as injury or death to the occupants.

Caution

- Do not hang heavy clothing from the hanger-type headrest. Doing so can damage hanger-type hooks.

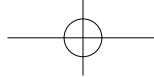
Rear seat door roller blind*



To block external light coming through the rear seat glass, operate the roller blind as follows:

- 1 Hold the roller blind ring (A) and lift it in the direction of the arrow.
- 2 Hang the roller blind on the hooks (B) mounted on both sides.

3



Caution

- Hanging the roller blind on only one hook may cause the roller blind to get deformed. Therefore, make sure to hang the roller blind on the both hooks.
- If any foreign material, such as coin, get inside the roller blind, it may cause a jam during its operation. Be careful not to do so.
- When lowering the roller blind, always grasp the handle in that status and slowly move it downward to rest it in place and then release the handle.
- Do not hang the objects other than the roller blind on the hooks.
- Pulling the roller blind forcibly or applying an excessive force to it may cause it to get crushed or deformed.
- Be careful when using the roller blind with the rear glass lowered as it may come off the hook.

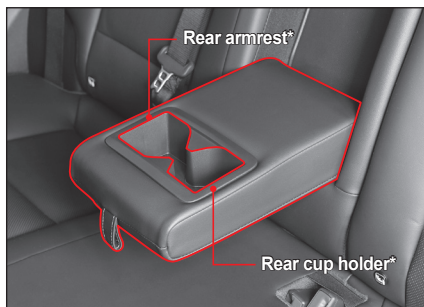


Storage unit

Front seat/rear seat cup holder*



The cup holder is provided in front of the central console section.



There is a cup holder when you lower the rear seat armrest.

Caution

- Caution should be taken that hot liquid in the cup may overflow or spill, causing a burn.
- Pay particular attention while driving since the cup may fall down or the liquid in the cup may spill over.
- Caution should be taken that if liquid in the cup spills over into the switches or operation buttons, it may cause trouble to the system functions.

Cell phone cradle



3

The cell phone cradle is located in front of the center console. The bottom part of the cell phone cradle has a charging cable passage.



Front storage bin



There are storage bins in the front and bottom of the center console. This is suitable for storing small items.

Caution

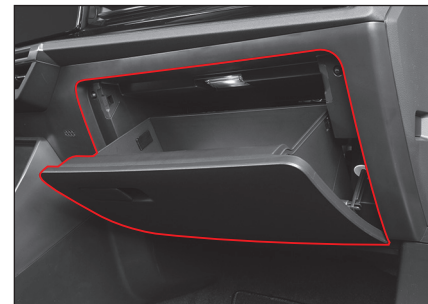
- Be careful to store items placed in the front storage bin so they don't fall out.

Rear storage box



There is a pocket type storage box at the back side of the center console. This is suitable for storing small items.

Glove box



The glove box can be used for storing documents related to the vehicle registration or articles used in the vehicle conveniently.

- Pull on the glove box lever to open the glove box.

Caution

- Leaving the glove box opened may cause injury to an occupant in the event of an accident or sudden braking. Close the glove box while driving.
- Do not store any flammable materials or a cigarette lighter, etc. in the glove box, console or inside the vehicle. Doing so may cause an explosion during midsummer or the air inside the vehicle is heated.



Console

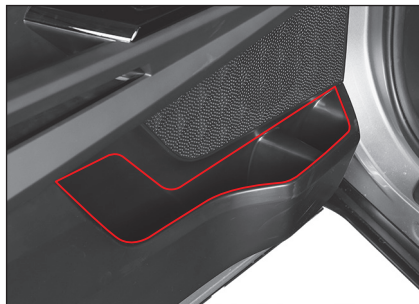


- The front seat console can conveniently store things for passengers in the front seats.

Caution

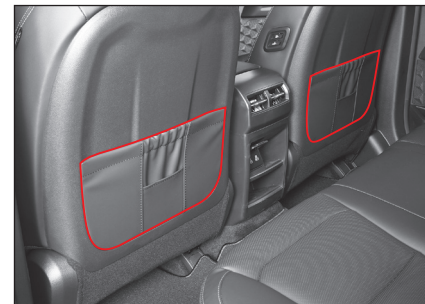
- Do not store any valuable article on the console for preventing theft.
- Do not store an article that can be damaged easily or creates noise on the console as it may move while driving.
- Do not store any flammable materials or a cigarette lighter, etc. in the console, the glove box, or indoor. Doing so may cause an explosion during midsummer or when the air inside the vehicle is heated.

Door map pocket



The pocket (bottle tray) where books, magazines, water bottles or beverages can be stored is provided.

Seat backrest pocket



It can be used conveniently for storing magazines or newspapers.

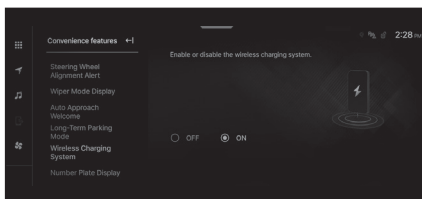
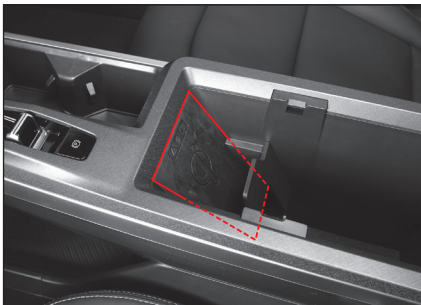
Caution

- Do not store scissors, knives, or other objects with an improper size in the seat backrest pocket. Doing so may cause personal injury in the event of sudden braking or a vehicle collision.

3



Wireless Phone Charger System*



The wireless phone charger system is a device that wirelessly charges the electronic devices (such as mobile phone) that conforms to Qi standard, which is located in front of the transmission selector lever.

The wireless phone charging is available only when the driver sets (ticks) the wireless charging system under User Settings menu in the instrument cluster.

To Charge Phone

- 1 Close all the vehicle doors and start the vehicle.
 - 2 Set up the wireless charging feature. From the main menu of the hypervisor control panel, select Vehicle Settings  → Convenience Features → Wireless Charging System → ON or OFF.
 - 3 Remove everything including the smart key on the wireless charging pad. If there is anything other than the phone on the charging pad, it may not charge.
 - 4 Place the wireless charging enabled phone in the center of the charging pad.
 - 5 Once charging begins, you can check the phone's charging status () based on the color of the wireless charging symbol on the upper part of the hypervisor.
 - White: Wireless charging off
 - Green: Phone charging completed
 - Yellow (solid): Charging in progress
 - Yellow (blink): Charging fault
-  Refer to "Reminder from wireless phone charger" (p.4-67)



Caution

- If any phone is on the wireless charging pad after the ignition is off while the wireless phone charger is operating, a reminder message "The phone is on the wireless phone charger." is displayed on the instrument cluster. After turning off the ignition, be sure to leave the vehicle with your phone.
- The reminder function is turned on when the ignition switch is changed from the ON position to the ACC or OFF position. However, it does not work when changing the ignition switch from the OFF position to ACC position.

Notice

- The wireless phone charger system can be used to charge the mobile phones only that conform to the Qi standard. Whether your phone meets the Qi standard can be checked with a separate accessory cover or phone manufacturer.
- The charging function can be turned on or off under the User Settings menu in the hypervisor control panel.



Caution

- If the temperature or voltage inside the wireless phone charger system exceeds a certain value, the charging function is temporarily stopped to protect the phone and the system.
- The farther your phone is from the center of the charging pad, the less charging efficiency the phone may have.
- Be sure to position your phone in the center of the wireless charging pad.
- Depending on the type of mobile phone cover, charging may not work or a lot of heat may be generated. (e.g., LED cover, thick cover)
- Charging may stop if the mobile phone is not securely pressed against the wireless charging pad.
- If there are magnetic products (credit card, check card, bankbook, ticket and etc.) around the wireless phone charger, its information may be damaged.
- If a metal object is on the wireless charging pad, charging does not work or may stop and a metal object may become hot during charging.
- The mobile phone which is not Qi standard certified may not be charged.



Caution

- Charging stops temporarily when the smart key detection function is activated. (e.g., when starting the vehicle, immediately after the door is open / closed)
- If the terminal that complies with the Qi standard does not provide a full charge information, charging may continue to generate heat.
- If more than one terminal is placed, charging does not work.
- On some manufacturers' phones, the relevant information may not appear on the instrument cluster.
- For the mobile phones that do not have a built-in wireless charging feature, you have to equip with separate accessories individually.
- If you place a phone or metallic object that does not have wireless charging on the charging pad, you may hear some noise. (The noise is a normal operation sound generated in the process of determining whether the mobile phone can be charged wirelessly, which does not affect the mobile phone and the vehicle.)

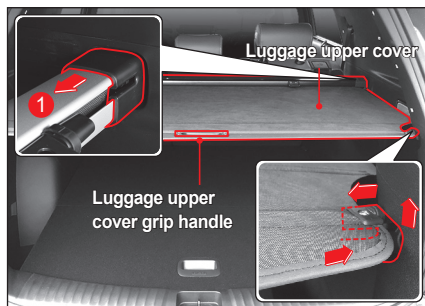


Additional equipment in the luggage compartment*

Luggage upper cover

The luggage upper cover is used for covering luggage so that it cannot be seen.

Installing the luggage upper cover



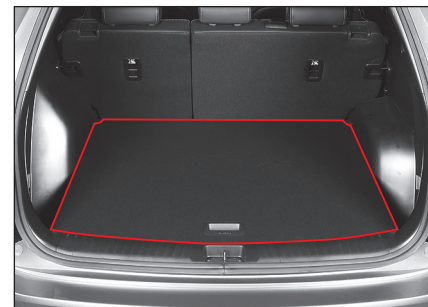
- 1 Fit both ends of the luggage upper cover into the groove on the vehicle body by pressing them in the arrow direction (1).
- 2 Pull the luggage upper cover grip handle and fit it into the groove on the vehicle body.



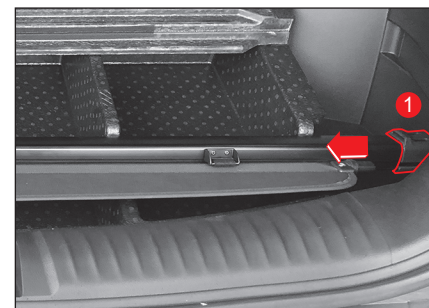
Caution

- Do not place any article on top of the luggage upper cover. Doing so may cause the article to bounce forward, injuring an occupant or damaging the luggage upper cover.
- Do not press the top of the luggage upper cover forcibly. Doing so may damage the luggage upper cover.
- Do not relocate the luggage upper cover when it is pulled out. Doing so may damage the luggage upper cover.

How to store luggage upper cover



- 1 Lift out the luggage compartment board in the direction of the arrow.

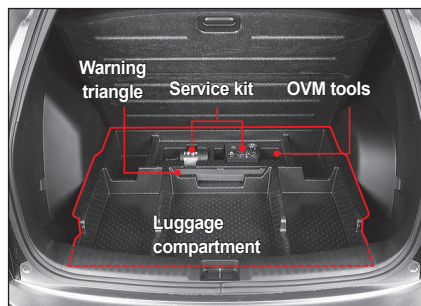


- 2 Pull the left / right end (1) of the luggage compartment upper cover inward and fix it in the groove. The other side is also performed in the same way.



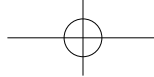
- 3 Make sure that the luggage upper cover is secured firmly.

Luggage compartment



Below the luggage compartment board is a luggage compartment storage box for storing a warning triangle and OVM tools, including a service kit.

3



Additional equipment in the luggage compartment (VAN)*

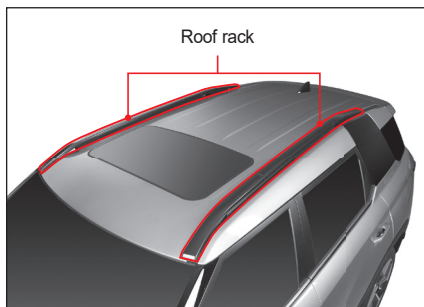


Caution

- When adjusting the seat, be careful about interference with the bulkhead at rear side. Shifting the seat to rear side or changing the seat angle by force can be cause of damage and breakdown.



Roof rack*



The luggage can be loaded onto the top of the vehicle roof using the roof rack.

Also, leisure sporting goods such as a bicycle, snowboard and skis by installing a separate carrier on the roof rack.

- The maximum loading capacity of the roof rack is 100 kg (220 lbs).



Warning

- The luggage loaded onto the roof rack should not exceed the maximum loading capacity. The luggage loaded onto the roof rack should not stick out of the roof. If the maximum loading capacity is exceeded or the luggage sticks out of the roof rack, the relevant vehicle or other vehicles may be damaged. In addition, it adversely affects the driving stability of the vehicle and may cause an accident while driving.
- Fix the luggage to the roof rack safely, and in case of driving for a long period of time, check the fixing status of the luggage frequently. If the luggage loaded onto the roof rack falls off from the vehicle, other vehicles may be damaged or a pedestrian may get injured. Also, it may cause a bigger accident.
- When luggage is loaded onto the roof rack, the center of gravity of the vehicle becomes higher. If you control the steering wheel suddenly while applying sudden braking, making sharp turn or driving at a high speed, the vehicle may become unstable, causing an accident or overturning of the vehicle.
- If the luggage is loaded onto the roof rack, check the tightening status of roof rack fixing bolts and nuts frequently.
- Drive the vehicle at a low speed if possible when luggage is loaded onto the roof rack.



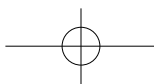
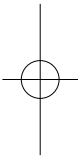
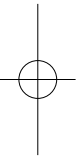
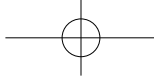
Caution

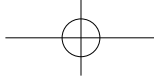
- Caution should be taken that if you load luggage onto the roof rack of a vehicle where a sunroof is installed, the luggage should not interrupt the operation of the sunroof.

Notice

- A protective gear such as a cushion or a cloth can be inserted between the luggage and the roof rack in order to prevent the vehicle from being damaged by contact between the luggage loaded onto the roof rack and the vehicle roof.

3





4. Starting and driving

You can check information regarding the basic equipment for safe driving, auxiliary equipment that helps you to drive comfortably, and how to use such equipment.

An explanation is provided for the START/STOP switch and smart key as well as the driving system including the instrument cluster, SBW (shift by wire), cruise control, auxiliary driving systems such as the brake and autonomous emergency braking system, rear and side warning, lane departure warning system, and parking assist system.



START/STOP switch (Smart key)*

OFF status

The power is turned off.



The indicator is turned off.

- The power is not supplied to the electric accessories of the vehicle.

Notice

- When the vehicle is turned on, make sure to place the SBW (shift by wire) in the P (parking) position and turn off the vehicle by pressing the START/STOP switch.

ACC status

Some electric accessories can be used.



Orange ACC indicator turns on.

- With the START/STOP switch in the OFF status, press the START/STOP switch once without depressing the brake pedal.
- The power is supplied to the vehicle and some electric accessories can be used.



Caution

- The START/STOP switch in the ACC status is not the status that the vehicle is turned on. Using an electric accessory in the vehicle for a long period of time in this status may deplete the battery.

ON status

Most electric accessories can be used.



Red ON indicator turns on.

- With the START/STOP switch in the OFF status, press the START/STOP switch twice without depressing the brake pedal.
- The power is supplied to the vehicle and most electric accessories can be used.



Caution

- The START/STOP switch in the ON status is not the status that the vehicle is turned on. Using an electric accessory in the vehicle for a long period of time in this status may deplete the battery.
- If the smart key system is abnormal, the indicator blinks 5 times with the START/STOP switch in the ON status. Have your vehicle checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center immediately.

READY status

Possible to start the vehicle



Green READY indicator turns on.

- This is the status that the gear shift lever is placed in the P (parking) position and the brake pedal is depressed for starting the vehicle.



Warning

- Start the vehicle after placing it in the P (parking) position for safety.

Notice

- After you start the vehicle, the READY indicator turns off.



Warning

- Do not press the START switch while driving. If the ignition is turned off, brake performance may be reduced and the electric power steering (EPS) system may not operate, resulting in heavy steering wheel operation.

Caution

- Pressing the START switch without depressing the brake pedal only causes the start switch to switch repeatedly between “OFF > ACC > ON > OFF” and the vehicle does not start.

Notice

- Once vehicle started, the following indicators and warning lamps will illuminate depending on the driving readiness:

- Green indicator illuminated: normal driving possible
- White indicator illuminated: normal driving impossible
- Red warning lamp flashing: Not drivable due to system failure

To start vehicle

With the electronic shift lever in the P (park) or N (neutral) position and the brake pedal depressed, pressing the START switch will start the vehicle.

To start vehicle

- 1 Get in the vehicle while carrying the smart key.
- 2 Be sure that all occupants fasten their seat belt.
- 3 Check for safety that the parking brake is applied.
- 4 Turn off all electric accessories.
- 5 Place the electronic shift lever in the P (park) position.
- 6 Depress brake pedal.
- 7 Check if the READY status indicator on START/STOP switch is turned on.
- 8 If the READY status indicator is turned on, start the vehicle by pressing the START/ STOP switch.
- 9 Depress the brake pedal until the vehicle starts.

Warning

- Start the vehicle with the electronic shift lever in the P (park) position.
- Repeated depression of the brake pedal without the  Ready lamp illuminated may result in a 12 V auxiliary battery discharge.
- When the smart key is inside the vehicle, pressing the START button starts the vehicle. Always be careful, especially if you have a smart key in your vehicle with someone who doesn't know these features (including adults and children), as they may cause unexpected situations.

4

Getting your vehicle started

- 1 When starting off the vehicle with the ignition turned on, keep the brake pedal depressed and check the  Ready lamp before operating the electronic shift lever to shift.
- 2 After releasing the parking brake, slowly release the foot from the brake pedal to ensure that the vehicle is moving slowly.
- 3 Depress the accelerator pedal slowly to start off the vehicle.



When vehicle does not start

Starting the vehicle with the dead smart key or interference, etc. (in the event of emergency)

You may not be able to start the vehicle with the START/STOP switch due to the depletion of the battery in the smart key or interference even if you are carrying the smart key in the vehicle.

In such case, take a measure as follows, replace the smart key battery or check the smart key.

Place the SBW (shift by wire) in the P (parking) position and start the vehicle by pressing the START/STOP switch directly with the smart key with the brake pedal depressed.



Notice

- If the warning buzzer is sounding, it stops.
- If you open the door while the vehicle is running when the smart key battery is depleted, a warning message saying “The smart key is not in the vehicle” appears. In such case, when you turn off and start the vehicle again, the warning message disappears.

To start vehicle when stop lamp fuse fails (emergency)

If the stop lamp fuse fails, the vehicle may not start.

In this case, pressing the START switch while ignition in ACC position for 10 seconds will start the vehicle.



Caution

- Do not start the vehicle by pressing and holding the START switch for more than 10 seconds except in an emergency. This can cause an unexpected and extremely dangerous situation because the vehicle will start without depressing the brake pedal.
- Always depress the brake pedal even though you start the vehicle in an emergency.



Stopping the vehicle

The vehicle can be turned off only when the SBW (shift by wire) is placed in the P (parking) position and the brake pedal is depressed.

- 1 After stopping the vehicle completely, keep the brake pedal depressed.
- 2 Shift the SBW (shift by wire) to the P.
- 3 Apply the parking brake.
- 4 Turn off the vehicle by pressing the START/STOP switch, and then take your foot off the brake pedal.

Be sure to check that the vehicle is turned off and if there are any other abnormalities, and get out of the vehicle with the smart key.

Stopping the vehicle while driving (in the event of emergency)

If you need to turn off the vehicle in an emergency situation such as an accident or vehicle damage while driving, press and hold down the START/STOP switch for 3 seconds or more, or press it three times within 1.5 seconds.

The vehicle is turned off and the START/STOP switch is set to the ACC status.

Warning

- Never turn off the vehicle while driving unless there is an emergency situation such as an accident or vehicle damage. Doing so may make the steering wheel heavier and lower the brake performance, becoming very dangerous.

Notice

- If the vehicle is driving continuously with the engine turned off, you can start the engine again by placing the gear shift lever in the N (neutral) position and pressing START/STOP switch without depressing the brake pedal.

System Safety Mode

In the event of a critical system fault in the vehicle or malfunctions in the high and low voltage electrical systems, the vehicle system enters a safe mode to protect itself.

If you enter System Safe Mode, you may see the associated **warning** lights come on and you may experience a reduction in drive power or a stall.

Caution

- If the system is in Safe Mode, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place, turn off the engine, and bring it into our network via roadside assistance to have the relevant systems checked and serviced.
- If the vehicle is operated while the system is in safe mode, normal operation is not possible, such as limited driving force, and a stalling phenomenon may occur. Continuing to drive the vehicle in that condition can cause serious damage to the system.

4



Cautions for using the START/STOP switch

Warning

- The smart key system allows you to start the vehicle by pressing the START/STOP switch with the brake pedal depressed within its operation range. Caution should be taken that a person who is unfamiliar with the system such as in any other situations, especially a child, may start the vehicle.
- Never press the START/STOP switch while driving. Doing so may result in a dangerous situation due to the suspension of power supply.

Caution

- Be sure to start the vehicle with the brake pedal depressed.
- Do not depress the accelerator pedal when starting the vehicle.
- If you leave your vehicle while carrying your smart key with the ignition switch turned on or engine started, a warning message appears on the instrument panel and a chime sounds.
- Pay particular attention not to start the vehicle when checking the vehicle from the outside, especially the motor room.
- Do not use a non genuine smart key or a replicated key.
- The communication with the smart key system is not smooth on top of the seat where the heater function is activated or the floor of the vehicle and the area near the pedal, so the smart key recognition performance may be lowered.
- The vehicle is controlled by various electronic control units. If you attach and use a device that creates radio waves or electromagnetic waves near the smart key or the vehicle, various vehicle control systems may malfunction.
- When you operate the START/STOP switch while a smartphone is placed near the smart key or charging the smartphone battery through the power socket in the vehicle, the vehicle may not start occasionally.



Smart Key

Button-specific feature

The smart key is a device that allows you to lock and unlock the doors (including the tailgate) and start the engine simply by carrying it with you. In addition, you can use the buttons on the smart key to perform the usual remote key functions.



Button	Short press	Long press
1 Lock door	Door locked	
2 Unlock door	Door unlocked (Only driver door unlocked when safety unlock set)	←
		Charging stopped (when charging)
3 Panic	-	Panic turned on and off
4 Headlamp	-	Low beam turning ON and OFF in theft deterrent mode
5 Tailgate	Locked and unlocked, for models without power tailgate	
	Power tailgate disabled	Power tailgate open and closed

Door locked

Press the door lock button (1) to lock all doors and the tailgate.

- When the system switches to theft deterrent mode, the hazard warning lamp flashes twice and the warning beep sounds once.
- When the rear view mirror folding / unfolding button is in the neutral position, the rear view mirrors will fold.

☞ Refer to "Folding/unfolding the outside rearview mirror" (p.3-89)

Notice

- It is not possible to lock the door with the door lock button when the ignition switch is in ACC or ON position or the engine is started.



Caution

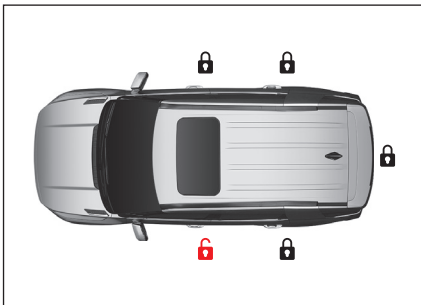
- All doors, tailgate, and motor room hood must be closed to switch to theft deterrent mode. If the tailgate or motor room hood is open when the door lock button is pressed, only the door will lock and the vehicle will not enter the theft deterrent mode.
- Always check that locked status of the doors and tailgate after locking the doors with the smart key. If the doors are not locked, the vehicle itself or your personal belongings in the vehicle can be stolen.

4

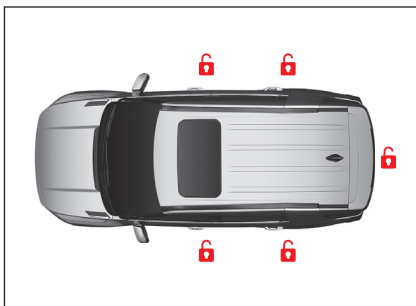


Unlocking the door (when the safety unlock is enabled)

- When the safety unlock is enabled, pressing the Door unlock button (2) only unlocks the driver seat door and cancels the theft monitoring mode.



- Pressing the Door unlock button (2) again with the driver seat door unlocked unlocks all doors and the tailgate.



- Pressing the Door unlock button (2) twice in a row unlocks the driver seat door first, then unlocks all doors and cancels the theft monitoring mode.
- When the theft deterrent mode is deactivated, the hazard warning lamp blinks and a buzzer sounds.

Hazard warning lamp	Buzzer
Blinks once	Sounds twice

- When the rear view mirror folding / unfolding button is in the neutral position, the rear view mirrors unfold.
 Refer to "Folding/unfolding the outside rearview mirror" (p.3-89)

What is safety unlock?

The safety unlock function unlocks only the driver seat door when the Door unlock button is pressed once to prevent entering through a door other than the driver seat door. Pressing the Door unlock button again unlocks all doors and the tailgate.

To set safety unlock

- From the main menu of the hypervisor control panel, select Vehicle Settings 
→ Door/Tailgate → Double Click Unlocking
→ Off or On.
- In theft deterrent mode, if a door, tailgate or hood is not opened within 30 seconds after the door is unlocked, all the doors are locked automatically.
- In this case, the system is switched to the theft deterrent mode, the hazard warning lamp blinks and a buzzer sounds.

Hazard warning lamp	Buzzer
Blinks twice	Sounds once

Notice

- In the event of auto lock after 30 seconds, the rear view mirror will not fold even if the rear view mirror folding / unfolding button is in the neutral position.



Unlocking the door (when the safety unlock is disabled)

Pressing the Door unlock button (2) briefly unlocks all doors and the tailgate.



- When the theft deterrent mode is deactivated, the hazard warning lamp blinks and a buzzer sounds.

Hazard warning lamp	Buzzer
Blinks once	Sounds twice

- If the outside Rearview mirror folding/unfolding button is in the neutral position, the outside rearview mirror is folded.

☞ Refer to "Folding/unfolding the outside rearview mirror" (p.3-89)

Activating/deactivating the panic mode

When you press the Panic button in the event of emergency, the hazard warning lamp turns on and the warning buzzer sounds for a certain period of time.

- When you press and hold down the Panic button (3), the hazard warning lamp blinks and the warning buzzer sounds for approximately 30 seconds.
- Pressing and holding down the Panic button (3) again stops the panic mode.

Headlamp (low beam) on

When the vehicle is turned off, pressing and holding the headlight button turns on the headlights (low beam) for a certain period of time.

- If you press and hold the headlight button (4) while the vehicle is in theft deterrent mode, the headlights (low beam) will turn on for approximately 20 seconds.
- Press and hold the headlamp button (4) again to stop operation.

Opening/closing the tailgate

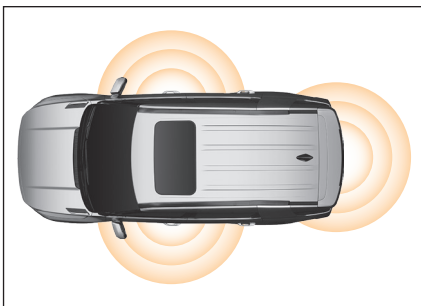
- You can open or close the tailgate by pressing and holding down the Tailgate button (5).
- Pressing the Tailgate button (5) briefly stops the operation of the power tailgate.
- When you approach within approximately 1 m from the center of the tailgate with the smart key, the smart tailgate operates.
☞ Refer to "Tailgate" (p.3-34)
- For vehicles without the power tailgate, press and hold the tailgate button (5) to lock/unlock the tailgate.

4



Additional functions

Smart door auto lock (auto close)



When you move a certain distance away from the vehicle while carrying the smart key, all doors and the tailgate are locked automatically.

If you stay in the smart key detection area of the vehicle for 10 minute or more under the above condition, all doors and the tailgate are also locked automatically for theft prevention.

- When the theft monitoring mode is activated, the hazard warning lamp blinks twice and the warning buzzer sounds once.
- If the Outside rearview mirror folding/unfolding button is in the neutral position, the outside rearview mirror is folded.

 Refer to "Folding/unfolding the outside rearview mirror" (p.3-89)

Activating the smart door auto lock function (Activating from the hypervisor control panel)

- From the main menu of the hypervisor control panel, select Vehicle Settings  → Door/Tailgate → Smart door auto locking → Off or On.

Activating the smart door auto lock function (Activating with the smart key)

- 1 With the START/STOP switch in the ON status, press the hazard warning lamp switch.
The hazard warning lamp turns on.
- 2 Press the Door lock button on the smart key three times consecutively within 2 seconds.

Notice

- The smart door auto lock is carried out only if the smart key is detected near the vehicle (in the outside antenna area) when you close the door.
- The detection of the smart key varies depending on the walking speed and surrounding environment.
- If the smart key is present inside the vehicle, the smart door auto lock function is not activated.
- If the smart key battery is depleted, the smart door auto lock function is canceled automatically. Replace the smart key battery and activate it again from  (Vehicle Settings) on the hypervisor control panel.
- Smart door auto lock is automatically disabled when you set it to long-term parking mode.



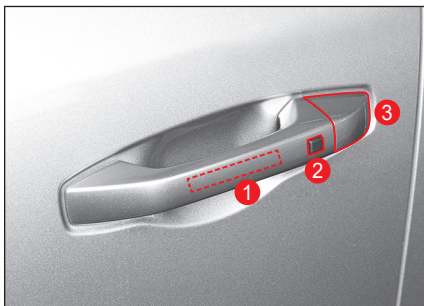
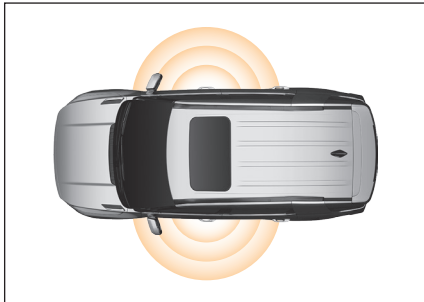
Caution

- When you lock the door using the smart door auto lock function, check that the hazard warning lamp blinks twice and the warning buzzer sounds once. If the door is not locked completely, the vehicle or an article inside the vehicle may be stolen.

4-10 Starting and driving



Locking/unlocking the door with the door handle switch



- ① Outside antenna
- ② Door lock/unlock button
- ③ Mechanical key hole

To lock with door handle switch

- 1 Stay in the outside antenna area of the vehicle (approximately 1 m) while carrying the smart key.
- 2 Press the door lock / unlock button (②) with all the doors and tailgate closed.
- 3 All the doors and tailgate are closed.
 - When the theft monitoring mode is activated, the hazard warning lamp blinks twice and the warning buzzer sounds once.
 - If the Outside rearview mirror folding/unfolding button is in the neutral position, the outside rearview mirror is folded.

☞ Refer to "Folding/unfolding the outside rearview mirror" (p.3-89)

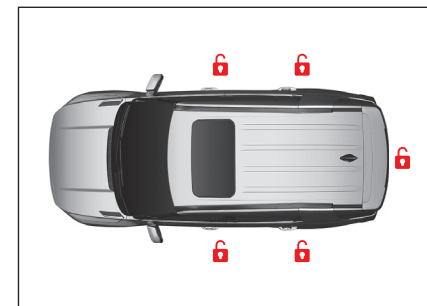
Notice

- It is not possible to lock the door with the door lock / unlock button when the ignition switch is in ACC or ON position or the vehicle is started.

To unlock with door handle switch (when the safety unlock is disabled)

- 1 Stay in the outside antenna area of the vehicle (approximately 1 m) while carrying the smart key.
- 2 Press the door lock / unlock button (②).
 - Once the smart key authentication is completed, all the doors and tailgate are unlocked.
 - When the theft monitoring mode is activated, the hazard warning lamp blinks twice and the warning buzzer sounds once.
 - If the Outside rearview mirror folding/unfolding button is in the neutral position, the outside rearview mirror is folded.

☞ Refer to "Folding/unfolding the outside rearview mirror" (p.3-89)



- 3 Open the driver seat door by pulling the door handle slowly.

4

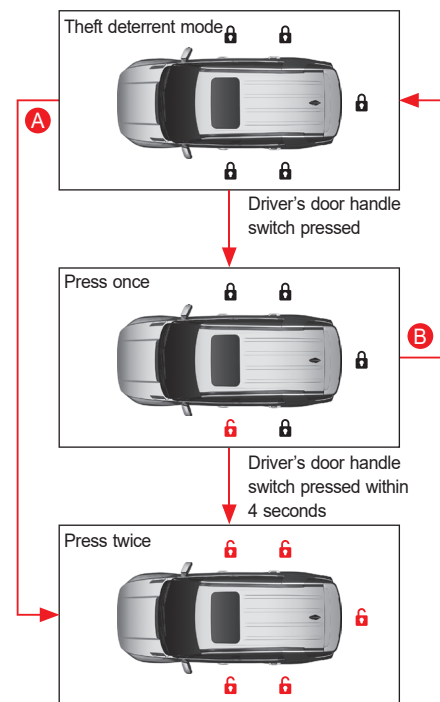


To unlock with door handle switch (when the safety unlock is enabled)

- 1 Stay around the driver's door outside antenna area (within approx. 1m) with a smart key.
- 2 Press the door lock / unlock button (2).
 - Once the smart key authentication is completed, only the driver's door is unlocked.
 - The hazard warning lamp flashes once and buzzer sounds twice indicating that the theft deterrent mode is deactivated.
- 3 Open the door by pulling the door handle slowly.
 - Press the door lock / unlock button (2) one more time within 4 seconds with the driver's door unlocked if you want to unlock all the doors and tailgate.
 - All the doors and tailgate are unlocked.
 - The hazard warning lamp flashes once and buzzer sounds twice when all the doors are unlocked.

Notice

- When you press the passenger's door handle lock / unlock button with the safety unlock set, all the doors are unlocked.
- When you press the driver door lock / unlock button 4 seconds after the driver door is unlocked, all doors will be locked and the system enters the theft deterrent mode.
- From the main menu of the hypervisor control panel, select Vehicle Settings (⚙️) → Door/Tailgate → Double Click Unlocking → Off or On.



- A** When button other than driver's door lock / unlock button pressed
- B** When driver's door lock / unlock button pressed 4 seconds after driver door unlocked



Cautions for using smart key

Warning

- Do not leave the vehicle with the smart key in the vehicle when a person (especially a child) who does not know the vehicle system is present in the vehicle. Pressing the START/STOP switch with the brake pedal depressed while the smart key is in the vehicle starts the vehicle. Other incorrect vehicle controls may occur. In such case, a serious accident may occur. Therefore, always pay attention.

Caution

If the smart key does not operate or is not recognized

- When you lock the door with the door handle lock / unlock button or another smart key outside the vehicle with the smart key inside the vehicle, the smart key in the vehicle will be disabled temporarily (buzzer sounds).

To restore to the original function, deactivate the theft deterrent mode by using the smart key outside the vehicle or door handle lock / unlock button.

- If the vehicle is in a place where strong radio waves are transmitted or received, if the vehicle is equipped with a two-way radio or other transmission and reception systems or if a smart key is used in another nearby vehicle, the smart key system may not function normally.
- The smart key recognition performance may be lowered on a blind spot above the seats where the heater function is activated or the floor of the vehicle and the area near the pedal, so the smart key system may not function. In such case, carry the smart key or place the smart key in a different location.
- If the vehicle cannot be started while the smart key is placed inside the vehicle or you are carrying it, start the vehicle by pressing the START/STOP switch with the smart key directly.
- If the smart key is near the outside windshield or the door glass, the smart key may be recognized as being present inside the vehicle. In this case, the smart key system may not operate normally.

Using the smart key

- Carry only one smart key.
- Store each smart key separately. When you lock the door using the LOCK touch sensor on the door handle instead of the Door lock/unlock button on the smart key, be careful not to leave the smart key inside the vehicle.
- If you leave the vehicle even for a moment, turn off the vehicle and carry the smart key with you and do not store a spare smart key inside the vehicle. Failure to do so may cause vehicle theft or malfunction.
- Using 2 smart keys provided by KG Mobility Corporation on one key chain at the same time may cause the smart key system to malfunction or vehicle starting failure.

Managing the smart key

- When you lock the door with another smart key with the previously used smart key in the vehicle, the door can be locked normally but you cannot start the vehicle with the key left in the vehicle until it is used normally next time. This is a safety system for preventing theft.



- Do not allow water or liquid to flow into the smart key. Caution should be taken as the smart key is not fully waterproof, so if moisture or water gets in, it may cause a malfunction that is not covered by the warranty.
- The electronic systems in the smart key are vulnerable to moisture or heat, so placing the smart key in a place with high humidity or high temperature may cause a failure.
- If the smart key is lost, you cannot open the door or start the vehicle. If you don't have a spare smart key in storage, you need to have your vehicle towed and serviced at a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center. Also, the vehicle or an article in the vehicle may be lost due to the lost smart key, so take measures immediately.

Cautions for using door handle lock / unlock button

- Anyone within the operating range of the smart key can unlock the door with the door handle lock / unlock button. Be careful of theft.
- Do not operate locking or unlocking as soon as you lock / unlock the door.

Using the emergency key

The emergency key

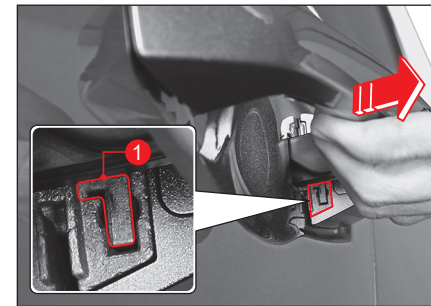


- Remove the emergency key (B) from its body while pressing the emergency key lock (A) at the smart key in the direction of the arrow.

Locking/unlocking the door using the emergency key

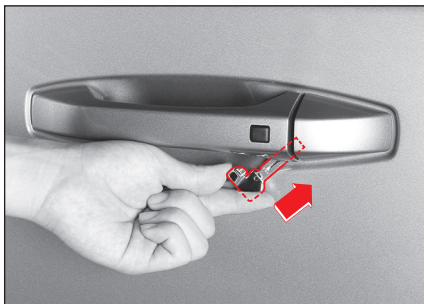
If the door cannot be locked or unlocked due to reasons including the depletion of the smart key battery, interference, and the depletion of the vehicle battery, the emergency key (auxiliary key) can be used.

- 1 Pull the driver seat door handle in the arrow direction in a way that the Emergency key hole cover open button (1) is visible.

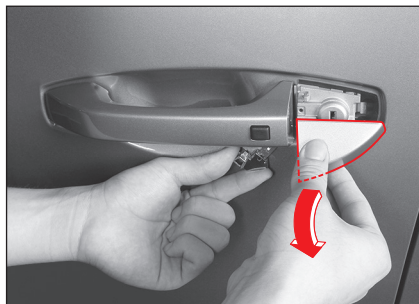




- 2 Press the Emergency key hole cover open button (1) using the emergency key.



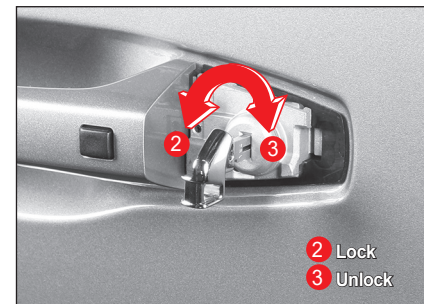
- 3 With the Emergency key hole cover open button (1) pressed, push down the top side of the emergency key hole cover to remove it.



Caution

- Be careful not to create a scratch on the driver seat door panel or lose the emergency key hole cover.

- 4 Insert the emergency key into the key hole and do as follows.
- To lock the door, turn it in the lock direction (2).
 - To unlock the door, turn it in the unlock direction (3).



Notice

- When unlocking in the theft monitoring mode, the warning buzzer sounds.

4



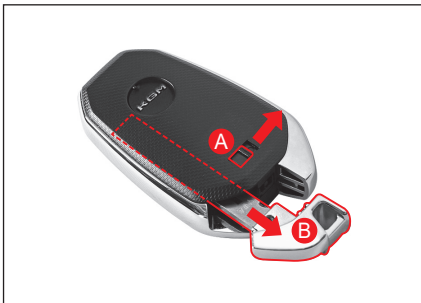
Replacing the smart key battery

If the operation range of the smart key has decreased significantly or the smart key malfunctions occasionally, replace the smart key battery.

Battery standard

One CR2032 battery

- 1 Remove the emergency key (B) from its body while pressing the emergency key lock (A) at the smart key in the direction of the arrow.



- 2 When removing it, be careful not to scratch the cover of the smart key using a smallest flat-bladed screwdriver.



- 3 Insert the battery with the positive (+) terminal facing up and the negative (-) terminal facing down.



- 4 Return the cover from the back of the smart key back to its original position.

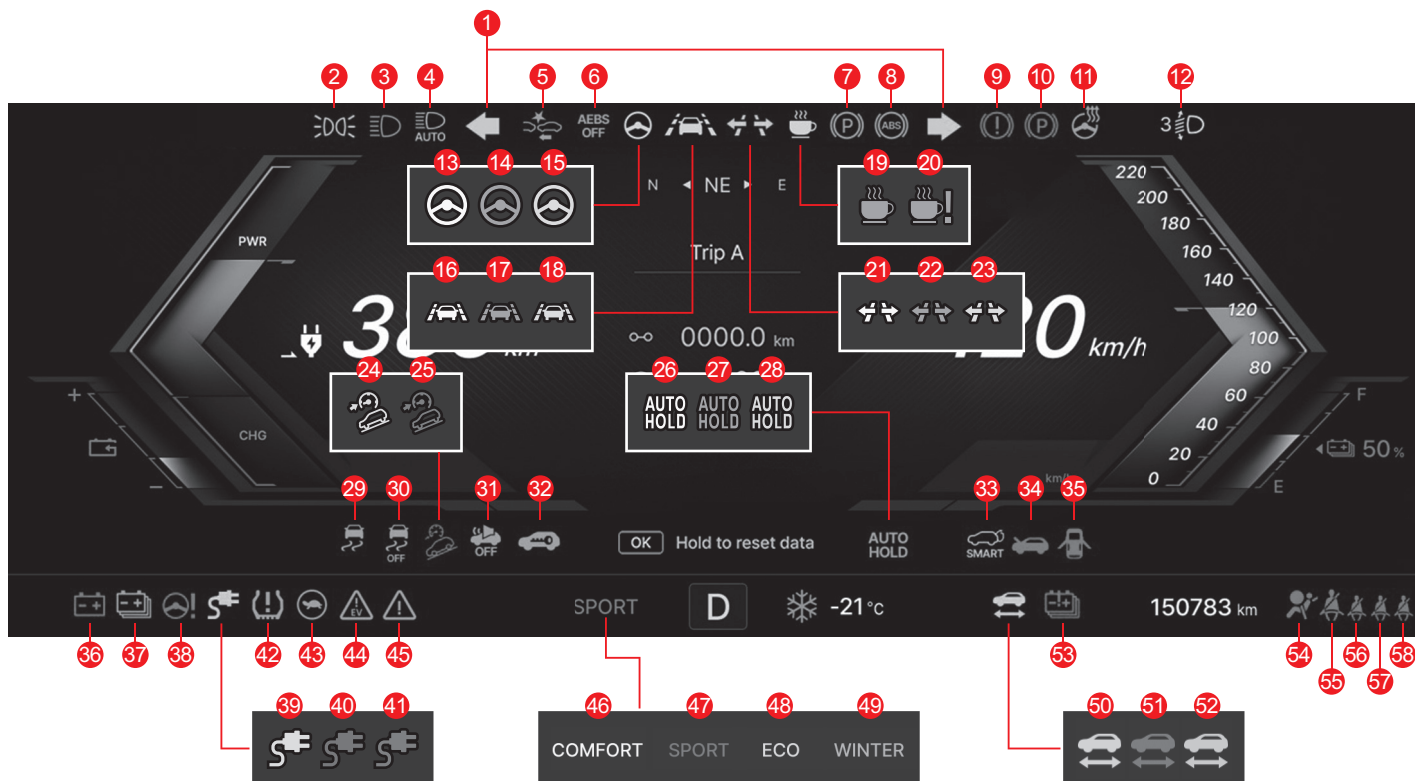
After replacing the battery, be sure to check if the remote control key operates normally.



Caution

- The circuit inside the smart key is vulnerable to static electricity, so if you are not skilled in replacing the battery, have the smart key checked and the battery replaced at a KGM authorized service center.
- Be sure to replace the battery with one that meets the standard. Using a battery that does not meet the standard may cause the smart key to be inoperable due to contact failure.
- Be careful not to switch the direction of the positive (+) terminal and negative (-) terminal when inserting the battery.
- Since the battery may contaminate environments, discard it in a proper way.

Instrument cluster





- 1 Turn signal lamp/hazard warning light
- 2 Illumination ON indicator
- 3 High beam indicator
- 4 Smart High Beam (SHB) indicator
- 5 Autonomous emergency braking (AEB) warning lamp
- 6 Autonomous emergency braking (AEB) OFF indicator lamp
- 7 Yellow: Electronic parking brake (EPB) warning lamp
- 8 Anti-Lock brake system (ABS) warning lamp
- 9 Brake system warning lamp (EBD, regenerative braking, BBC)
- 10 Parking brake ON indicator (Red)
- 11 Steering wheel heating ON indicator
- 12 Headlamp angle indicator
- 13 Green: Centering lane keeping assist (CLKA) ON indicator lamp
- 14 White: Centering lane keeping assist (CLKA) standby indicator lamp
- 15 Yellow: Centering lane keeping assist (CLKA) malfunction warning lamp
- 16 Green: Lane keeping assist ON indicator lamp
- 17 White : Lane keeping assist standby indicator lamp
- 18 Yellow: Lane keeping assist malfunction warning lamp

- 19 Orange: Driver Attention Alert (DAW) indicator lamp
- 20 Orange: Driver Attention Alert (DAW) failure warning lamp
- 21 Green: Automatic Lane Change (ALC) ON indicator lamp
- 22 White: Automatic Lane Change (ALC) standby indicator lamp
- 23 Yellow: Automatic Lane Change (ALC) malfunction warning lamp
- 24 Green: Hill descent control (HDC) ON indicator lamp
- 25 Red: Hill descent control (HDC) warning lamp
- 26 Green: AUTO HOLD indicator lamp
- 27 White: AUTO HOLD standby indicator lamp
- 28 Yellow: AUTO HOLD warning lamp
- 29 Electronic stability control (ESC) ON indicator/warning lamp
- 30 Electronic stability control (ESC) OFF indicator lamp
- 31 Virtual Engine Sound System (VESS) warning lamp
- 32 Immobilizer/Smart key warning lamp
- 33 Smart tailgate enabled indicator
- 34 Hood open warning lamp
- 35 Door ajar warning lamp
- 36 Low voltage battery warning lamp
- 37 High voltage battery level warning lamp

- 38 Electric power steering (EPS) warning light
- 39 Lit in green: Waiting to charge, charging completed
Blinking in green: Charging in progress
- 40 Blinking in red: Charging failed
- 41 Blue: Waiting for scheduled charging
- 42 TPMS warning lamp
- 43 Power Down
- 44 High voltage warning lamp
- 45 Master symbol
- 46 COMFORT
- 47 SPORT mode indicator
- 48 ECO indicator
- 49 WINTER mode indicator
- 50 Green: driving possible
- 51 White : driving standby
- 52 Red: Unable to drive
- 53 High voltage battery failure warning lamp
- 54 Air bag warning lamp
- 55 Seat belt reminder warning lamp (driver/passenger)
- 56 Seat belt reminder warning lamp (rear left)
- 57 Seat belt reminder warning lamp (rear center)
- 58 Seat belt reminder warning lamp (rear right)

4-18 Starting and driving



Trip info display

Speedometer



This is a gauge that measures and indicates the instantaneous vehicle speed.

Over speed warning light (GCC only)

120
km/h

Sounds warning chime 5 times initially

POWER/CHARGE gauge



This gauge indicates the power consumption of the motor and charge/discharge status of the electrical energy recovered by regenerative braking.

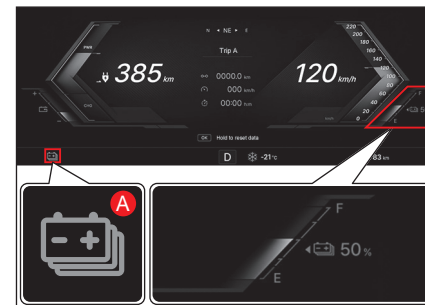
• PWR

This part of the gauge indicates the power consumption of the motor when accelerating or driving uphill. The higher electrical energy consumption will push this gauge farther up the scale.

• CHG

This part of the gauge indicates the status of the battery charged by regenerative braking. The higher amount of electrical energy will push this gauge farther down the scale.

High Voltage (HV) battery indicator



Indicates the state of charge of the high-voltage battery (drive battery).

- The high-voltage battery level warning light (A) illuminates orange when the high-voltage battery charge level is 18% or less, and red when it is 3% or less.

The left arrow next to the the plug icon (⚡) shows the charge port door is on the left-hand side of the vehicle.

4



⚠ Caution

- Be sure to check the HV battery level before driving off.
- Low value of charging power can be displayed on the battery indicator based on the SoC of the HV battery.
- When the SoC of the HV battery reaches a certain level, the battery can be charged with low charging power for the reasons of saving battery life or safety.
- If the vehicle is driven for a period of time with the high voltage battery gauge remaining below 3%, the vehicle's power will be limited and subsequent shutdowns and etc. will occur. Immediately go to the nearest charging station to recharge.

Distance To Empty (DTE)



DTE shows the approximate distance your vehicle can travel before running out of power. The DTE value is calculated based on the current SoC of the HV battery, the driving mode (SPORT, ECO, ECO+), and the accumulated data on the driver's driving pattern.

The display value ranges from 0 to 2000 km, and “---” symbol comes on if DTE value is 0 km.

⚠ Caution

- The DTE value may vary depending on the vehicle system load, the driver's driving pattern, and the road conditions, including uphill and downhill, etc.
- The display value can be changed because it is calculated based on the various conditions.
- Use the DTE value for reference only. Always check the SoC of the drive battery before driving off and charge the battery, if necessary.

Regenerative braking level indicator



When using regenerative braking, the current regenerative braking setting level is displayed here.

You can use the paddle shift lever to set it to 1-3, SMART levels.

The regenerative braking system can be adjusted to 0, 1, 2, 3, and SMART levels.

☞ Refer to “Regenerative braking system” (p.4-109)



Odometer



The total mileage of the vehicle is displayed in kilometers. The maximum mileage to be displayed is 999999 km.

Notice

- It is normal if the total mileage at the time of shipping is less than 50 km.

Electronic shift lever indicator



This indicator shows the current position of the electronic shift lever (P, R, N, D).

Ambient temperature Indicator



This Indicator displays the current ambient temperature.

When the ambient temperature drops below 3°C, the ICE warning symbol (A) will come on.

4



Warning lights and indicators

Seat belt warning lamp



- 1 Warning lamp for driver and front passenger
- 2 Rear (left) seat warning lamp
- 3 Rear (center) seat warning lamp
- 4 Rear (right) seat warning lamp

If the driver seat and front passenger seat occupants do not fasten the seat belt, the seat belt warning light blinks along with a warning buzzer.

If you fasten the seat belt at this time, the warning buzzer stops and the seat belt warning light stays on for the remaining time.

The rear seat (left, center and right) reminder illuminates the warning lamp or sounds the buzzer depending on the vehicle conditions and whether the seat is occupied or not.

☞ Refer to "Seat belt warning" (p.2-2)

LV battery warning light



This warning light comes on when the LV battery is depleted or a fault has developed in the charging system such as Low DC-DC Converter (LDC).



Warning

- If the LV battery warning light is turned on, have the vehicle checked and serviced immediately at a KG Mobility Dealer or KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.
- If this light turns on, it may indicate that the LV battery is completely drained or the vehicle speed and/or some functions are limited.
- Continuous driving with this light ON can result in your vehicle not starting.

Air bag warning lamp



The air bag warning lamp turns on when the START/STOP switch is in the ON status, and it turns off when there is no abnormality in the air bag system.

If the warning light stays on after starting the vehicle, the air bag system is abnormal. Have your vehicle checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center immediately.

☞ Refer to "Air bag" (p.2-20)



Hill Descent Control (HDC) ON indicator/warning light



When you press the HDC switch, the system is switched to the HDC operation ready status and the green HDC indicator turns on.

When you press the HDC switch again, the indicator turns off and the HDC function is deactivated.

The HDC ON indicator operates as follows according to the status.

- Green indicator turns on: The HDC is in ready status.
- Green indicator blinks: The HDC is operating.
- Red warning light turns on: The HDC system is overheated and abnormal.

 Refer to "Hill Descent Control (HDC)" (p.4-121)



Caution

- **When the red warning light turns on, have your vehicle checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.**

Electric power steering warning light



The electric power steering warning light turns on when the ignition switch is turned on and turns off when the ignition is turned on.

This warning lamp lights on in the event of faulty electric power steering (EPS) system.



Caution

- **If the electric power steering warning light comes on or the steering wheel feels heavy, please have it checked and serviced a KG Mobility Dealer or KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.**

Notice

- If you keep the steering wheel turned to the left or right all the way while the vehicle is stationary, the warning light will blink as the steering wheel becomes heavy. This is a safety feature to protect the system and will return to normal after some time.
- The EPS (Electronic Power Steering) system is mounted in the steering handle. This system includes functions to compensate the steering power, interlocking with ESC, the supplementary driving safety system, when cornering or braking on the road with different friction. You may feel some difference in steering when these functions are in operation.



Electronic stability control system (ESC) ON indicator/warning light



The ESC ON indicator turns on when the START/STOP switch is in the ON status and turns off approximately 4 seconds later.

- Indicator blinks: When the ESC function is activated
- Warning light turns on: When the ESC system is abnormal

Caution

- If the ESC ON warning lamp turns on, have your vehicle checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.

Electronic stability control system (ESC) OFF indicator



The ESC OFF indicator turns on when the START/STOP switch is in the ON status and turns off approximately 4 seconds later.

Pressing and holding down the ESC OFF switch (approximately 3 seconds or more) deactivates the ESC function and the ESC OFF indicator turns on.

 Refer to "When it is necessary to deactivate the ESC function" (p.4-119)

ABS (Anti-Lock Brake System) warning light



The ABS warning light turns on when the START/STOP switch is in the ON status and turns off approximately 4 seconds later.

This warning light turns on when the ABS system is abnormal.

Warning

- If the ABS warning light turns on, the ABS function does not operate and only normal brake function operates. In such case, have your vehicle checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center immediately.

Notice

- A vehicle equipped with the ABS system has the self-diagnosis function to check the internal hydraulic system to see if there is an abnormality by transferring the hydraulic pressure to the internal hydraulic system after the vehicle is started. At this time, a vibration and a noise may occur at the brake pedal. This indicates that the ABS is functioning normally.



Brake system warning light



This warning light comes on for about 4 seconds and then goes off when the START/STOP switch is turned ON.

This warning lamp illuminates when there is a fault with the EBD system, regenerative braking system, or BBC system.

Warning

- If the brake system warning lamp is turned on, have it checked and serviced at the nearest our authorized service center immediately.
- Brake pedal effort may be more than normal.
- Braking distances may be longer than normal.
- The vehicle may become unstable during hard braking.
- When the corresponding warning light is on, the ABS feature is also disabled.

Notice

- EBD : Electronic Brake-force Distribution
- BBC : Base Brake Control

TPMS warning light



The TPMS warning light turns on when the START/STOP switch is in the ON status and turns off approximately 4 seconds later.

If the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) is abnormal, the TPMS warning light blinks (for approximately 70 seconds) and then stays on. This warning light also turns on if the tire pressure is abnormal (underinflated/overinflated/flat).

 Refer to "Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)" (p.2-29)

Warning

- If the TPMS warning light turns on, be sure to park your vehicle at a safe place and check the tire pressure. If this warning light stays on, have your vehicle checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.

Steering wheel heater indicator*



If you press the Steering wheel heater button with the START/STOP switch in the ON status or while the vehicle is running, the steering wheel heater indicator turns on or turns off.

Notice

- When the steering wheel heater indicator turns on, the heater ON/OFF status message is displayed on top of the display of the instrument cluster for approximately 5 seconds.



Immobilizer/smart key warning light



If the smart key system is abnormal or the smart key (transponder) authentication fails, the warning light blinks.



Caution

- If the warning light blinks continuously, have your vehicle checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.

Parking brake ON indicator (Red)



The parking brake ON indicator comes on when the parking brake is applied.

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) warning light (Amber)



The Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) warning light turns on when the START/STOP switch is in the ON status and turns off approximately 4 seconds later.

If there is a fault with the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) system, the warning lamp operates as follows:

- ON: EPB (Electric Parking Brake) system is faulty but parking brake works properly
- Flashing: Parking brake not working with warning lamp on



Warning

- If the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) warning light turns on, have your vehicle checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.
- If you need to park the vehicle with the parking brake not functioning due to the failure of the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) in an emergency, stop the vehicle on safe flat ground and place the gear shift lever in the P (parking) position.



Autonomous Emergency Braking System (AEBS) warning light



The AEBS warning light turns on when the START/STOP switch is in the ON status and turns off approximately 4 seconds later.

If the collision with a front vehicle is expected with the AEBS function activated, the AEBS warning light operates as follows along with a warning buzzer.

- Blink: The AEBS is operating (It operates for 5 second when a collision warning is given.)
- Turn on: The AEBS is abnormal

 Refer to "Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB)"* (p.4-137)

Autonomous Emergency Braking System (AEBS) OFF indicator

AEBS OFF

The AEBS OFF indicator turns on when the START/STOP switch is in the ON status and it turns off approximately 4 seconds later.

When the Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) function is deactivated, the AEB OFF indicator light will illuminate, and the AEB function is disabled.

Turn signal/hazard warning lamp



- When you push the light switch down, the left turn signal blinks.
- When you push the light switch up, the right turn signal blinks.
- When you push the hazard warning lamp switch, the left and right turn signals blink at the same time.

4



Illumination ON indicator



When you turn on the head light or the tail light using the light switch, the illumination ON indicator turns on.

Rear fog lamp ON indicator



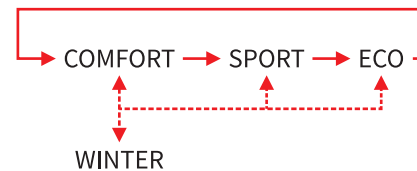
With the headlights turned on, if you rotate the switch in  position, rear fog lights turn on and the switch returns back in front fog light position. Rear and front fog lights turn on simultaneously.

COMFORT mode indicator

COMFORT

Lightly touch the Driving Mode button to select COMFORT (everyday driving) mode, and its indicator lights up.

- Touching the Driving Mode button briefly or long enough changes the mode as follows:



On short touch : 

On long touch : 

 Refer to "Drive mode" (p.4-112)

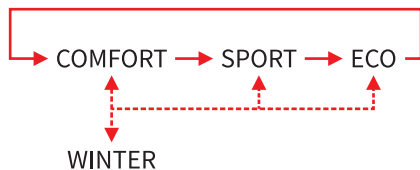


ECO mode indicator

ECO

Lightly touch the Driving Mode button to select ECO (economic driving) mode, and its indicator lights up.

- Touching the Driving Mode button briefly or long enough changes the mode as follows:



On short touch : —→ On long touch : - - ->

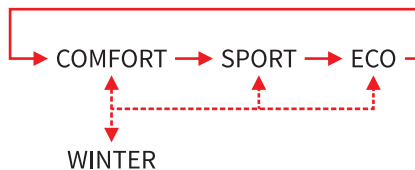
☞ Refer to "Drive mode" (p.4-112)

SPORT mode indicator

SPORT

Lightly touch the Driving Mode button to select SPORT (sporty driving) mode, and its indicator lights up.

- Touching the Driving Mode button briefly or long enough changes the mode as follows:



On short touch : —→ On long touch : - - ->

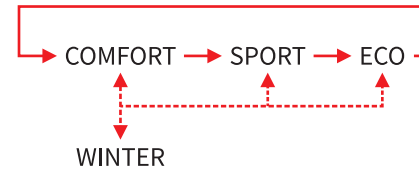
☞ Refer to "Drive mode" (p.4-112)

WINTER mode indicator

WINTER

Touch and hold the Driving Mode button to select WINTER mode, and its indicator lights up.

- Touching the Driving Mode button briefly or long enough changes the mode as follows:



On short touch : —→ On long touch : - - ->

☞ Refer to "Drive mode" (p.4-112)



SHB indicator*



The SHB indicator turns on when the START/STOP switch is in the ON status and turns off approximately 4 seconds later.

When you push the switch in the direction of the instrument cluster with the light switch in the AUTO position, the SHB is activated and the indicator turns on.

 Refer to "Smart High Beam (SHB)"* (p.3-73)



Caution

In any of the following cases, the SHB may not operate normally.

- When the vehicle windshield is damaged or contaminated by dust, mist, fog, sticker, snow, etc
- When the lamp of an oncoming vehicle or a vehicle at the front is damaged
- When an oncoming vehicle or a vehicle at the front is out of your front sight
- When an oncoming vehicle and a vehicle at the front are recognized only partially in an intersection or a winding road
- When there is a light source similar to a vehicle lamp or a reflector at the front
- When an illuminator or a reflector is installed in a construction section, etc.

AUTO HOLD indicator/warning light*

AUTO HOLD

When you press the AUTO HOLD button, the AUTO HOLD system enters the ready mode and the white AUTO HOLD indicator on the instrument cluster turns on.

When you press the AUTO HOLD button again, the AUTO HOLD indicator turns off and the AUTO HOLD system is deactivated.

The color of the AUTO HOLD indicator changes as follows according to the status.

- White indicator: AUTO HOLD system in ready mode
- Green indicator: AUTO HOLD system is activated
- Yellow indicator: AUTO HOLD system is abnormal



Warning

- If the yellow warning light turns on, have your vehicle checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.



LKA (LDW) indicator / warning lamp



Pressing the lane keeping assistance (departure) switch activates the lane keeping and lane departure alerts depending on the vehicle setting.

☞ Refer to "LDW (Lane Departure Warning)"* (p.4-146)

☞ Refer to "Lane Keeping Assistance (LKA)"* (p.4-151)



Warning

- If the yellow warning light turns on or blinks, have your vehicle checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.

Centering lane keeping assist (CLKA) indicator / warning lamp



The centering lane keeping assist (CLKA) ON indicator comes on and CLKA is activated.

- White indicator illuminated: system in standby
- Green indicator illuminated: system normal operation
- Yellow warning lamp illuminated: faulty system

☞ Refer to "Centering Lane Keeping Assist (CLKA)"* (p.4-156)



Warning

- If the amber warning lamp is lit or flashes, have the vehicle checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Dealer or KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.

High beam indicator



When you push the light switch in the direction of the instrument cluster and release it, the high beam turns on and the high beam indicator turns on.



Warning

- Driving the vehicle with the high beam turned on may block the vision of the driver in an oncoming vehicle and interfere with safe driving. Therefore, use the high beam only if the surrounding is too dark or it is difficult to predict the front situation when you drive at night.

4



Vehicle READY indicator



This indicator comes on for about 4 seconds and then goes off when the START/STOP switch is turned ON.

This indicator shows the ready status of the vehicle and changes its color based on the status.

- Solid Green: You can drive the vehicle normally.
- Solid White: The vehicle cannot be driven or in the event of malfunction.
- Blinks Red: Emergency driving.

Warning

- If the vehicle READY indicator doesn't come on solid green or blinks red, have the vehicle checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Dealer or KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.

Service required warning light



This warning light comes on when there is a fault in the units, sensors, actuators, or climate control system related to the EV control system.

Warning

- If the service required warning light comes on while driving or does not go off after starting, have the vehicle checked and serviced immediately at a KG Mobility Dealer or KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.

Power down warning light



This warning light comes on for about 4 seconds and then goes off when the START/STOP switch is turned ON.

For safety reasons, this warning light comes on and the motor power is limited when:

- the SoC of the drive battery is below a specified level or there is a sudden drop of the battery voltage.
- the temperature of the drive motor or HV battery is too high or too low.
- there is a fault in the cooling system.
- there is a problem which makes it impossible to drive normally.

Warning

- Do not abruptly drive off or sharply accelerate vehicle when the power down warning light is ON.
- If the SoC of the drive battery is low, the power down warning light comes on and the motor power is limited. Charge the battery immediately when this warning light is illuminated. Otherwise, the vehicle could descend backward or driving forward will be difficult on a steep hill.



Charging indicator



This indicator comes on for about 4 seconds and then goes off when the START/STOP switch is turned ON.

The charging indicator operates as follows:

- Green indicator lit: Charging plug connected or charging completed
- Green indicator flashing: Charging in progress
- Blue indicator lit: Waiting for scheduled charging
- Red indicator flashing: Faulty charging system or charging plug not connected correctly

HV battery level warning light



This warning light comes on when the SoC of the HV battery is low.

Warning

- If the HV battery level warning light is illuminated, charge the battery immediately at a charging station.
- Charging the battery immediately is necessary, because when the HV battery level warning light is turned on, the DTE is around 20 km. Please keep in mind that the DTE value may vary depending on the driving conditions.

HV battery fault warning light



This warning light comes on when there is a fault in the units or sensors related to the HV battery control system.

Warning

- If the HV battery warning light is turned on, have the vehicle checked and serviced immediately at a KG Mobility Dealer or KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.

4



Virtual Engine Sound System (VESS) warning light



This warning light is turned on when the VESS is malfunctioning.

Warning

- If the VESS warning light is illuminated, have the vehicle checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Dealer or KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.

Door ajar warning light



This warning light comes on when a door or the tailgate is open or ajar.

Warning

- Make sure all doors and the tailgate are fully closed before driving off. Driving with any door and/or the tailgate ajar poses a significant risk to the safety of occupants.

Notice

- The priority of indicators is as follows:
Hood open warning light > Door ajar warning light > Master symbols

Motor room hood open warning light



This warning light comes on when the motor room hood is open or ajar.

Warning

- Check that the motor room hood is fully latched in position before driving. Driving with the motor room hood open can result in damage to your vehicle or cause a serious accident by obstructing your view.

Notice

- The priority of indicators is as follows:
Hood open warning light > Door ajar warning light > Master symbols



Smart tailgate indicator



This indicator comes on for about 4 seconds and then goes off when the START/STOP switch is turned ON.

The smart tailgate indicator can be turned on by selecting the item Smart Tailgate under Vehicle Settings menu of the hypervisor control panel.

- Hypervisor control panel setting (Indicator ON)
To use this indicator function, select the item Smart Tailgate under Vehicle Settings (🔧) → Door / Tailgate from the hypervisor control panel.

Master symbol



The master symbol is turned on when there are warning messages stored in the vehicle system.

If the master symbol is illuminated, be sure to check the vehicle warning message.

Notice

- You can check the vehicle warning message(s) from the instrument cluster.
- When there is no warning message this symbol is not displayed.
- The priority of indicators is as follows:
Hood open warning light > Door ajar warning light > Master symbols

Automatic Lane Change Assist (ALC) Indicator Lamp



Automatic lane change assist operates based on your vehicle's settings.

- White indicator illuminated: waiting for automatic lane change
- Green indicator illuminated: automatic lane change in operation
- Yellow warning lamp illuminated: faulty automatic lane change



Warning

- If the amber warning lamp is lit or flashes, have the vehicle checked and serviced at our authorized service center.

Notice

- Automatic lane change is a feature that operates in conjunction with navigation to operate during intelligent cruise control (iACC) on the highway.



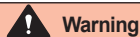
Driver Attention Alert (DAW) Warning Lamp



If inattentive driving by the driver is detected, the corresponding warning lamp comes on.

Distracted driving detection is based on driver patterns (zigzagging, sharp steering, reduced steering wheel torque, rapid deceleration, continuous driving).

- Orange warning lamp flashing: Driver Attention Alert activated



Warning

- **The warning level resets when you turn off the ignition or open the driver's seat belt and driver's door.**

Driver Attention Alert (DAW) Failure Warning Lamp



The failure warning lamp turns on when the START/STOP switch is in the ON status and turns off approximately 4 seconds later.

This warning lamp comes on when there is a fault in a unit, sensor, etc. related to the Driver Attention Alert system.

Headlamp angle indicator



The headlamp angle can be adjusted based on the front/rear tilt of the vehicle. The current headlamp angle is always displayed on the instrument panel.

Over speed warning light (GCC only)

120
km/h

The warning light flashes with repeated (5 times) buzzer sound when the vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h.

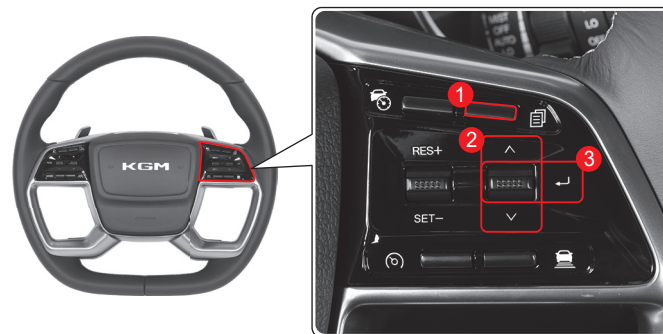
If the warning light flashes, slow down for your own safety.

Indicator panel on instrument cluster

Main menu

You can check the driving information of the vehicle including mileage and driving time or change the settings through the main menu from the display of the instrument cluster.

- 1 Press the  (menu) button on the right side of the steering wheel.
 - The display moves to the main menu list.
- 2 Move to the desired submenu by raising or lowering the  (moving) lever.
- 3 Press the  (select) button briefly, highway auto lane change function activates/deactivates
Pressing and holding down the  (selection) button resets the driving information of the vehicle.



Button and lever	Operation	Function
1  Menu button	Press briefly	• Move to the main menu
2  Moving lever	Raise/lower briefly	• Move to the submenu (mode)
3  Selection button	Press briefly	• Highway auto lane change function activates/deactivates.
	Press and hold down	• Reset the driving information of the vehicle

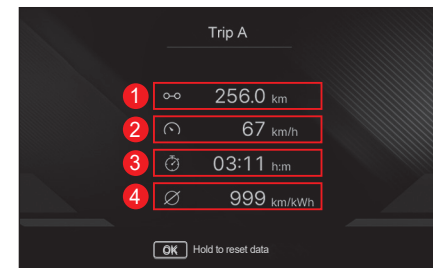


Main menu list

Main menu	Description
 TRIP computer info	• Trip A (Mileage/average speed/driving time) • Trip B (Mileage/average speed/driving time) • Electricity efficiency (average / instant) • Power consumption (percentage used to drive / percentage used for other purposes / remaining usage) • Charging info (quick charging / normal (stationary) / normal (portable)) • Energy flow chart • Tire pressure (TPMS) display • Vehicle alerts (current vehicle alert status)
 Driving assistance info	• Displays operation status of driving assist system
 Navigation info	• Display linked to navigation
 AV info	• Display linked to AV

Trip computer information

Mileage/average speed/driving time



The distance that the vehicle traveled (km, mile), average speed (km/h, MPH) and driving time (hh:mm) are displayed

① Mileage (A/B)

The distance vehicle traveled after resetting Trip A/B is displayed.

The distance to be displayed ranges between 0.0 km (mile) and 9999.9 km (mile).

When the distance exceeds 9999.9 km (mile), it returns to 0.0 km (mile).

② Average speed (A/B)

The average speed calculated based on the time and distance and it is updated every 10 seconds.



③ Driving time (A/B)

The time to be displayed ranges between 0:00 and 99:59, and when the time exceeds this range, it returns to 0:00.

Resetting the mileage/average speed/driving time

Press and hold down the  (select) button in the current mode.

The average speed is reset to “---” and the driving time is reset to “0:00”.

Fuel economy



① Average fuel economy

This value indicates the average fuel economy calculated from the total power consumption and distance traveled after resetting (---).

The fuel economy represents the distance (km, mile) traveled per 1 kWh, and it is updated every 10 seconds.

Display range

- Less than 100 : 0 to 99.9 (km/kWh, mi/kWh)
- 100 or more : 100 to 999 (km/kWh, mi/kWh)

② Instantaneous fuel economy

The instantaneous fuel economy is calculated from the distance traveled and the amount of power consumption.

This value is displayed when the vehicle is driven at 5 km/h or more and will range from 0 to 12 km/kWh (0 to 8 mi/kWh).

To reset the average fuel consumption

Press and hold the  (select) button in current mode.

It will be reset to “---” and new average value will appear after driving for some time.

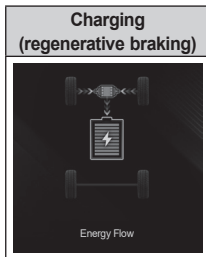
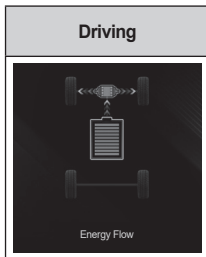
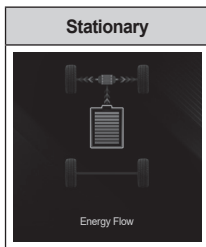
4

Notice

- The distance and power consumption do not count up while charging the battery.
- The initial values appear after driving not less than 50 m or 10 seconds.
- To change the settings for average fuel economy auto reset move to  (Vehicle Settings) → cluster → auto reset of average fuel economy (OFF / Resetting when charging / Resetting when starting the engine).



Power flow



The power flow shows the charging status of the vehicle when driving and charging.

- Stationary: motor not running (no energy flow)
- Driving: motor running (energy flows from battery to wheel)
- Charging (regenerative braking): charging HV battery using regenerative braking when decelerating (energy flows from battery to wheel)

TPMS status



A message indicating the status of tire pressure is displayed.

- If the tire pressure is normal, "Tire pressure OK" is displayed.
- If the tire pressure is abnormal, the corresponding message according to the degree of abnormal tire pressure is displayed, and this message stays on or blinks depending on the tire pressure condition.

☞ Refer to "Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)*" (p.2-29)

Notice

- **Approximately 15 seconds after entering the tire pressure mode, it will automatically switch to "Mileage / Average speed / Driving time" mode.**

Driving assist Menu

Driving assist



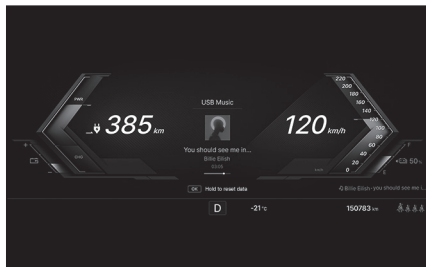
When detecting the lanes according to the vehicle condition, the detected lane is displayed in white and alarm can be issued at the detected lane. Depending on the operating system, the front vehicle is displayed.

The following are the systems that can display the front vehicle in the driving assistance menu:

- Lane departure warning (LDW)
- Lane keeping assistance (LKA)
- Centering lane keeping assist (CLKA)
- Hands-off display
- Adaptive cruise control (ACC)
- Emergency lane keeping (ELK)
- Autonomous emergency braking (AEB)
- Automatic lane change (ALC)
- Intelligent speed assistance (ISA)



AV screen



- Bluetooth hands-free mode
- Bluetooth music
- Car player
- USB music
- FM
- AM / AM2
- Smart Mirroring
- DAB / DAB1 / DAB2
- DAB Radio

TBT (Turn By Turn)



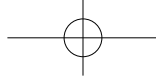
The navigation screen information is displayed partially in linkage with the navigation system.
If the system is not interlocked with the navigation system.



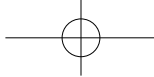
General Settings

- General settings may have different menu configuration rankings depending on the specification (all settings are reset to factory default).
- To view the General settings, enter General Settings in the hypervisor.

General Settings Menu	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Radio	Auto Frequency	☐ OFF ☒ ON	-
	FM Noise Filter	☐ Max. ☒ Default ☐ Min.	-
Display	Illumination	☒ Auto ☐ Daylight ☐ Night ☐ Vehicle Sync ☐ Navigation Sync	-
	Background image settings	☒ Background image 1 ☐ Background image 2 ☐ Background image 3	-
Sound	Fadar/Balance		-
	EQ		-
	Other Settings	☒ Beep Sound ☐ Reverse Sync Volume ☐ Maintaining the current volume	-
Clock	Time		-
	Clock	☒ Analogue ☐ Digital(12 hours) ☐ Digital(24 hours)	-



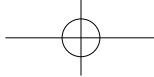
General Settings Menu	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Language	Language	Sets H/U Languages (English and other 16 languages) ☐ Reset	-
System	Version	-	-
	Storage Space	-	-
	Factory Reset	☐ Confirm ☐ Cancel	-
	System Update	☐ Confirm ☐ Cancel	-
	Navigation Map Update	☐ Confirm ☐ Cancel	-
	Navigation	○ Manual Start ● Auto Start ☐ Reset	-



Vehicle Settings

- Vehicle settings may have different menu configuration rankings depending on the specification (all settings are reset to factory default).
- To view the vehicle settings, enter Vehicle Settings in the hypervisor.

Vehicle settings menu	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Driving Assistance	Forward Safety Settings	Forward Collision Warning	☐ SLOW ☒ NORMAL ☐ FAST
		Forward Collision -Avoidance Assist	☐ OFF ☒ ON
		Warning Sounds	☐ OFF ☒ ON
	Lane Safety Settings	Lane Keeping Assist	☒ lane departure warning ☐ lane keeping assist
		Emergency Steering Assist	☐ OFF ☒ ON
		Warning Sounds	☐ OFF ☒ ON
	Intelligent Cruise Control	Operation Mode	☒ COMFORT ☐ NORMAL ☐ DYNAMIC
		Highway Comfort Driving	☐ OFF ☒ ON
		Highway Lane Change Assist	☐ OFF ☒ ON



Vehicle settings menu	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Driving Assistance	Intelligent Speed Control	○ OFF ○ Speed Limit Warning ● Speed Limit Assist	-
	Driver Attention Warning	Front Vehicle Departure Warning	○ OFF ● ON
		Safety Distance Warning	○ OFF ● ON
	Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist	○ OFF ● Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance warning ○ Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist	-
	Reverse Collision- Avoidance assist	○ OFF ● Reverse Collision-Avoidance warning ○ Reverse Collision- Avoidance assist	-
	Rear- End Collision Warning	● OFF ○ ON	-
	Safe Exit Warning	○ OFF ● ON	-
	Speed Limit Warning	○ OFF ● ON	-



Vehicle settings menu	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Cluster	Welcome \ Good-bye sound	● OFF ○ ON	-
	Auto reset of average fuel economy	● OFF ○ Resetting when charging ○ Resetting when starting the engine	-
	Fuel economy unit	● Km/kWh ○ kWh/100km	-
	Temperature unit	● °C ○ °F	-
	Tire Air pressure units	● Psi ○ kPa ○ bar ○ kgf/cm2	-
	Display settings	● Auto change ○ COMFORT ○ ECO ○ SPORT	-
	Beep type	● Basic ○ Nature ○ Classic ○ Trendy ○ Korean ○ Luxury	-



Vehicle settings menu	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Cluster	Beep volume	● Level 1 (80) ○ Level 2 (90) ○ Level 3 (100)	-
Climate	After blow	○ OFF ● ON	-
	Auto Ventilation	○ OFF ● ON	-
	Dehumidification	○ OFF ● ON	-



Vehicle settings menu	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Door/Tailgate	Auto Locking	○ OFF ● While driving ○ When shifting to R, N or D gear	-
	Auto Unlocking	○ OFF ○ When the engine turns off ● When shifting to P gear	-
	Auto Locking Speed Settings	● 10km ○ 20km ○ 30km ○ 40km ○ 50km	-
	Locking/Unlocking Alert Sounds	○ OFF ● ON	-
	Double click unlocking	○ OFF ● ON	-
	Smart door Auto locking	○ OFF ● ON	-
	Power tailgate	○ OFF ● ON	-
	Smart tailgate	○ OFF ● ON	-



Vehicle settings menu	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Light	Leaving home headlamp	● OFF	-
	Coming home headlamp	○ 10 seconds ○ 20 seconds ○ 30 seconds	-
	Interior Lighting	Default color	Setting mood lamp color Setting mood lamp brightness [+] [-]
		User color	Setting mood lamp color Setting mood lamp brightness [+] [-] 2 colors recently selected by user
		Usage settings	○ OFF ● ON □ Daylight OFF
Convenience features	Conditioning Mode	Start Conditioning Mode	-
	Utility Mode	○ OFF ● ON	-
	Steering Wheel Alignment Alert	○ OFF ● ON	-
	Wiper Mode Display	○ OFF ● ON	-
	Light Mode Display	○ OFF ● ON	-
	Approach Welcome	○ OFF ● ON	-



Vehicle settings menu	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Convenience features	Auto Approach Welcome	○ OFF ● ON	-
	Long-Term Parking Mode	○ OFF ● ON	-
	Wireless Charging System	○ OFF ● ON	
	Number Plate Display	Displaying vehicle number stored by keypad	
Service Interval Reminder	Service Interval Reminder	● Disabling service interval reminder ○ Enabling service interval reminder	-
	Brake fluid	-	-
	Tire	-	-
	Other	-	-
Virtual engine sound	Using locking/unlocking sounds	○ OFF ● ON	-
	Virtual engine sound type	● Virtual engine sound 1 ○ Virtual engine sound 2	-
Reset settings	Confirm / cancel	-	-



Message on the display of the instrument cluster

The images in the below messages are based on the standard instrument cluster for visibility and depend on the instrument panel specifications.

Item	Message	Activation conditions
Welcome message and sound		- If you tick the box at Cluster → Welcome\Goodbye Sound → ON under (Vehicle Settings) in the instrument cluster, this message is displayed for 4 seconds when the theft deterrent mode is deactivated and the driver door is open and closed. - When you change the START/STOP switch to the ON status while the message is being displayed, the message disappears but the sound is played to the end.
ICE warning light		- The ICE warning symbol is displayed when the ambient temperature is 3°C or less. - ICE warning symbol is turned off when the ambient temperature is 5°C or higher.
Vehicle warning log		- You can see the vehicle warning messages from the instrument cluster. - When the warning message is available at the vehicle, the custom symbol is changed to the master symbol. - When the warning message is not available, the corresponding item is not displayed.



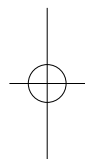
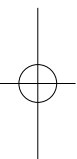
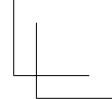
Item	Message	Activation conditions
Smart key warning	 The smart key is inside the vehicle.	When you about to close the door with another authenticated smart key or door handle switch while all the doors are closed and the authenticated smart key is inside the vehicle, this message will be displayed for 5 seconds.
	The Smart Door Auto Lock function is not available if an extra key is stored inside the vehicle.	If two or more authenticated smart keys are in the vehicle when a door is opened (excluding the hood and tailgate) after the vehicle is turned off, this message is displayed for approximately 5 seconds.
	 The smart key is not inside the vehicle.	If no smart key is in the vehicle with the START/STOP switch in the ON status or when the vehicle is running, this message is displayed.
	 Pressing the start button with the smart key.	If no authenticated smart key is detected when the START/STOP switch is pressed, this message is displayed for approximately 5 seconds.

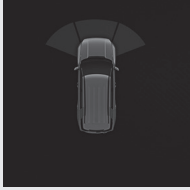


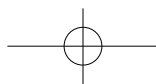
Item	Message	Activation conditions
Smart key warning	 Check the Smart Key system.	• If the vehicle power control from the smart key module or the START/STOP switch is abnormal or an incorrect signal or no signal is received after the smart key is authenticated, this message is displayed for approximately 5 seconds. • If the message persists, visit a nearby KGM Authorized Service Center.
	 Replace the Smart Key battery.	• If the battery level of the smart key is low with the auto lock function disabled, this message is displayed for approximately 5 seconds.
	Replace the Smart Key battery. Smart Door Auto Lock function deactivated. Set it again after replacement.	• If the battery level of the smart key is low with the auto lock function enabled, this message is displayed for approximately 5 seconds. • If you attempt to set the auto lock function using the smart key when the battery level of the smart key is low, this message is displayed for approximately 5 seconds. • If the message is displayed, the auto lock is disabled. After replacing the smart key battery, tick the box at Door / Tailgate → Smart door auto locking under  (Vehicle settings) in the hypervisor control panel.
	The engine will not start while the vehicle is charging. Stop or release charging to start the engine.	• A message will appear when you press the ignition switch to start the vehicle while it is charging.

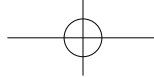


Item	Message	Activation conditions
START/STOP switch warning	 Depressing the brake pedal and starting the engine.	- For the vehicles with A/T, when the ignition switch is turned to ACC position a second time by pressing the ignition switch continuously without depressing the brake pedal, this message is displayed for about 5 seconds. - This message informs the driver that the vehicle can be started only if the START/STOP switch is pressed with the brake depressed.
	 Power will be OFF to prevent battery discharge.	This message is displayed for approximately 5 seconds in order to prevent the vehicle battery from being depleted when the START/STOP switch in the ACC status is maintained for 12 minutes or more or the driver seat door is opened with the START/STOP switch in the ACC status.

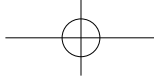


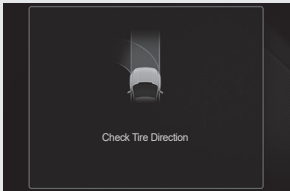
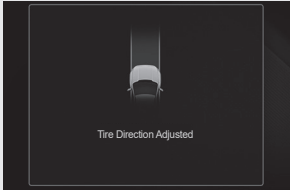
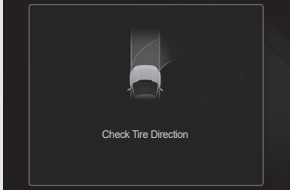
Item	Message	Activation conditions
Front/rear obstacle detection	If it is in the R (reverse) position	
	LV3  LV2  LV1 	- Rear PAS (Parking Assist System) (When the SBW (shift by wire) is placed in the R (reverse) position with the START/STOP switch in the ON status) - When you move the SBW (shift by wire) to the R (reverse) position, the warning buzzer sounds briefly once, and when an obstacle near the vehicle is detected, the position and distance from the obstacle are displayed in 4 levels (0~3). - In Level 1 of the rear PAS, the detection result of the front PAS is not displayed, and only the vehicle shape is displayed in Level 0 of the rear PAS. - When the obstacle detection sensor is abnormal, “▲” is displayed for the relevant sensor.
	LV0  Error 	
	If it is in the D (driving) position	
	LV3  LV2  Error 	- Front PAS (Parking Assist System) (When the SBW (shift by wire) is placed in the D (drive) position with the START/STOP switch in the ON status) - When an obstacle is detected in front of the vehicle, the position and distance from the obstacle are displayed in level 3 and level 2, and such position and distance are not displayed in Level 1 and level 0. - The front parking assist system is not activated when the vehicle speed is higher than 15 km/h. 👁 Refer to “Parking assist system*” (p.4-128) - When the obstacle detection sensor is abnormal, “▲” is displayed for the relevant sensor.





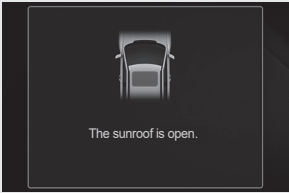
Item	Message		Activation conditions
Display of door/ hood/tailgate opening	Driver door open	Passenger door open	Displays which door is open.
			
	Rear left door open	Rear right door open	
			
	Hood open (flashing)	Tailgate open (flashing)	
			



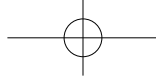
Item	Message	Activation conditions
Display of tire alignment status	5 levels on the left 	• This message is displayed in level 1 to 5 according to the tire alignment status when the START/ STOP switch is switched from the OFF status to the ON status. • This message is not displayed when the tire alignment status is level 0. • The message is displayed for 5 seconds up to level 2 and the message is displayed continuously until the condition is met for level 3 to 5. • This message is displayed only when the SBW (shift by wire) is in the P (parking) or the N (neutral) position.
	0 level 	
	5 levels on the right 	

4



Item	Message	Activation conditions
Exterior lamp ON alert		This message is displayed if the exterior lamp is on when the vehicle is turned off and the driver seat door is opened.
Sunroof open warning		A message will be displayed if the sunroof is open after the ignition is turned off.
Smart tailgate indicator		The smart tailgate indicator turns on when Door/Tailgate → Smart Tailgate → ON is marked from the  (Vehicle Settings) on the hypervisor control panel.
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) ON/OFF		This message is displayed for approximately 5 seconds depending on the status of the ESC OFF switch.

4-58 Starting and driving

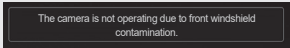
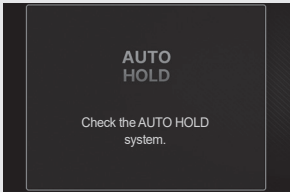
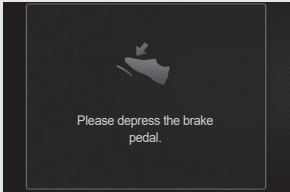


Item	Message	Activation conditions
Electronic stability control (ESC) system warning	 Check the ESC system.	- If the ESC system is abnormal, the warning light turns on and this message is displayed 3 seconds after the vehicle is started. - If the message persists, visit a nearby KG Mobility Authorized Service Center and have your vehicle checked and serviced.
EBD system warning RBC system warning BBC system warning	 Check the EBD system.	- If the EBD system is abnormal, the warning light turns on and the message is displayed 3 seconds later after the vehicle is started. - If the message persists, visit a nearby KG Mobility Authorized Service Center and have your vehicle checked and serviced.
ABS system warning	 Check the ABS system.	- If the ABS system is abnormal, the warning light turns on and the message is displayed 3 seconds later after the vehicle is started. - If the message persists, visit a nearby KG Mobility Authorized Service Center and have your vehicle checked and serviced.

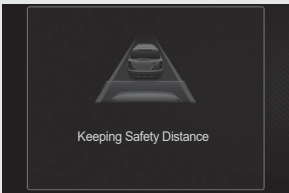


Item	Message	Activation conditions
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)	 Close the doors, hood, and trunk, and fasten your seatbelt.	This message is displayed when you press the accelerator pedal with the condition for automatic release not met while the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) is applied or the AUTO HOLD function is activated.
	 Shifting to parking brake.	This message is displayed when the AUTO HOLD operation status is changed to the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) status.
	 Apply the brake immediately.	This message is displayed for approximately 5 seconds when the occurrence of vehicle slip or EPB failure is detected with AUTO HOLD activated. However, this message is not displayed if the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) activated again automatically when a vehicle slip occurs, preventing the occurrence of vehicle slip.
	 Check the EPB system.	- When the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) system is abnormal, this message is displayed and the relevant warning light blinks. - If the message persists, visit a nearby KG Mobility Authorized Service Center and have your vehicle checked and serviced.



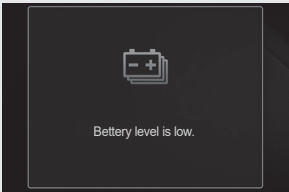
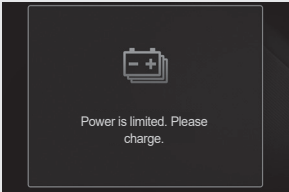
Item	Message	Activation conditions
Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB)		- When the Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) activation condition is met, a message saying "Collision Warning" is displayed for 5 seconds. The AEB warning light also blinks for 5 seconds. - When the system operates additionally while the message is being displayed, the same message is displayed for 5 seconds.
		If the part of the windshield where the Front Camera Module (FCM) is installed is contaminated with dust so that the lanes, preceding vehicles or people cannot be recognized, this toast pop-up message is displayed for 5 seconds.
Auto hold		- If the auto hold function is abnormal, the message is displayed. - If the message persists, visit a nearby KG Mobility Authorized Service Center and have your vehicle checked and serviced.
		This message is displayed when you operate the EPB switch without depressing the brake pedal for deactivating the AUTO HOLD function.



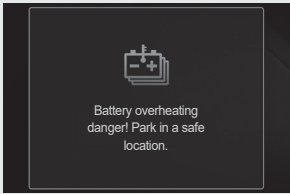
Item	Message	Activation conditions
Safety distance warning		• This function is enabled when you tick the box at Driving Assistance → Driver Attention Warning → Safety distance warning under  (Vehicle Settings) in the hypervisor control panel. • The message is displayed when your vehicle is approaching the preceding vehicle.

Safety Distance Warning (SDW)

Function to display the message to the driver when it is determined that safety distance is not secured by analyzing the information such as distance to front vehicle, speed and position

Battery low alert		• This message is displayed for approximately 5 seconds when the HV battery level is low.
		• This message is displayed for approximately 5 seconds when the HV battery SoC drops below 3% before the motor power is limited.



Item	Message	Activation conditions
Battery temperature abnormal alert		This message is displayed for approximately 5 seconds when both the temperature and SoC of the HV battery are too low.
		This message is displayed for approximately 5 seconds when the temperature of the HV battery is too high.



Item	Message	Activation conditions
Abnormal charging alert	 Charging failed due to a malfunction of external AC charger.	• This message is displayed for approximately 5 seconds if a fault has developed in the external slow charger while charging the HV battery.
	 Charging failed due to a malfunction of external DC charger.	• This message is displayed for approximately 5 seconds if a fault has developed in the external fast charger while charging the HV battery.
	 Charging stopped. Check the cable connection.	• This message is displayed for approximately 5 seconds if a fault has developed in the charge cable while charging the HV battery.
	 Charging failed due to a charging system malfunction.	• This message is displayed for approximately 5 seconds if a fault has developed in the charging system while charging the HV battery.

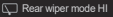
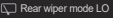
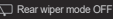


Item	Graphic	Activation conditions
Regenerative braking level		• The regenerative braking default setting is set to either level 1 or level 2, and if you use the paddle shift lever to change the regenerative braking, you can set it from level 0 to level 3 or SMART regenerative braking. • SMART regenerative braking is a feature that adjusts the amount of regenerative braking based on the distance of the vehicle in front of you, providing you with driving comfort. • Since SMART regenerative braking works independently of the brake system, it may not provide sufficient braking power, so be sure to depress the brake pedal for safe stopping.



Item	Message	Activation conditions
Hill Descent Control (HDC) ON/OFF	 Hill Descent Control Off  Hill Descent Control On	- This message is displayed for approximately 5 seconds according to the Hill Descent Control (HDC) ON/OFF status. - The color of the indicator changes according to the HDC operation status. - Green indicator turns on: The HDC is in ready status. - Green indicator blinks: The HDC is operating. - Red warning light turns on: The HDC system is overheated and abnormal.
HDC System	 Check the Hill Descent Control system.	- If the HDC (Hill Descent Control) system is faulty, this message is displayed. - If the message stays on, have the system checked and serviced at a nearest KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.
	 Not in a condition to operate the Hill Descent Control function.	If the operating conditions of the HDC system are not met, this message is displayed.
Windshield wiper mode	 Front wiper mode AUTO  Front wiper mode HI  Front wiper mode LO  Front wiper mode OFF	The current status of the windshield wiper among 4 modes is displayed for approximately 5 seconds according to the position of the wiper operation lever.



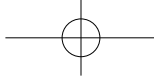
Item	Message	Activation conditions
Rear window wiper mode	  	The current status of the rear window wiper among 3 modes is displayed for approximately 5 seconds according to the position of the rear window wiper operation lever.
Steering wheel heater	 	The message is displayed for 5 seconds according to the steering wheel heater ON/OFF status with the START/STOP switch in the ON status or with the vehicle started.
Reminder from wireless phone charger	 Phone is on the wireless charger.	If any phone is on the wireless charging pad after the ignition is off (ignition switch in ACC or OFF position) while the wireless phone charger is operating with the ignition switch in ON position, a reminder message "The phone is on the wireless phone charger." is displayed on the instrument cluster. (However, reminder does not work when changing the ignition switch from the OFF position to ACC position even if the wireless phone charger is operating.)

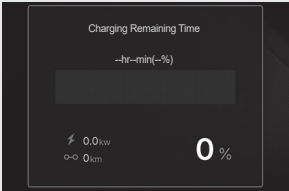
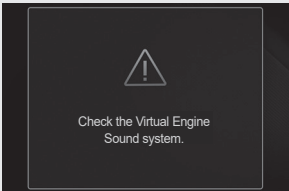
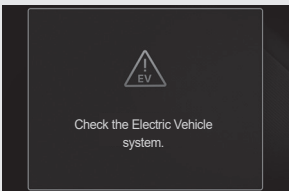


Item	Message	Activation conditions
Shift By Wire (SBW)	 Check the gear lever.	• If there is a fault in the SBW system, this message is displayed. • If the message stays on, have the system checked and serviced at a nearest KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.
	 Not in shifting conditions.	• When operating the electric shift lever (SBW), the message is displayed if the shift condition is not met.
	 After parking, shift to the P position	• If the vehicle is not completely stopped and the P (park) button is pressed, a corresponding message is displayed.
	 Depress the brake pedal and shift.	• When the shift by wire (SBW) is operated, the message is displayed if the shift by wire is operated without the brake applied.

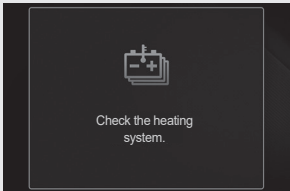
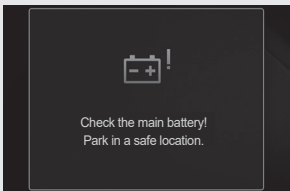


Item	Message	Activation conditions
Shift By Wire (SBW)	 Check the 'P' button.	This message is displayed when the START/STOP switch is depressed while charging the battery.
Charging connector and charging door	 Start the engine after removing the charging connector.	If the vehicle is started by pressing the ignition switch while the charging connector is connected, a corresponding message will be displayed.
	 Charging cover is open.	This message is displayed when the charging door is opened after starting the vehicle.

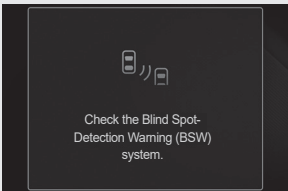
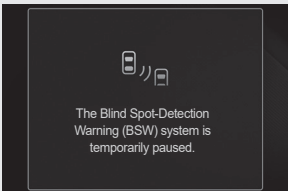


Item	Message	Activation conditions
Remaining charging time		When the HV battery is charging with the START/STOP switch ON, the system displays the charging status information including the time remaining until fully charged.
Virtual engine sound system alert		This message is displayed for approximately 5 seconds when there is a fault in the virtual engine sound system (VESS).
EV system alert		This message is displayed for approximately 5 seconds when there is a fault in the high-voltage electronic system.

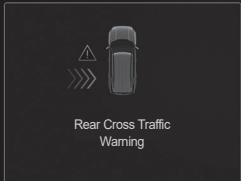
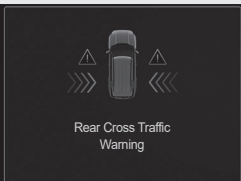


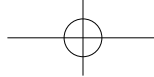
Item	Message	Activation conditions
Paddle shifter		This message is displayed for approximately 5 seconds if you operate the paddle shifter to change the regenerative braking level while the operating conditions are not met.
Heating system alert		This message is displayed for approximately 5 seconds when there is a fault in the EV heating system.
HV battery alert		This message is displayed for approximately 5 seconds when there is a fault in the HV battery.



Item	Message	Activation conditions
Blind Spot-Collision Warning (BSW) system		This message is displayed for approximately 5 seconds according to the ON/OFF status of BSW system.
		- If the rear and side warning system is abnormal, this message is displayed. - If the message persists, visit a nearby KG Mobility Authorized Service Center and have your vehicle checked and serviced.
		This message is displayed if the sensor cannot detect the rear, left and right sides with the BSW system activated. (When there are foreign materials on the outside or inside of the rear bumper, a trailer or other equipment is installed in the rear of the vehicle, the width of the road is wide, it snows or rains too much and etc.)



Item	Message	Activation conditions
Rear Cross Traffic Warning (RCTW)	 Rear Cross Traffic Warning	During Rear Collision Traffic Warning (RCTW) operation, a message is displayed when a vehicle is moved from the rear left/right side (risk of collision) is detected.
	 Rear Cross Traffic Warning	
	 Rear Cross Traffic Warning	

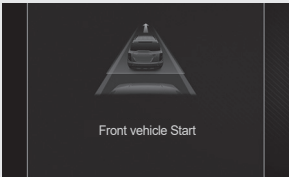


Item	Message	Activation conditions
Rear Cross Traffic Assist (RCTA)	 Please depress the brake pedal.	When the vehicle is reversing, a message is displayed if a vehicle approaching within the rear collision traffic assistance area detects a risk of collision. At this time, braking assistance is provided with a warning sound to support collision avoidance.
	 Please depress the brake pedal.	
	 Please depress the brake pedal.	



Item	Message	Activation conditions
Blind-Spot Collision Avoidance Assist	 Blind-Spot Collision Avoidance Assist	During Blind-Spot Collision Avoidance Assist (BSA) operation, if a collision risk is detected, a corresponding warning is displayed to perform braking assistance.
	 Blind-Spot Collision Avoidance Assist	
Rear Collision Warning (RCW)	 Rear-End Collision Warning	When Rear Collision Warning (RCW) is activated, it warns the driver and flashes the hazard warning light to alert vehicles behind if there is a possibility of a collision with an approaching vehicle from behind.



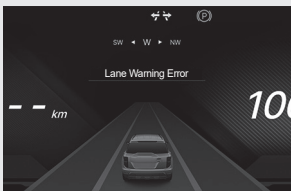
Item	Message	Activation conditions
Safety exit warning (SEW)		If you are about to open the door to leave the vehicle when a vehicle is approaching from the rear side, the vehicle exit alert system displays a message and generates a beep sound.
		
		
Front vehicle start warning (FVSW)		This function is enabled when you tick the box at Driving Assistance → Driving Attention Warning → Front Vehicle Departure Warning → ON/OFF under  (Vehicle Settings) in the hypervisor control panel.

Front Vehicle Start Warning (FVSW)

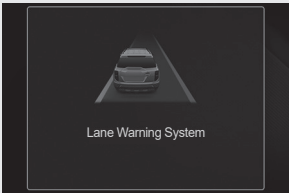
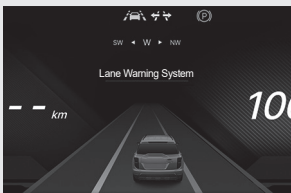
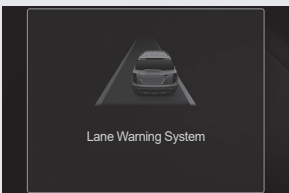
A function to emit a buzzer and display a message if the driver does not depart the vehicle after the front vehicle has departed and moved a certain distance

4-76 Starting and driving

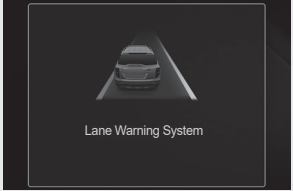
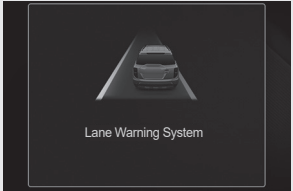


Item	Driving assistance	Message	Activation conditions
LDW (Lane Departure Warning)		-	Displayed when the lane departure warning system is disabled.
		-	The lane marker is shaded when the vehicle is driven at less than 40 kph (low speed conditions) or more than 175 kph (high speed conditions), or both lane lines are not detected.
		-	This message is displayed when the LDW is unavailable.
		-	- This message is displayed and remains on when LDW is not functioning properly. - This message pops up 3 seconds after the vehicle is started, when LDW is not functioning properly. - If the message stays on, have the vehicle checked and serviced at the nearest KG Mobility Dealer or KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.



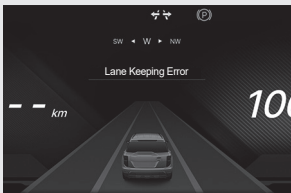
Item	Driving assistance	Message	Activation conditions
Lane departure warning (LDW) lane display area		-	Even though the left lane is detected only, the detected left lane will be displayed (green). (Pop-up messages will not be displayed.)
			If only the left lane is detected and the driver does not activate the turn signal, or if the driver turns on the right turn signal and the vehicle approaches the left lane, that lane flashes (green ↔ red) on the display.
		-	Even though the right lane is detected only, the detected right lane will be displayed (green). (Pop-up messages will not be displayed.)
			If only the right lane is detected and the driver does not activate the turn signal, or if the driver turns on the left turn signal and the vehicle approaches the right lane, that lane flashes (green ↔ red) on the display.



Item	Driving assistance	Message	Activation conditions
Lane departure warning (LDW) lane display area		-	If both lanes are detected, both detected lanes are displayed (green). (Pop-up messages will not be displayed.)
			When both lanes are detected and the driver is not using a turn signal, or when a vehicle approaches a lane, with a turn signal activated in the opposite direction from the direction of travel, the corresponding lane will blink (green ↔ red) on the display.
			

4

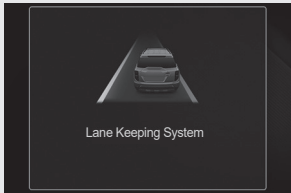
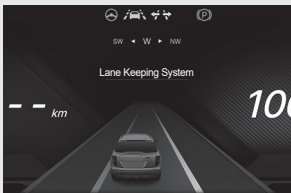
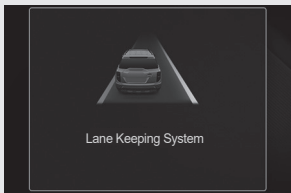


Item	Driving assistance	Message	Activation conditions
Lane keeping assistance (LKAS)		-	Displays when Lane Keeping Assist (LKAS) is disabled.
		-	The lanes are shaded when the vehicle is driven at a low speed of less than 40km/h or at a high speed of 175km/h or higher or both lanes are not detected.
		-	Displays if the Lane Keeping Assist (LKAS) is unable to operate.
		-	- If Lane Keeping Assist (LKAS) is faulty, it is indicated by a pop-up message 3 seconds after startup. - If the message stays on, have the system checked and serviced at a nearest our authorized service center.



Item	Driving assistance	Message	Activation conditions
Lane keeping assist (LKAS) lane display area		-	Even though the left lane is detected only, the detected left lane is displayed (green). (Pop-up messages will not be displayed.)
			- If only the left lane is detected and the vehicle approaches the left lane, that lane will blink (green ↔ red) on the display. - If the driver operates the turn signal while the LKAS system is activated, the LKAS system enters a standby mode.
		-	Even though the right lane is detected only, the detected right lane is displayed (green). (Pop-up messages will not be displayed.)
			- If only the right lane is detected and the vehicle approaches the right lane, that lane will blink (green ↔ red) on the display. - If the driver operates the turn signal while the LKAS system is activated, the LKAS system enters a standby mode.



Item	Driving assistance	Message	Activation conditions
Lane keeping assist (LKAS) lane display area		-	If both lanes are detected, both detected lanes are displayed (green). (Pop-up messages will not be displayed.)
			- If both lanes are detected and the vehicle approaches the left or right lane without turning on the turn signal, the corresponding lane will be flashed between green and red alternately. - If the driver operates the turn signal while the LKAS system is activated, the LKAS system enters a standby mode.
			



Item	Driving assistance	Message	Activation conditions
Centering lane keeping assist (CLKA)		-	Displayed when Centering Lane Keeping Assist (CLKA) is deactivated.
		-	The lanes are shaded when the vehicle is driven at a low speed of less than 1km/h or at a high speed of 180 km/h or higher or both lanes are not detected.
		-	Displayed when the Centering Lane Keeping Assist (CLKA) cannot be operated.
		-	- This message is always displayed in the event of the faulty Centering Lane Keeping Assist (CLKA). - Displayed as pop-up message 3 seconds after the start-up when there is a fault in the Centering Lane Keeping Assist (CLKA). - If the message stays on, have the system checked and serviced at a nearest our authorized service center.



Item	Driving assistance	Message	Activation conditions
Centering Lane Keeping Assist (CLKA) lane display area		-	If only the left lane is detected with Centering Lane Keeping Assist (CLKA) activated, the detected left lane is displayed (in green) with an amber indicator in the center. (Pop-up messages will not be displayed.)
			- If only the left lane is detected and the vehicle approaches the left lane, that lane will blink (green ↔ red) on the display. - If the driver operates the turn signal while Centering Lane Keeping Assist (CLKA) system is activated, CLKA system enters a standby mode.
		-	If only the right lane is detected with Centering Lane Keeping Assist (CLKA) activated, the detected right lane is displayed (in green) with an amber indicator in the center. (Pop-up messages will not be displayed.)
			- If only the right lane is detected and the vehicle approaches the right lane, that lane will blink (green ↔ red) on the display. - If the driver operates the turn signal while Centering Lane Keeping Assist (CLKA) system is activated, CLKA system enters a standby mode.

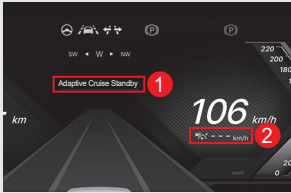
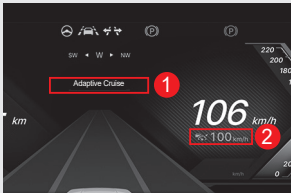
4-84 Starting and driving



Item	Driving assistance	Message	Activation conditions
Centering lane keeping assist (CLKA) lane display area		-	If both lanes are detected with Centering Lane Keeping Assist (CLKA) activated, both lanes are displayed (in green) with an amber indicator in the center. (Pop-up messages will not be displayed.)
			- If both lanes are detected and the vehicle approaches the left or right lane without turning on the turn signal, the corresponding lane will be flashed between green and red alternately. - If the driver operates the turn signal while Centering Lane Keeping Assist (CLKA) system is activated, CLKA system enters a standby mode.

4



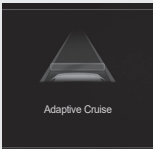
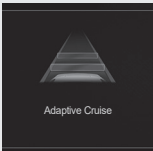
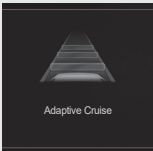
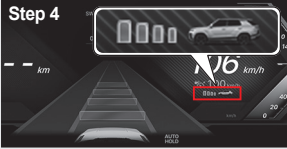
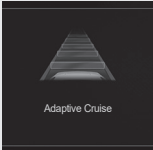
Item	Driving assistance	Message	Activation conditions
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)		-	With Adaptive Cruise Control set to On, briefly pressing the Adaptive Cruise Control switch puts Adaptive Cruise Control on standby with the message "Adaptive Cruise Standby" (including a toast pop-up) (1) and the symbol (2).
		-	- With the electronic shift lever in the Drive (D) position, briefly pressing the Adaptive Cruise Control switch while driving displays the message "Adaptive Cruise Set" (with a toast pop-up) (1) and the set speed (2) and activates Adaptive Cruise Control. - If there is no vehicle ahead, the driver's vehicle keeps driving at the set speed. - If there is a vehicle driving at a speed lower than the set speed ahead, the driver's vehicle will travel while maintaining a set distance to the vehicle ahead.



Item	Driving assistance	Message	Activation conditions
Speed limit		-	If you briefly press the Speed Limit switch with Speed Limit set, the driver will see a message (including a toast popup) (1) and a symbol (2) that says "Speed Limit in Standby" and Speed Limit will go into standby.
		-	- If the driver press and hold the Speed Limit switch while driving with the electronic shift lever in the Drive (D) position, the message "Speed Limit Set" (with a toast pop-up) (1) and the set speed (2) are displayed and the speed limit is activated. - You can adjust the vehicle speed by pushing the speed control lever up or pulling it down.

4

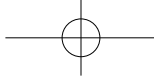


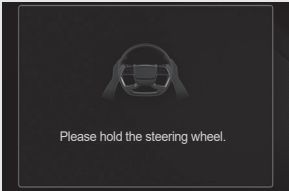
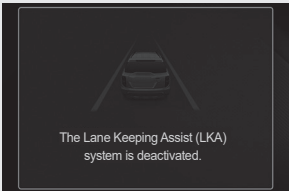
Item	Driving assistance	Message	Activation conditions
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) distance display area (front vehicle not displayed)	Step 1 		When you press the safety distance set button with the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) activated, the corresponding message is displayed while the setting is shifted by one step as an order of step 5 → step 4 → step 3 → step 2 → step 1 → step 5.
	Step 2 		
	Step 3 		
	Step 4 		
	Step 5 		

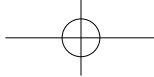
4-88 Starting and driving

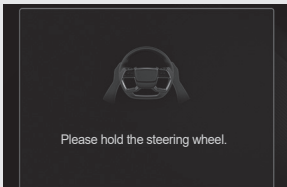
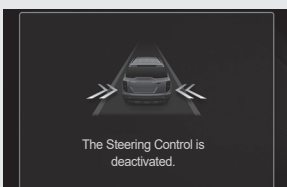


Item	Driving assistance	Message	Activation conditions
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) distance display area (front vehicle displayed)		-	When you press the safety distance set button with the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) activated, the corresponding message is displayed while the setting is shifted by one step as an order of step 5 → step 4 → step 3 → step 2 → step 1 → step 5. At this time, the front vehicle is also displayed on the message.
		-	
		-	
		-	
		-	



Item	Driving assistance	Message	Activation conditions
Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) hands-off	-		Level 1 warning (Graphic display + warning sound) If the system determines that the driver is not holding the steering wheel while Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) is active, a warning message will be displayed and a warning sound will be emitted.
	-		System deactivated (Graphic display + warning sound) After the level 1 warning message, the system will be disabled after a certain period of time to ensure safe driving. At this time, a warning message will be displayed and a warning sound will be heard.



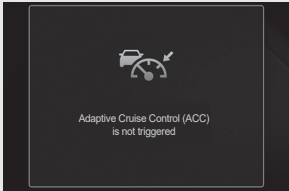
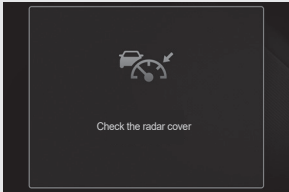
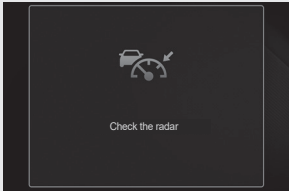
Item	Driving assistance	Message	Activation conditions
Centering Lane Keeping Assistance (CLKA) hands-off	-		Level 1 warning (Graphic display) If the system determines that the driver is not holding the steering wheel while Centering Lane Keeping Assistance (CLKA) is active, a warning message will be displayed.
	-		Level 2 warning (Graphic display + warning sound) When a certain period of time has elapsed after the stage 1 warning, the message and beep are given as the stage 2 warning.
	-		System deactivated (Graphic display + warning sound) After the level 2 warning message, the system will be disabled after a certain period of time to ensure safe driving. At this time, a warning message will be displayed and a warning sound will be heard.

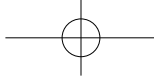


Item	Driving assistance	Message	Activation conditions
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) warning pop-up	-	 Forward Collision Warning	During Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) operations, a message is displayed when the vehicle ahead disappears due to lane changes, etc.
	-	 When front vehicle departs, operate RES, SET button or pedal	During Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) operations (or operations with the ISG), after a certain period of time since the vehicle has stopped, a message is displayed indicating that departure is possible by pressing the accelerator pedal or by raising or lowering the cruise control switch.
	-	 Front Vehicle Approach Warning	During Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) operations, a message is displayed when the vehicle in front of you is close.
		-	When the driver presses the accelerator pedal during Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) operations.

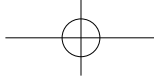
4-92 Starting and driving

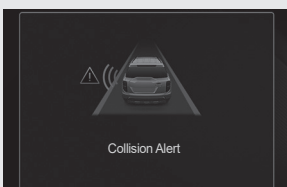
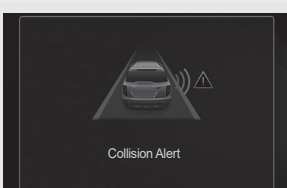


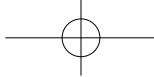
Item	Driving assistance	Message	Activation conditions
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) warning pop-up	-		During Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) operations, a message is displayed if the operating conditions are not met.
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) check pop-up	-		A message is displayed on the front of the radar cover if it is dirty by dust, contaminants, etc. and does not recognize lanes, vehicles ahead, people, etc.
	-		- A message is displayed if there is something wrong with the radar system. - If the message persists, visit a nearby KGM Authorized Service Center and have your vehicle checked and serviced.



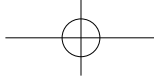
Item	Driving assistance	Message	Activation conditions
Intersection Emergency Braking	-	 Intersection Collision Warning	When entering an intersection, if the system detects a vehicle in the opposite lane, a corresponding message is displayed.
	-	 Intersection Collision Warning	When entering an intersection, if the system detects a vehicle approaching from the left or right, a corresponding message is displayed.



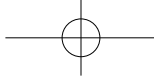
Item	Driving assistance	Message	Activation conditions
ADAS Oncoming Vehicle Avoidance Display Area	-	 Collision Alert	This message is displayed when responding to a vehicle approaching from the front lateral sides.
	-	 Collision Alert	
	-	 Collision Alert	This message is displayed when responding to a vehicle approaching from the lateral sides.
	-	 Collision Alert	



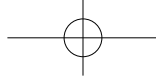
Item	Driving assistance	Message	Activation conditions
ADAS Oncoming Vehicle Avoidance Display Area	-		This message is displayed when responding to a vehicle approaching from the rear lateral sides.
	-		

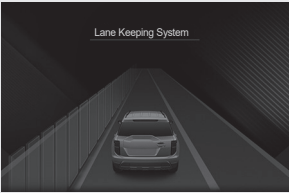


Item	Driving assistance	Message	Activation conditions
Emergency Steering Assist	-	 Emergency Steering Assist Active	If a collision with an approaching vehicle from the lateral or rear lateral sides is anticipated, the Emergency Steering Assist system engages and displays a corresponding message.
	-	 Emergency Steering Assist Active	
	-	 Emergency Steering Assist Active	
	-	 Emergency Steering Assist Active	

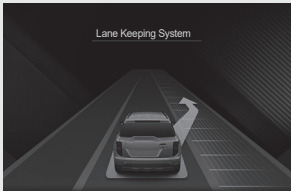
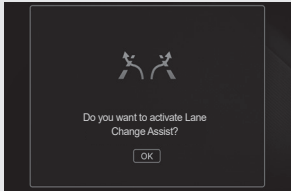
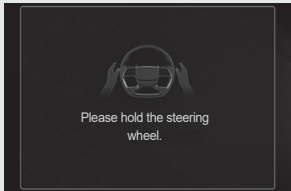


Item	Driving assistance	Message	Activation conditions
Emergency Steering Assist	-	 Emergency Steering Assist Active	If a collision with an approaching vehicle from the front lateral sides is anticipated, the Emergency Steering Assist system engages and displays a corresponding message.
	-	 Emergency Steering Assist Active	



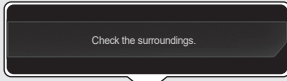
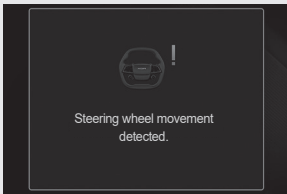
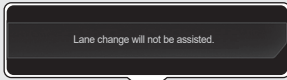
Item	Driving assistance	Message	Activation conditions
Lane Change Assist display area		-	If the driver operates the turn signal to change lanes with Lane Change Assist set, a corresponding message is displayed.
		-	This message displays when Lane Change Assist is enabled and the driver operates the turn signal to change lanes and the change to that lane is not possible.
		-	If the driver operates the turn signal to change lanes with Lane Change Assist set, a corresponding message is displayed.
		-	This message displays when Lane Change Assist is enabled and the driver operates the turn signal to change lanes and the change to that lane is not possible.



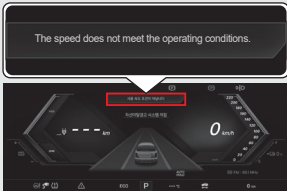
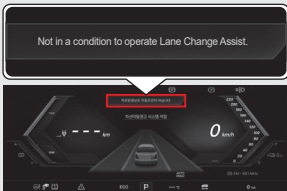
Item	Driving assistance	Message	Activation conditions
Lane Change Assist display area		-	This message is displayed when Lane Change Assist is enabled and the driver activates the turn signal to move the vehicle into that side lane.
		-	This message is displayed when the driver operates the turn signal to change lanes and the vehicle moves into that side lane with Lane Change Assist enabled.
	-		This message appears when the Lane Change Assist system is disabled.
	-		This message displays when the lane change assist system is active and it is determined that the driver is not holding the steering wheel.

4-100 Starting and driving



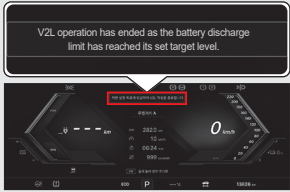
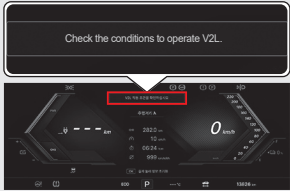
Item	Driving assistance	Message	Activation conditions
Lane Change Assist display area	-	 	This message displays when the Lane Change Assist is active and a hazardous situation is detected around your vehicle.
	-		This message displays if the driver manually controls the steering wheel while changing lanes with the Lane Change Assist active.
	-	 	This message displays when Lane Change Assist is active and the lane is not available when the driver operates the turn signal.
	-	 	This message appears when a sharp curve appears while Lane Change Assist is active.



Item	Driving assistance	Message	Activation conditions
Lane Change Assist display area	-		This message appears if the vehicle's speed is too high or too low while Lane Change Assist is active.
	-		This message displays when the conditions for activating Lane Change Assist are not met.
	-		This message displays if there is a problem with Lane Change Assist.

4-102 Starting and driving



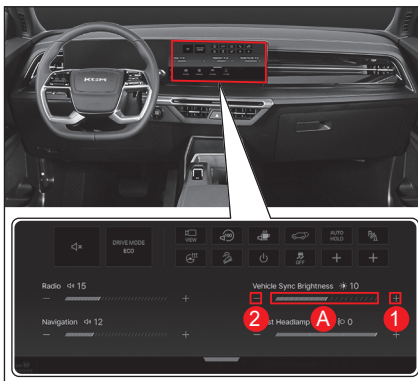
Items	Pop-up	Operating conditions
V2L		• This message appears when the discharge limit set point is reached while using V2L.
		• This is how the high voltage battery level is displayed when using V2L.
		• This message is displayed if the conditions for V2L usage are not met.



Instrument cluster illumination brightness

To adjust instrument cluster illumination brightness

The instrument panel lights are linked with the hypervisor control panel, allowing you to adjust the brightness of the lights in 20 steps from the hypervisor control panel.



- ① To make brighter
- ② To make darker

- Each time you press the instrument cluster illumination control switch briefly, brightness will lighten or darken by 1 step.
- When you press and hold the instrument cluster illumination control switch, brightness will lighten or darken by 1 step every about 0.2 second.

Notice

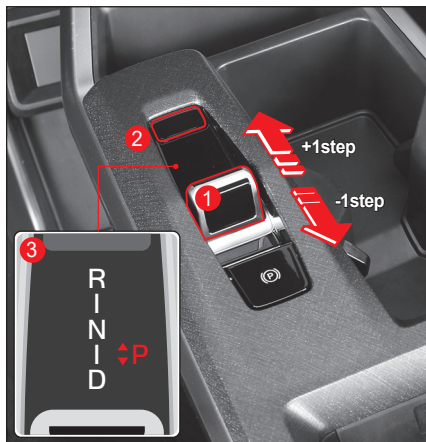
- If the ignition switch is cycled off and on, the instrument cluster illumination remains at the previously set brightness.

Notice

- The instrument cluster illumination brightness level is indicated by (A).
- If the ignition switch is cycled off and on, the instrument cluster illumination remains at the previously set brightness.
- If you keep pressing switch ①, the level will no longer increase above step 20.
- If you keep pressing switch ②, the level will no longer drop in step 1.



SBW (shift by wire)



- ① Electronic shift lever
- ② P (park) button
- ③ Lever position (gear) indicator

Warning

- When operating the electronic shift lever, always operate the lever with the brake pedal depressed.
- After parking, make sure the electronic shift stalk is in P (Park) position before exiting the vehicle.

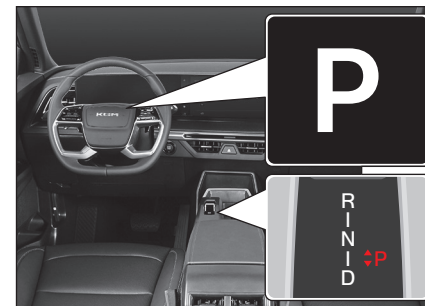
Transmission selector lever position

- P: Parking
- R: Reverse
- N: Neutral
- D: Drive

When changing the selector lever position, you can check the current position of the selector lever on the gear position display and on the electronic shift lever display in the instrument cluster.

Electronic shift lever position display

Depending on the shift position, you can see the current shift position on the instrument panel and in the electronic shift lever position display.



Caution

- When shifting, make sure the current gear is lit on the instrument panel's gear indicator and the electronic shift lever's display.



How to move shift lever to target gear position



The electronic shift lever can be moved at + 1 step and - 1 step, after which it is always aligned to the central position.

Notice

- When moving to the P (park) position, press the P (park) button with the brake pedal depressed at each position.

Target gear position		R	N	-	P	-	-	P	R	-	P	R	N	
Shifting lever	+1 step	 	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	 	-	
	+1 step			-	-	-	-	-		-	-	-	 	
	Current gear position	P position			R position			N position			D position			
	-1 step	-	-		-		 	-	-		-	-	-	
	-1 step	-	-	-	-	-	 	-	-	-	-	-	-	
	Target gear position	-	-	D	P	N	D	P	-	D	P	-	-	

: Operates for 0.5 sec or less

: Operates for more than 0.5 sec



Functions for each shift position

P (park) position



Select this position to park, start the vehicle, warm-up, and stop the vehicle for a long time.

- Be sure to depress the brake pedal and press the P (park) (A) button when moving to P (park) position from a position other than P (park).
- If the ignition switch is turned off in a position other than P (park), the shift lever automatically moves to the P (park) position.

Warning

- When moving from the P (park) position to another position, make sure that the ignition switch is turned on and the brake pedal is depressed. Do not apply excessive force to the electronic shift lever with the electronic shift lever in the P (park) position. This may lead to damage to the lever and transmission.
- Never move the shift lever to the P (park) position while driving. There is a risk of mechanical damage and accidents. Move the shift lever to the P (park) position after the vehicle has come to a complete stop.
- Do not attempt to place the shift lever in the P position instead of applying the parking brake. Always apply the parking brake when your vehicle is parked or stopped.

R (reverse) position



4

Use this position to reverse the vehicle.

When moving to the R (reverse) position, apply the brake pedal and operate the shift lever after the vehicle has come to a complete stop.

The parking aid system operates when the electronic shift lever is placed in the R (reverse) position.

Warning

- Do not shift into R position when the vehicle is moving forward. This may cause a shift shock and damage the transmission.
- If the electronic shift lever is placed in the R (reverse) position, the vehicle moves backward slowly without depressing the accelerator pedal, so drive carefully while pressing the brake pedal.



N (neutral) position



This is the neutral position where no power is transmitted.

At this position, the vehicle does not transfer power to the wheels and the vehicle will not move on level ground. However, be sure to depress the brake pedal for safety when stopping the vehicle with the electronic shift lever in the N (neutral) position.

Warning

- Do not move the electronic shift lever from D (drive) to N (neutral) or N (neutral) to D (drive) when the vehicle is moving.
- Be sure to depress the brake pedal when stopping the vehicle on a slope with the electronic shift lever in the N (neutral) position.
- Never move the shift lever to the N (neutral) position while driving.

D (drive) position



Select this position for driving on public roads and highways.

The system automatically selects the most desirable gear based on the vehicle speed and how far the throttle pedal is depressed. It also automatically activates the regenerative braking system according to the road conditions.

Notice

- The regenerative braking level can be changed based on the selected drive mode (ECO, COMFORT, SPORT, WINTER).



Warning

- If the electronic shift lever is placed in the D (drive) position, the vehicle moves forward slowly without depressing the accelerator pedal, so drive carefully.
- Do not move the shift lever to the D (drive) position until the vehicle has come to a complete stop. The decelerator damage may occur.
- Do not abruptly drive off or sharply accelerate the vehicle after moving the electronic shift lever into D (drive) position. In particular, when leaving after parking or stopping on a slope, move the shift lever to the D (drive) position with the brake pedal pressed, then wait for a few seconds for power to be transmitted inside the decelerator before starting off slowly.
- Even though the electronic shift lever is in D (drive) position, the vehicle can move down on a uphill even according to gradients, so you have to depress the brake pedal.

Regenerative braking system

Regenerative braking control (paddle shifter)

The regenerative braking system converts the braking energy into the electrical energy and stores it in the HV battery for use later on. You can change the regenerative braking level using the paddle shifter.



- To change the regenerative braking level (Level 1 to Level 3, SMART), pull on the desired paddle shifter behind the steering wheel on both sides with the electronic shift lever in D (drive) position.

– LH side (+)

Short pull: Increases regenerative braking level

Long pull: Enters SMART regenerative braking

– RH side (-)

Short pull: Decreases regenerative braking level

Long pull: Disables SMART regenerative braking

4

Cautions

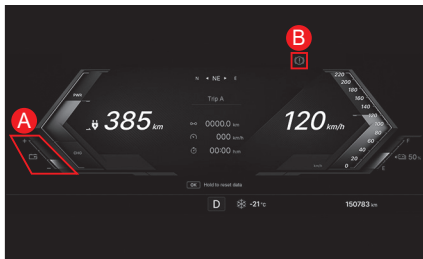
- You cannot adjust the regenerative braking force while Intelligent Cruise Control is active.
- Since SMART regenerative braking works independently of the brake system, it may not provide sufficient braking power, so be sure to depress the brake pedal for safe stopping.



Notice

- **SMART regenerative braking is a feature that adjusts the amount of regenerative braking based on the distance of the vehicle in front of you, providing you with driving comfort.**

The instrument panel displays the regenerative braking warning light and regenerative braking force levels (levels 1 through 3, SMART).



A Regeneration braking stage setting indicator

B Regenerative braking failure warning lamp

☞ Refer to "Brake system warning light" (p.4-25)

Regenerative braking changes to the preset level or maintains the previously set level, depending on the driving mode selection.

How to set up regenerative braking

Regenerative braking changes to the preset level or maintains the previously set level, depending on the driving mode selection.

If you turn off the ignition while using SMART regenerative braking, the default values based on the driving mode are applied upon restart.

Driving mode	Default / On mode change	SMART regenerative braking ON → OFF
ECO	Level 2 / Maintain previous level	Default
SPORT	Level 1 / Maintain previous level	Default
COMFORT	Level 1 / Maintain previous level	Default
WINTER	Level 1 / Change to level 0, 1	SMART regenerative braking not available

Notice

- **Smart regenerative braking mode can be activated by holding down the (+) paddle shift.**

4-110 Starting and driving



Operation of EV

- 1 Start the vehicle with the electronic shift lever in P (park) position and the brake pedal depressed.
- 2 Make sure the vehicle is running and move the electronic shift lever to the D (drive) or R (reverse) position without releasing the brake pedal.
- 3 Release the parking brake and drive off slowly after releasing the brake pedal.

👁 Refer to "To start vehicle" (p.4-3)

👁 Refer to "Getting your vehicle started" (p.4-3)

Warning

- Do not depress the accelerator pedal when starting the vehicle. The vehicle may move suddenly and can cause accidents.
- The vehicle can be started with the electronic shift lever in N (neutral) position. But for safety, always start the vehicle when the shift lever is in P (park) position.
- Do not abruptly drive off or sharply accelerate the vehicle after moving the electronic shift lever from P (park) to D (drive) or R (reverse) position. Always make sure that the shift lever position displayed on the instrument cluster is also changed and then drive off slowly. This is especially important when driving off on a slope after parking or stopping.

Warning

- If the vehicle moves in the opposite direction of intended travel on a slope, the vehicle may shut down abruptly and braking performance of the vehicle can be degraded.
- The vehicle on a steep hill may move in the opposite direction of intended travel, even under the creeping condition. Do not release the brake pedal when stopping on a slope.
- The vehicle parked on a slope may roll slightly even if the electronic shift lever is in the D (drive) or R (reverse) position.
- For safety, do not release the brake pedal while shifting the electronic shift lever.
- Do not depress the accelerator pedal while moving the electronic shift lever.
- Be sure to depress the brake pedal and apply the parking brake when stopping the vehicle on a slope.
- Never move the electronic shift lever to the N (neutral) position while driving. The operation of regenerative braking will be prohibited by doing so. Failure to follow this warning also can result in an unexpected serious accident.
- Never charge the SOC of a high voltage battery above 90% in high altitudes, such as in mountainous areas.
- When driving downhill after fully charging the high voltage battery, the regenerative braking system may not work. This may cause braking slippage during downhill driving, so be sure to drive at a low speed.

Notice

- Allow the vehicle to creep forward by simply releasing the brake pedal before depressing the accelerator pedal slowly to drive off.
- Moving the electronic shift lever when a load is applied to the drive system (stopping or parking on a hill, etc.) may cause shift shock or noise. This is a natural mechanical reaction, and the system is normal.

4

What is creep?

This is a phenomenon in which the vehicle moves forward or backward without depressing the accelerator, provided that the electronic shift lever is in any position other than P or N.

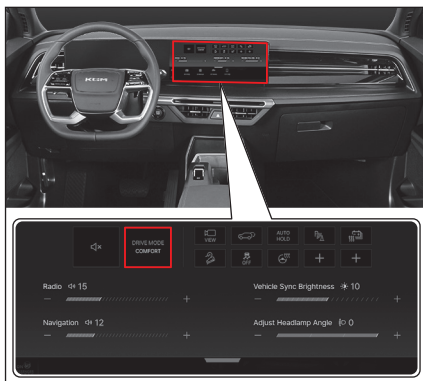
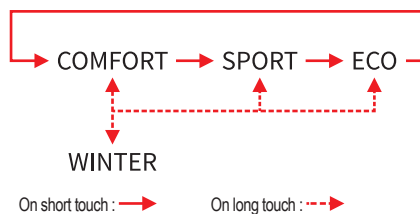
You can easily maneuver the vehicle or control the vehicle speed smoothly in a heavy traffic or in a tight space by taking advantage of this characteristic.



Drive mode

Drive mode switch

Pressing the drive mode switch in normal driving condition will toggle the drive mode as follows:



Default settings for each mode

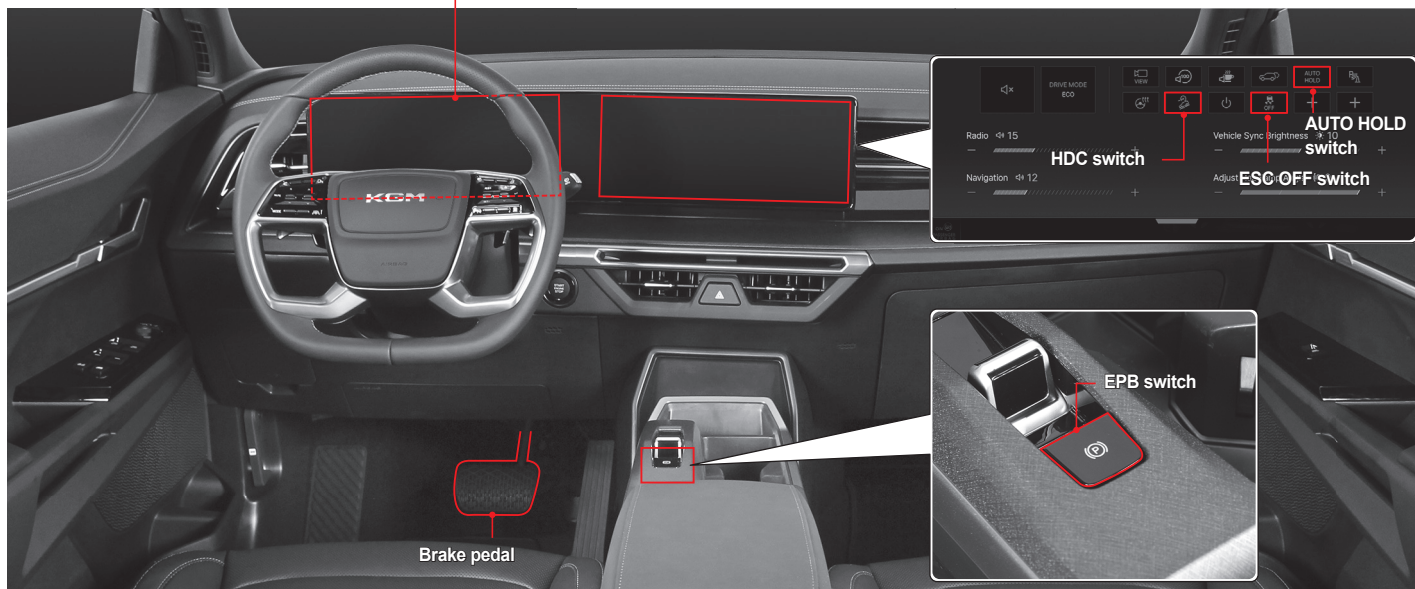
Drive Mode	COMFORT	SPORT	ECO	WINTER
Driving characteristics	Normal driving mode	Sporty driving mode	Economic driving mode	Rough road escape mode
Switch operation	Default	Short press	Short press	Long press
Indicator lamp on instrument cluster	COMFORT	SPORT	ECO	WINTER
Speed limit	-	-	-	-
Steering force	COMFORT	SPORT	COMFORT	←
Default when turning IGN from OFF to ON	COMFORT	COMFORT	ECO	COMFORT

4-112 Starting and driving



Brake system

Brake-related warning lamps/indicators				
				
Parking brake ON indicator (Red)	ABS warning lamp	Brake system warning lamp		
				
Electronic parking brake (EPB) warning lamp (amber)	AUTO HOLD indicator / warning lamp	Hill descent control (HDC) ON indicator/warning lamp	Electronic stability control (ESC) ON indicator/warning lamp	Electronic stability control (ESC) OFF indicator lamp



4

Starting and driving 4-113

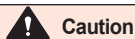


Foot brake

Depressing the brake pedal can reduce the vehicle speed or stop the vehicle.

If the foot brake is used for a long period of time on a long downhill road, the fade or vapor lock phenomenon may occur due to the overheating of the brake system, reducing the braking performance and causing an accident.

Do not only apply the foot brake on long downhills, but also use regenerative braking (increase regenerative braking with paddle shift lever).



Caution

- Reduce the speed properly using the engine brake on a slippery road such as an icy road or a snowy road.

What is the fade phenomenon?

The fade phenomenon is the reduction of braking force due to a decrease in the friction force caused by a temperature increase in the friction surface of a brake when the brake is applied excessively on a long downhill road.

What is the vapor lock phenomenon?

The vapor lock phenomenon is the condition that when the brake is applied excessively on a downhill road, bubbles form in the brake fluid in the wheel cylinder or brake pipe of the hydraulic brake so that proper hydraulic pressure cannot be transferred, causing the brake system not to operate properly even if the pedal is depressed.



Warning

Checking for foreign materials on the pedal operation area



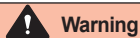
- Before driving the vehicle, clean up the area where the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal is operated. If an empty can or an article is present below the pedal, it may obstruct the pedal operation, causing an accident. Be sure to check before driving the vehicle.



Checking and replacing the brake pads/discs

Check the brake pads and discs at every 10,000 km of driving and replace if necessary. When replacing the brake pad, replace the left and right brake pads at the same time.

The replacement period of the brake pads and discs may vary depending on the driver's driving habit.



Warning

- If you hear a screeching sound when you depress the brake pedal, have your vehicle checked and serviced at a nearby KG Mobility Authorized Service Center. Failure to do so may cause the brake not to operate, causing a serious accident.

If the brake is not working

If the foot brake does not work while driving, use regenerative braking (increase regenerative braking with paddle shift lever) to decelerate as much as possible, then apply the parking brake to safely stop the vehicle.

ABS (Anti-Lock Brake System)

If you apply sudden braking or apply braking on a slippery road, the vehicle continues to move forward but the wheels are locked, not rotating. In such case, steering may not be possible or the vehicle may spin, causing an accident.

In such case, the ABS controls the locking of the wheels properly to maintain the steering force and improve the steering stability of the vehicle.

In normal driving conditions, the braking system of a vehicle equipped with the ABS operates in the same way as the braking system of a normal vehicle.



Warning

- The ABS system prevents a situation that the wheels are locked, disabling the steering of the vehicle, when the braking is applied. Therefore, the ABS system does not affect the braking distance significantly.
- When the ABS system operates and the braking force is created, the braking distance may become longer or shorter than the braking distance of a vehicle without the ABS system according to the road surface condition.
- When applying a sudden braking, depress the brake pedal strongly until the vehicle stops completely. Never take your foot off from the pedal or depress the pedal in a pumping manner.
- Even a vehicle equipped with the ABS system cannot prevent a risk of the vehicle skidding sideways. Be sure to keep a proper safe distance from a preceding vehicle and drive the vehicle at a low speed on a slippery road.



Caution

- A vehicle equipped with the ABS system performs the self-diagnosis function to check whether the system is abnormal or not after the vehicle is started and the vehicle is driven. In this process, the hydraulic pressure is transferred to the internal hydraulic system forcibly and the motor operates accordingly, so noises and vibrations may occur on the brake pedal. This indicates that the ABS is functioning normally.
- When the ABS system operates, you may feel vibrations through the brake pedal along with some noise. This is a normal phenomenon that occurs when the ABS system operates.

ABS warning light



This warning light turns on when the START/STOP switch is in the ON status and it turns off if the system is normal.



Warning

- If the ABS warning light stays on after the vehicle is started or it turns on while driving, this indicates that an ABS-related system is abnormal, and the ABS system does not operate and only normal braking function is activated. In such case, have your vehicle checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center promptly.

Electronic Brake-Force Distribution (EBD)

The EBD system distributes the braking force to the front wheels and the rear wheels efficiently by controlling the braking pressure electronically when the brake pedal is depressed.

The EBD system is activated when the speed difference between the fastest front wheel and the slowest rear wheel is approximately 1 km/h or more, and it is deactivated when the ABS operates.

Brake system warning light



The brake system warning light turns on when the EBD system is faulty.



Caution

- When the EBD warning light turns on, have your vehicle checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.
- Before departure, check that the brake system warning light on the instrument panel is lit.

Notice

- The brake system warning lamp illuminates when there is a fault with the EBD system, regenerative braking system, or BBC system.

Emergency Stop Signal (ESS)

The ESS function informs of a dangerous situation to a following vehicle by blinking the emergency braking light fast when a sudden braking is applied or the ABS system operates while driving.

The ESS function operates when the vehicle speed is 50 km/h or higher, and it operates in the sequence of "Input ESS signal" → "Operate emergency braking light" → "Operate the hazard warning lamp".

Notice

- If the hazard warning lamp is on, the ESS function is not activated.

Activation and deactivation conditions

	Emergency braking light
Activation conditions	• When the vehicle speed is 50 km/h or higher • When a sudden braking with the vehicle deceleration of 6.5m/s^2 or higher is applied • When the ABS system is operating while applying braking
Deactivation conditions	• If there is no ESS from the vehicle • When the hazard warning lamp is activated • When the ABS operation is finished



	Hazard warning lamp
Activation conditions	- If the vehicle speed is 50km/h or less at the time when the operation of the hazard warning lamp indicator is finished (canceled) - If the hazard warning lamp blinks for 10 seconds
Deactivation conditions	- When the hazard warning lamp is activated - When 10 seconds have passed after the hazard warning lamp is activated - When the vehicle speed has increased by 10 km/h or more after the hazard warning lamp is activated

Electronic stability control system (ESC)*

The ESC system is an auxiliary driving safety system that controls the braking of each wheel or the motor output in order to correct the vehicle stability when it becomes unstable such as rapid cornering, helping the vehicle to avoid a dangerous situation.

- The ESC function is activated only when the vehicle becomes extremely unstable and it is not activated in normal driving conditions. You can confirm its activation from the blinking of the ESC indicator on the instrument cluster.

ESC indicator/warning light



- Indicator blinks: When the ESC function is activated
- Warning light turns on: When the ESC system is abnormal



Caution

- If the ESC indicator blinks, drive slowly without accelerating.
- If the ESC warning light turns on, visit a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center and have your vehicle checked and serviced.

Notice

- The hazard warning lamp blinks for approximately 10 seconds to allow a vehicle right behind or around to prepare in advance when you apply sudden braking at the vehicle speed of 50 km/h or higher or the ABS system operates. (Emergency Stop Signal)

ESC OFF indicator



When you deactivate the ESC by pressing and holding down the ESC OFF switch (for 3 seconds or more), the indicator turns on.

Caution

- If the ESC OFF indicator stays on even though you did not deactivate the ESC function, visit a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center and have your vehicle checked and serviced.

Notice

- When the ESC OFF switch is pressed, the ESC indicator turns on, and the ESC function is deactivated.

Phenomenon that occurs when the ESC is activated

If the ESC is activated due to tight cornering, the ESC controls each wheel, so you can feel that the braking is applied to the relevant wheel, and vibrations on the brake pedal and noises may occur due to a change in the hydraulic pressure inside the system.

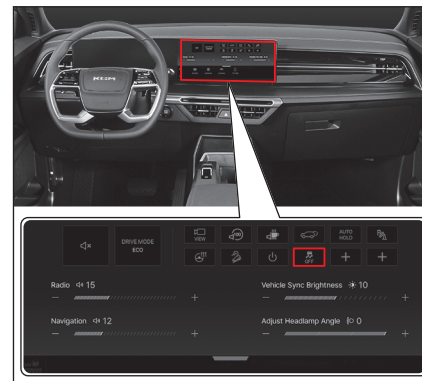
Also, there may be cases where the vehicle speed does not increase even when the accelerator pedal is depressed by the motor output control function.

When it is necessary to deactivate the ESC function

If the left and right driving wheels are slipping on a snowy road or an icy road continuously, the ESC function is activated to control the motor driving force. Accordingly, the motor driving force cannot be increased even if you depress the accelerator pedal, disabling you to drive the vehicle.

In such case, deactivate the ESC function to restore the motor driving force so that you can drive the vehicle.

- To deactivate the ESC function, press and hold down the ESC OFF switch (for 3 seconds or more).
The ESC OFF indicator on the instrument cluster turns on and the ESC function is deactivated.
- Pressing the ESC OFF switch again activates the ESC function.



Notice

- The ESC OFF switch operation can also be operated from the top scroll of the hypervisor control panel.

Warning

- While the ESC is operating, do not press the ESC OFF switch. If you deactivate the ESC function by pressing the ESC OFF switch while suddenly accelerating or making a sharp turn, the vehicle may slip suddenly, causing a very dangerous situation. To deactivate the ESC function, be sure to press the ESC OFF switch only when you drive the vehicle on a straight flat road at a fixed speed.

4



Notice

A vehicle equipped with the ESC includes various auxiliary functions for improving the driving safety of the vehicle. The typical functions are as follows.

- **BAS (Brake Assist System)**

The BAS function detects a sudden braking situation and increase the brake pressure for a driver with leg strength who cannot apply sudden braking in a sudden braking situation.

- **ARP (Active Roll-over Protection)**

The ARP is an auxiliary safety function that helps the vehicle to maintain normal stability prior to the ESC when the driving status of the vehicle is highly unstable.

- **HSA(Hill Start Assist)**

HSA is a hill start assist feature that prevents the car from rolling when starting on a hill by ensuring that brake pressure is maintained for a period of time (about 2 seconds) after the driver releases the brakes. When you press the accelerator to start the vehicle, the HSA is immediately disabled.

- **TSA(Trailer Stability Assist)**

TSA is a towing stability assist feature that detects swaying of a trailer connected to the vehicle and, if swaying occurs, reduces motor power and controls the brakes to maintain vehicle stability.



Caution

- The ESC is just a driving safety assist system of the vehicle and it cannot control the vehicle beyond its physical limitation. Do not rely too much on this system and be sure to drive safely.
- The activation of the ESC (the ESC indicator blinks) indicates that the vehicle is highly unstable. In such case, reduce the vehicle speed and drive the vehicle safely.
- The ESC is not activated when reversing the vehicle.
- Do not drive the vehicle immediately after starting the vehicle. When you drive the vehicle within 2 seconds after starting the vehicle, the self-diagnosis function of the ESC is not carried out and the ESC is activated in early stage while driving so that symptoms such as the ESC warning light turning on, warning buzzer and the generation of braking force on each wheel may occur.
- When the ARP function is activated, the braking of the motor and each wheel is controlled more powerfully in comparison to normal ESC operation, so the vehicle speed may decrease rapidly or strong braking force on each wheel is created, making the steering status unstable.

- When the ESC operates, vibrations and noises may occur on the brake pedal and other relevant devices due to a change in the hydraulic pressure inside the device.
- A vehicle equipped with the ESC may have slight vibrations while the self-diagnosis function is being carried out for the system, but this is a normal phenomenon.

Hill Descent Control (HDC)

HDC is the system that decelerates the vehicle automatically to allow the driver to drive the vehicle at a low speed without depressing the brake pedal when the driver intends to drive the vehicle on a steep road at a low speed.

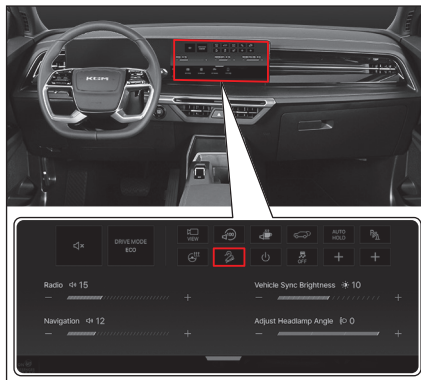
The variable type HDC applied to this vehicle operates flexibly in the range between 5 km/h and 30 km/h according to the vehicle environments (operation status of brake and accelerator pedal).

Warning

- Do not use the HDC function on a normal road. The HDC function is for driving on a downhill road, and using it on a normal road may cause a collision with a following vehicle.

Activating/deactivating the HDC function

- Pressing the HDC switch turns on the green HDC indicator on the instrument cluster and the HDC is in ready status.
- Pressing the HDC switch again turns off the HDC indicator and deactivates the HDC function.



Notice

- The HDC switch operation can also be operated from the top scroll of the hypervisor control panel.

HDC indicator/warning light



- Green indicator turns on: HDC in ready status
- Green indicator blinks: The HDC is operating.
- Red warning light turns on: The HDC system is overheated and abnormal.

Caution

- When the red warning light turns on, the HDC function is not activated.
- When the red HDC indicator turns on, it indicates that the HDC system is overheated or abnormal. If the red HDC indicator stays on after the HDC-related device has been cooled down properly, have your vehicle checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.

4



HDC activation conditions

- When the HDC function is activated (green HDC indicator turns on)
- Within a certain degree of slope or higher and the operating speed range (approximately 2 km/h ~ 50 km/h)
- When the ESC function (including the BAS function) is not activated

HDC deactivation conditions

- When the HDC function is deactivated (green HDC indicator turns off)
- Degree of slope below the HDC activation condition
- When the vehicle speed is less than 2 km/h or more than 50 km/h
- When the HDC system is abnormal
- When the HDC system is overheated
- When depressing brake pedal or accelerator pedal with more than a certain force

Notice

- While the HDC function is being activated, the driver can accelerate or decelerate the vehicle to the desired speed (approximately 5~30km/h) for driving by depressing the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal. However, if the vehicle speed is more than 70 km/h, the HDC function is deactivated.

HDC operation

If the conditions for activating the HDC are met, the HDC is activated and the green HDC indicator on the instrument cluster blinks. If the vehicle speed becomes less than 2 km/h or more than 70 km/h or the sloping road becomes gentle while the HDC function is being activated, the HDC operation stops.

While the HDC function is operating, strong operating sounds and vibrations occur on the brake and this is normal according to the HDC operation.

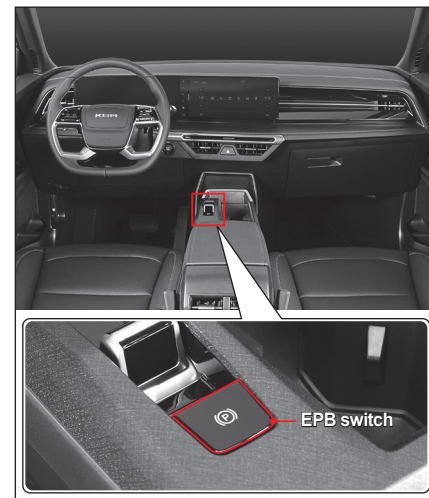


Caution

- The HDC function is for off-road driving on a steep downhill road.
- If the HDC function is used frequently, the brake system or the ESC may not operate normally.
- Avoid using the HDC function when driving on a normal road. If you drive the vehicle with the HDC ready status on a flat road, the HDC function may be activated when you make a tight cornering or pass through a speed bump.
- When the HDC is activated, vibrations and noises occur on the brake pedal and other relevant devices due to a change in the hydraulic pressure inside the device. This is a normal phenomenon according to the activation of the HDC.

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)

The EPB is the parking brake system with enhanced safety and stability that the parking brake is applied and released through a simple switch operation.





Warning

- Do not allow a person who is unfamiliar with the EPB (especially a child) to operate the EPB. Failure to do so may cause an accident according to the parking and stopping status.



Caution

- When the temperature falls down below zero during winter, the parking brake may not be released due to the freezing of EPB-related devices.
- Driving the vehicle forcibly with the parking brake not released due to the freezing of a EPB-related device may damage the relevant device. Noises may also occur when driving the vehicle.
- When you park the vehicle on a flat and safe place in a weather with below zero temperatures, use a chock on the wheels after parking instead of using the EPB.

Applying the EPB

- 1 Park the vehicle on a flat and safe place.
- 2 Pull the EPB switch.
The parking brake warning light on the instrument cluster turns on and the EPB is applied.



Releasing the EPB

With the brake pedal depressed, press the EPB switch.

The parking brake warning light on the instrument cluster turns off and the EPB is released.



Releasing the EPB automatically

When you fasten the seat belt with the driver seat door, hood and tailgate closed and drive the vehicle normally, the EPB function is released automatically.

Notice

- If the driver seat door, hood or tailgate is not closed or the seat belt is not fastened, the EPB auto release function is not activated.

4

EPB warning light/brake warning light

EPB warning light (Amber)



- The EPB amber warning light turns on when the EPB system is abnormal.



Parking brake ON indicator (Red)



The parking brake ON indicator turns on in any of the following situations.

- When the parking brake is operating normally
- When the brake fluid is insufficient
- When the SBW (shift by wire) is moved to the P (parking) position with the AUTO HOLD activated

Caution

- When applying or releasing the EPB, check if the parking brake warning light turns on or off on the instrument cluster.
- If the EPB switch is operated abnormally (excessive or continuous operation), the EPB warning light may turn on. At this time, when you turn off the vehicle and turn the START/STOP switch in the ON status, the warning light turns off and the EPB operates normally.
- If the EPB warning light stays on, have your vehicle checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.
- If the parking brake warning light stays on even though the parking brake has been released, have your vehicle checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center immediately.

EPB emergency mode

When you pull the EPB switch up if the brake system malfunctions or you cannot depress the brake pedal while driving, the EPB is applied while the EPB is being pulled.

However, the braking distance may increase significantly in comparison to normal brake operation.

Warning

- Never use the EPB emergency mode while driving unless it is an emergency. Doing so may damage the vehicle system and may make the driving status unstable due to the braking force while driving, resulting in an accident.
- If the brake system has a critical failure, the EPB emergency mode may not operate.

Caution

- If you need to park the vehicle with a faulty EPB, place the SBW (shift by wire) in the P (parking) position and park the vehicle on flat ground.
- If a noise or a smell of burning occurs from the relevant devices after operating the emergency mode, have your vehicle checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.

Caution

- Before driving, be sure to check if the parking brake warning and the low oil warning light on the instrument cluster turn on.
- Be sure to release the parking brake before driving. Driving the vehicle with the parking brake applied may damage the brake system.
- When you use the parking brake for stopping while driving, move the SBW (shift by wire) to the P (parking) position or the N (neutral) position for safety.
- Do not use the P (parking) position of the SBW (shift by wire) instead of the parking brake. Be sure to apply the parking brake firmly when stopping or parking the vehicle.
- If you intend to place the SBW (shift by wire) in the N (neutral) and park the vehicle, turn off the vehicle with the SBW (shift by wire) in the P (parking) position, press the SBW (shift by wire) unlock button and move it to the N (neutral) position.
- Be sure to place the SBW (shift by wire) in the P (parking) position when parking or stopping the vehicle. If the SBW (shift by wire) is not in the P (parking) position when parking or stopping, the vehicle may move due to an impact from the outside or along the road surface.



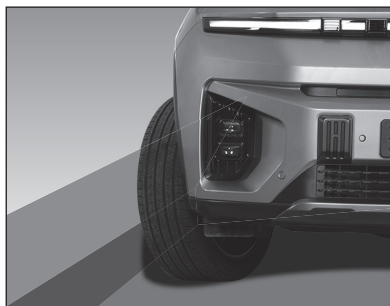
When parking the vehicle on a uphill road

- When you park the vehicle on a uphill road, park the vehicle with the steering wheel turned in the opposite direction from the curb. After parking, make sure to install wheel chocks.



When parking the vehicle on a downhill road

- When you park the vehicle on a downhill road, park the vehicle with the steering wheel turned in the direction toward the curb. After parking, make sure to install wheel chocks.



AUTO HOLD

When the "AUTO HOLD" function is activated, the vehicle keep the brake pressure in order to hold the vehicle stationary when you stop the vehicle by depressing the brake pedal in order to wait for a signal or in case of traffic congestion.

- In R (reverse) position, the AUTO HOLD function does not work.
- When you depress the accelerator pedal, the brake is released automatically, allowing you to drive the vehicle.



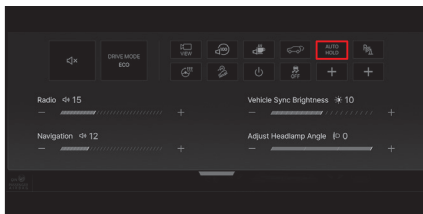
Notice

- The AUTO HOLD switch operation can also be operated from the top scroll of the hypervisor control panel.



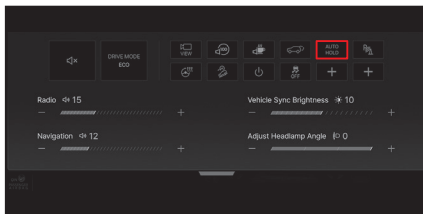
Activating the AUTO HOLD function

- Lightly touch the AUTO HOLD switch to turn on the AUTO HOLD indicator (white) on the instrument cluster and set the AUTO HOLD.



Deactivating the AUTO HOLD function

- With AUTO HOLD set, lightly touch the AUTO HOLD switch to disable the feature.
- When the ignition switch is turned off and turned on back, the AUTO HOLD function maintains the state before turning off the ignition.



Using the AUTO HOLD function

- 1 Touch the AUTO HOLD switch.
The AUTO HOLD indicator (white) on the instrument cluster turns on.
- 2 Stop the vehicle completely by depressing the brake pedal while driving.
The color of the AUTO HOLD indicator changes from white to green and the brake is applied.
- 3 Depress the accelerator pedal slowly when driving the vehicle.
The color of the AUTO HOLD indicator changes from green to white, and the brake is released.

Warning

- When you drive the vehicle on a downhill road, do not depress the accelerator pedal suddenly. Doing so may cause the vehicle to move fast, causing a dangerous situation.

AUTO HOLD indicator/warning light

AUTO HOLD

- White indicator turns on: AUTO HOLD function in ready status.
- Green indicator turns on: AUTO HOLD function is activated and maintain the brake pressure to keep the vehicle stationary.
- Yellow warning light turns on: When the AUTO HOLD system is abnormal.

Caution

- The Auto Hold does not operate when:
 - The driver's door is opened
 - The motor room hood is opened
 - The tailgate is opened
 - The EPB is applied
- The 'Auto Hold' automatically switches to EPB in such cases:
 - The driver's door is opened
 - The motor room hood is opened
 - The tailgate is opened
 - The vehicle is in a standstill for more than 10 minutes
 - The vehicle is standing on a steep slope



Caution

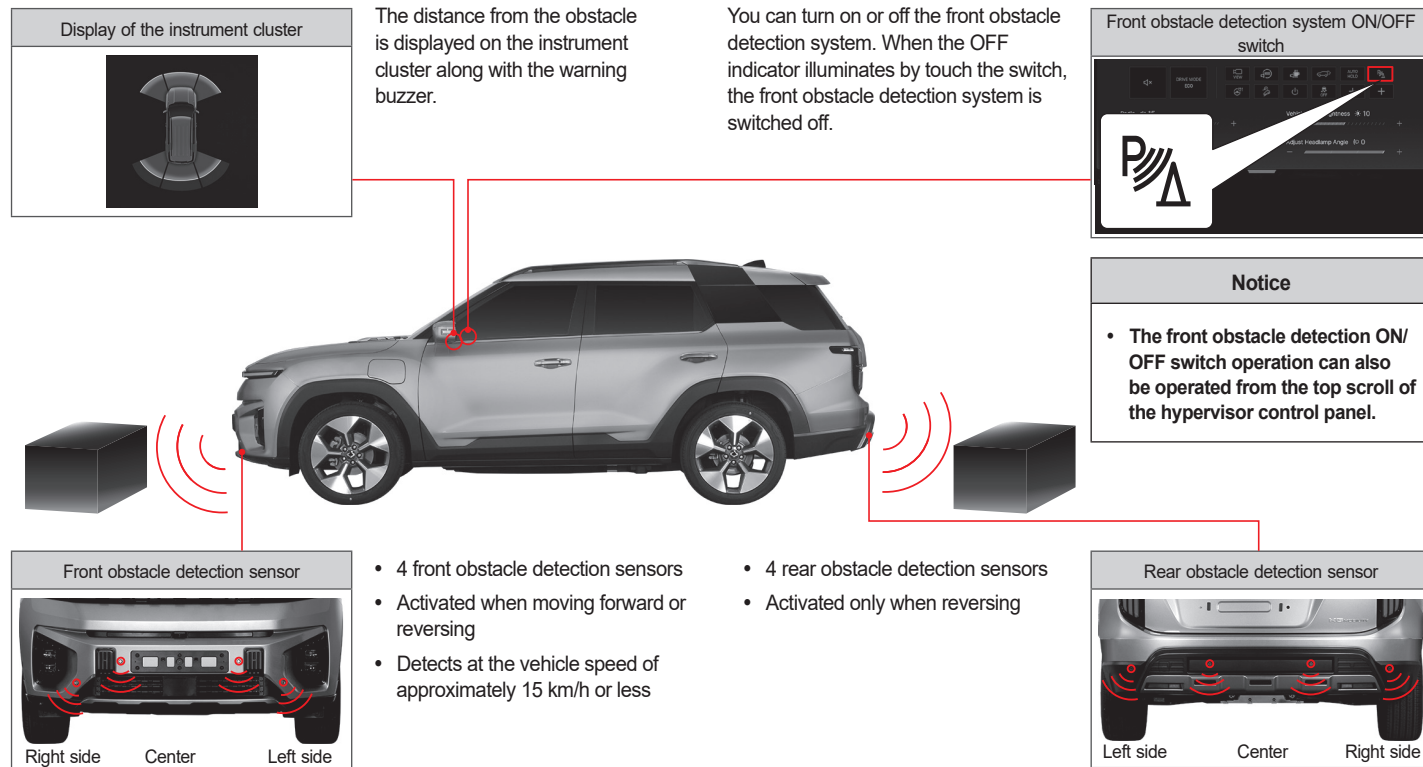
- The AUTO HOLD function is also activated when reversing. If it is necessary to deactivate it for reasons such as parking or stopping, deactivate the AUTO HOLD.
- Be sure to deactivate the AUTO HOLD function if wheel drive is necessary such as automatic car wash.
- During the break-in period of parking brake pads, the braking force of the parking brake may be slightly reduced. (If the vehicle is parked on a sloping road, the vehicle may roll down.)
- Check the brake pads for wear and the operation status of the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) every 10,000 km.
- When the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) is applied, a mechanical operating sound may occur. This is a normal operating sound of the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) system.

- If the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) warning light turns on, the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) operation is abnormal, have your vehicle checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center. If you need to park the vehicle in case of emergency, stop the vehicle on flat ground, place the gear shift lever in the P (parking) position and use a chock on the wheels.
- When you need to turn off the vehicle in AUTO HOLD operation ready (white indicator turns on)/activation (green indicator turns on), the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) is activated automatically.

Parking assist system*

Front/rear obstacle detection system

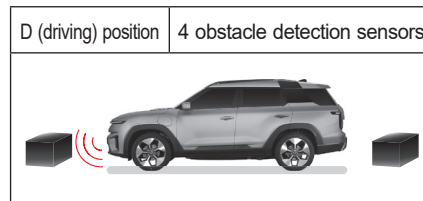
The front/rear obstacle detection system is a parking assist system that detects an obstacle through the ultrasonic sensor installed on the bumper and informs the driver with a warning buzzer when the driver places the SBW (shift by wire) in the D (driving) or the R (reverse) position and drives the vehicle.





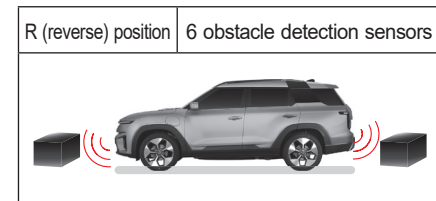
Activating the obstacle detection system

When an obstacle is detected through the front/rear obstacle detection sensor, the distance from the obstacle and the direction are displayed along with a warning buzzer according to the detected distance.



- The vehicle starts to move after initial start (at vehicle speed of 15 km/h or lower).
- The transmission selector lever is changed from R (reverse) position to D (drive) position (at vehicle speed of 15 km/h or lower).

Notice
• The feature remains OFF when the vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h. • If you don't need Parking Assist Warning, lightly touch the Forward Parking Assist Warning ON/OFF switch to turn the feature off.



When the gear shift lever is placed in the R (reverse) position, 2 front obstacle detection sensors and 4 rear obstacle detection sensors are activated at the same time.

Notice
• The front obstacle detection sensor always works at low speed. An alarm may sound intermittently in the event of rain and this is not a malfunction but normal operation.

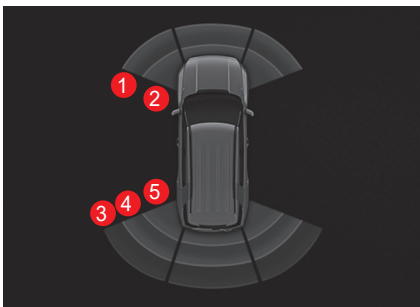


Indication on the display of the instrument cluster

When an obstacle is detected, the relevant edge indicating the detection distance and direction blinks.



Display of the instrument cluster	
D (driving) position	R (reverse) position
	



When no obstacle is detected



The range of front and rear sensors is displayed and blinks (no warning buzzer)

If an obstacle is detected from 40 cm at the front left side or the front right side



Line No. ① at the front left side is deleted and Line No. ② blinks (Warning buzzer sounds)

If an obstacle is detected from 80 cm at the rear left side, front side or right side



Line No. ③ at the rear right side is deleted and Line No. ④ blinks (Warning buzzer sounds)

Warning buzzer interval

The warning buzzer sounds as follows depending on the distance from the obstacle.

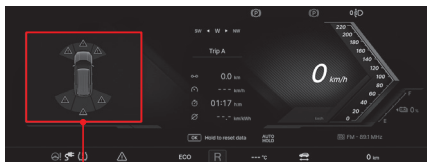
Front obstacle detection sensor (level 2 warning buzzer)

Warning buzzer interval	Distance from the obstacle	
	Center	Side
No warning buzzer	100 cm	80 cm
① 0.15 second	50 cm ~ 100 cm	50 cm ~ 80 cm
② Continuous	30 cm ~ 50 cm	30 cm ~ 50 cm

Rear obstacle detection sensor (Level 3 warning buzzer)

Warning buzzer interval	Distance from the obstacle	
	Center	Side
③ 0.3 second	80 cm ~ 120 cm	-
④ 0.15 second	50 cm ~ 80 cm	
⑤ Continuous	25 cm ~ 50 cm	

Sensor and relevant system malfunction



Display of the instrument cluster

D (driving) position	R (reverse) position

When the obstacle detection sensor is abnormal, “▲” is displayed for the relevant sensor. If this message is displayed on the display of the instrument cluster, have your vehicle checked and serviced at a nearby KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.

! Caution

- If the distance between the sensor and the obstacle is 25 cm or less, the warning buzzer does not sound. However, if the obstacle is recognized clearly, the warning buzzer may sound.
- When the warning buzzer sounds, the distance from the obstacle may be different from the actual distance by approximately ± 10 cm.
- Do not rely too much on the parking assist system and reverse the vehicle while checking the rear side.
- If an abnormal warning buzzer whose duration is different from a warning buzzer that occurs due to the detection of an obstacle or a long warning buzzer for 3 seconds occur when the gear shift lever is placed in the R (reverse) position, the obstacle detection system or the detection sensor is abnormal. Have your vehicle checked.

If the system does not operate or malfunctions

If there is an object that cannot be detected by the sensor

- A thin object such as steel wire, rope or chain
- An object such as cotton, sponge, fiber or snow that absorbs sound waves
- An object that is located lower than the bumper (example : drainage or puddle)

The sensor cannot detect

- when the sensor is frozen (the normal function is restored after thawed.)
- When sensor is clogged by foreign materials such as snow, mud or water drops (the normal function is restored after removed)

When the sensor detection range becomes narrower

- The sensor is partially covered with snow or mud so that the signal detection area becomes narrower (the normal function is restored after removal)
- When the temperature near the sensor is extremely high or low



Cases that may cause malfunction although it is not a system failure

- Driving the vehicle on bumpy roads, gravel roads, hillside road, or grass
- When the height of the bumper is lowered due to heavy load
- When other ultrasound waves are received (metallic sound, air brake sound of a large vehicle, etc)
- When a high-power radio set is used
- When there is a heavy rain
- When an accessory is attached to or near the area where the sensor is installed

When towing a trailer

- The sensor may detect the trailer, sounding the warning buzzer continuously.

Cautions regarding the front/rear obstacle detection system



Caution

- When parking or reversing the vehicle, check if there is any person, animal or especially a child around. If you cannot check it properly, be sure to get out of the vehicle and check.
- The parking assist system is only a system for the user's convenience and this system does not guarantee safety. The driver should pay attention to all possible conditions.
- When you strongly press or apply an impact to the sensor part on the bumper or strong water pressure is applied during car wash, the sensor may be damaged.
- When the system is normal and the gear shift lever is placed in the R (reverse) position with the START/STOP switch in the ON status, a beep sounds once briefly.
- If an abnormal warning buzzer whose duration is different from a warning buzzer that occurs due to the detection of an obstacle or a long warning buzzer for 3 seconds occur when the gear shift lever is placed in the R (reverse) position, the obstacle detection system or the detection sensor is abnormal. Have your vehicle checked.

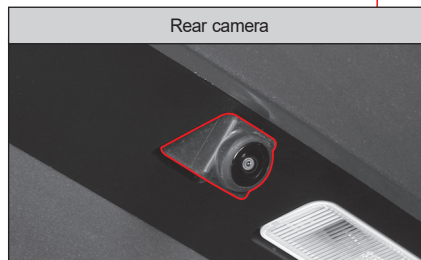
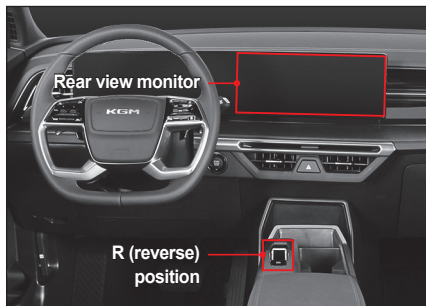
- In the parking space shown in the figure below, the upper portion of the vehicle may collide before the detection sensor at the bottom operates. Park the vehicle while checking through the outside rearview mirror or turning your head directly.





Rear camera system

The rear camera system is an auxiliary safety system that allows the driver to view the situation behind the vehicle through the rear camera using the monitor when the gear shift lever is placed in the R (reverse) position.



Caution

- The rear camera uses a wide-angle lens to secure a wide view, so the actual distance is different from what you see through the monitor. Be sure to check the rear, left and right view directly.
- The screen shown on the monitor is a part of, not the whole background view of the vehicle.
- Clean the rear camera lens frequently using a camera lens cleaner to prevent it from being contaminated.

4



Warning

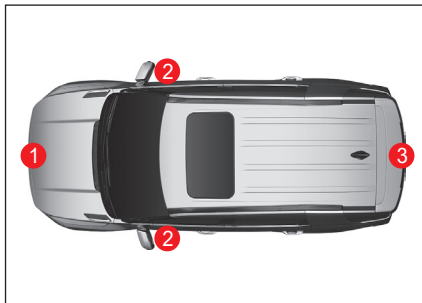
- The rear camera screen does not work during software update. Always stop the vehicle to update the software and do not drive the vehicle until the update is completed.
- Be careful when reversing since the rear obstacle may be hidden by the warning messages and parking guide lines if the rear camera system is activated.



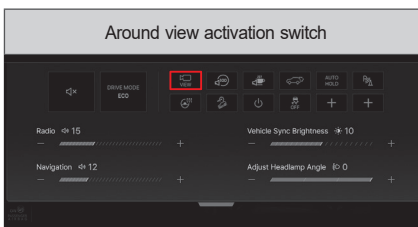
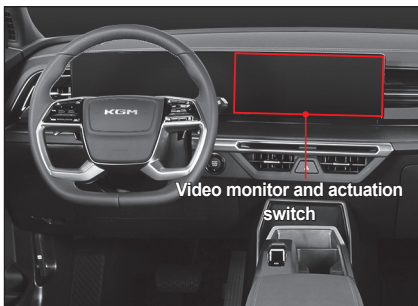
Around View Monitoring (AVM) system*

The AVM system is a parking assist system that helps the driver to park the vehicle safely by allowing the driver to view the outside situation in the vehicle through the monitor.

The driver can see the information received from 4 cameras installed on the exterior of the vehicle through the monitor. The driver can activate 3D view and check the outside of the vehicle in the desired direction if necessary.



- ① Front camera
- ② Left/right camera
- ③ Rear camera



Caution

- The AVM system combines 4 camera images and displays the combined image on the monitor. Therefore, the actual position of the vehicle and parking guide line are different from those shown in the screen. When parking the vehicle, be sure to check the rear, left and right view directly for safety.
- Since the AVM camera uses a wide-angle lens for securing wide view, the actual distance may be different from what you see through the monitor. Be sure to check the rear, left and right view directly for safety.
- If the surface of the camera lens is contaminated by foreign materials, a system error may occur due to performance degradation. Always keep the lens clean.



Operating conditions

For the around view monitoring system to be activated, the following conditions must be met:

- The ignition switch is in the ON position or the vehicle is started.
- Vehicle speed is less than 20 km/h.
- Around view activation switch is turned on when the electronic shift lever is in the P (Park), R (Reverse), N (Neutral) or D (Drive) position.

Notice

- When the electronic shift lever is in the R (Reverse) position, the around view monitoring system is activated regardless of whether the ignition switch is in the ON or OFF position.
- If the electronic shift lever is in the P (Park) position, the around view monitoring system operates but the monitor displays the previously active view.
- When the front AVM is activated, driving at a speed of about 20km/h or more deactivates the AVM. If this is the case, the AVM system remains deactivated even if the vehicle slows down below 20 km/h.

How to operate AVM

- With the ignition ON and the electronic shifting lever in the N (neutral) or D (drive) position, pressing the around view switch will activate the front AVM system.
- When the ignition is on and the electronic shifting lever is in the R (reverse) position, the rear AVM system is activated.
- You can switch between the 2D and 3D screens in real time by just pushing the 2D or 3D icon.



Double-Parking (Second Row Parking)

If you need to double-park (second row park) due to lack of parking space, operate as follows:

- 1 Release AUTO HOLD with the engine started.
- 2 Press the ignition switch to turn the ignition off.
- 3 Press the ignition switch twice, without depressing the brake pedal.
(Ignition on with engine not started)

Notice

- If the AUTO HOLD is activated, the EPB operates automatically when the ignition is turned off, so be sure to press the AUTO HOLD switch to deactivate the function.

- 4 With the brake pedal depressed, briefly push the electronic shift stalk in the direction of the arrow to turn off the ignition while the gear is in N (neutral) position.
(Entering N position disengages the electronic parking brake (EPB)).



Warning

- Double-parking (second row parking) must be done on a level surface with no slope, and additional safety measures must be taken, such as installing chocks on the vehicle's wheels. Otherwise, the vehicle could roll, creating a very dangerous situation.
- When using an automatic car washer, etc. in double parking mode, i.e. with the gear selector lever in the N (neutral) position, never press the P (park) button. If you drive the vehicle into a car wash with the gear selector lever in the P (parking) position, problems may occur in your vehicle, automatic car washer and etc.

Notice

- If you open the vehicle's doors while in double parking (neutral), the vehicle may shift into P (Park) for your safety. So if you need to double-park, reset it according to the double-parking method.



Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB)*

Please use after thoroughly understanding how each function works and its limitations.

Warning

- The driver is solely responsible for the safe operation and control of the vehicle. Driving assistance features may not function properly depending on the situation, so please drive safely by considering traffic regulations and road conditions rather than relying on these features.
- Do not engage in dangerous driving when testing the driving assistance functions. Accidents may occur depending on functional limitations and the surrounding environment, which may result in loss of life, serious injury, or property damage.
- Driving assistance features do not prevent accidents in all situations, so do not rely solely on them.
- When setting or changing functions in the infotainment (vehicle settings) system, be sure to stop in a safe place before proceeding. Changing settings while driving may cause an accident, resulting in serious damage.

Warning

- Do not use the driving assistance function when additional equipment such as trailers or carriers are connected to the vehicle. Functions may not operate normally, or vehicle control performance may be impaired.
- If a dangerous situation occurs while driving, take control of the vehicle yourself. Even if a malfunction occurs, normal operation using the steering wheel and brake pedal is possible.

Caution

- If the sensor is damaged or contaminated, the driving assistance function may not operate normally. Check the sensor location and related safety information before use.
- The function only works properly when the vehicle's brake and steering systems are functioning normally. Before driving, check that the warning light for the system is not illuminated, and maintain normal operation with appropriate maintenance.
- Depending on road and surrounding conditions, functionality may be delayed or disabled, and unwanted operation may occur. Always pay close attention to your surroundings.

Caution

- After a certain amount of time has passed since the emergency braking or steering function was activated, the function will automatically be deactivated. In such cases, the driver must take direct control of the vehicle.
- Even if no warning sounds or messages are generated, always pay attention to the condition of the vehicle and the surrounding situation. Some driving assistance features may not be displayed due to other system warnings.
- Adjust the media volume appropriately while driving so that you do not miss the warning sounds from the driver assistance features.
- The function may be temporarily disabled in strong electromagnetic fields.
- Immediately after starting the engine, the function may not operate normally for a certain period of time during the sensor and system initialization process.
- If you press multiple buttons at the same time, the function may not work properly. Please operate the functions correctly in accordance with the provided instructions.



The AEB (Autonomous Emergency Braking) is an assist device that warns the driver of the risk of collision when a collision with the front vehicle or pedestrian is expected by the sensor of the front sensor module (front camera module and front radar).

This system informs the driver about the collision risk with the warning message and warning buzzer according to the level of collision risk. If this collision risk persists, this system controls the braking force to avoid collision or relieves the shock when a collision occurs, improving the safety of the driver and pedestrians.

1st collision alert → 2nd collision warning →
3rd emergency braking → Vehicle stop



Notice

- **Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) alerts you to the risk of a collision with warning signs and beeps, depending on your vehicle's settings.**



Warning

- **AEB is only an auxiliary system for helping the driver to secure safety in a dangerous situation and it does not avoid a collision situation automatically. The driver is responsible for the vehicle safety and control.**

Notice

- **The AEB is set and Normal is set for the sensitivity of the forward collision warning as the factory default settings.**

AEB indicator/warning light

AEB OFF indicator

AEBS OFF

The AEBS OFF indicator lights up on the instrument cluster when the AEB function is disabled.

Notice

- **A light touch of the ESC OFF switch will illuminate the ESC OFF indicator and the ESC function will not operate.**
- **Autonomous emergency braking (AEB) operates normally even when the ESC is turned off.**



AEB indicator/warning light



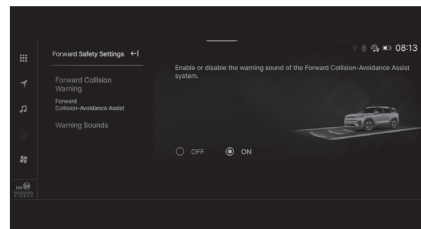
The AEB indicator and warning light operate as follows depending on the AEB status.

- Blink: AEB is operating
- Turn on: AEB is abnormal

Notice

- **Autonomous emergency braking (AEB) functions even when ESC is off.**

How to set Autonomous emergency braking (AEB)



- From the main menu of the hypervisor control panel, select Vehicle Settings (⚙️) → Driving Assistance → Forward Safety Settings → Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist → ON/OFF.

Notice

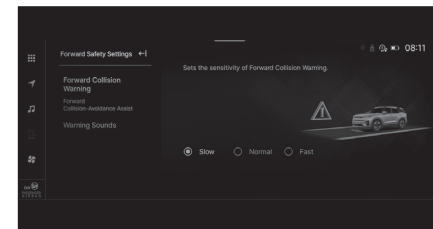
- **Selecting OFF disables the feature and the “AEBS OFF” indicator lights up.**
- **Selecting ON sets the feature on.**



Caution

- **Activate or deactivate the AEBS system before driving the vehicle or after stopping the vehicle at a safe place for safety.**

How to set Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB)



- Select Vehicle Settings (⚙️) → Driving Assistance → Forward Safety Settings → Forward Collision Warning → SLOW/NORMAL/FAST in the main menu of the hypervisor control panel.
- When set to FAST, the Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) is sensitive.
- If AEB is too sensitive, set it to NORMAL or SLOW.



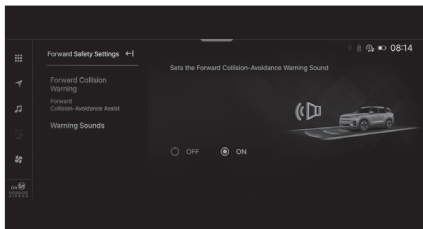
Caution

- **Even if Fast is set for the sensitivity of the AEB warning, you may feel it is slow when a front vehicle applies a sudden braking.**

4

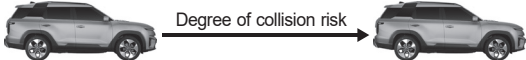


How to set Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) warning sound



- Select Vehicle Settings  → Driving Assistance → Forward Safety Settings → Warning Sounds → OFF/ON in the main menu of the hypervisor control panel.
- You can turn the warning sound off or on when the AEB system is operating.

AEBS operation

Classification	Collision alert (1st warning)	Collision alert (2nd warning)	Emergency braking (3rd warning)	Vehicle stop
				
Warning buzzer	Sounds 7 beeps for 1 second			-
Vehicle control	-	The system applies partial braking.	Full brake control before collision.	Maintain the braking force for approximately 2 seconds after the vehicle stops.



Warning

- The AEB is an auxiliary system that helps the driver to secure safety in a dangerous situation and it does not guarantee safety.
- The AEB does not recognize all urgent and dangerous situations.
- Do not attempt dangerous driving for activating the AEB.
- The AEB does not avoid a collision situation automatically. The driver is responsible for the vehicle safety and control.
- Always secure safe braking distance and depress the brake pedal to reduce the vehicle speed if necessary.
- The AEB is activated according to the distance from a front vehicle or a pedestrian, relative speed and the driver's response.
- The AEB detects the driving situation through the front sensor module (front camera module and front radar). If the driving situation is not covered by the front camera, the performance of the system may deteriorate.

Activation conditions

When the following conditions are met after the AEB is activated, the system operates normally.

- When the AEB is activated
- When the Front Camera Module (FCM) recognizes a vehicle and a pedestrian at the front normally
- When the vehicle speed is between 8 km/h and 60 km/h

Notice

- The AEB is ready to operate in preparation of an urgent (dangerous) situation and when the driver depresses the brake pedal, this auxiliary system responds promptly.
- When the AEB is activated, it supplements the optimal braking force required for decelerating the vehicle.
- If the urgent (dangerous) situation is cleared, the AEB control stops.
- The 1st warning is activated up to the vehicle speed of 180 km/h.

Deactivation conditions

When the following conditions are met after the AEB is activated, the system is deactivated and the AEB does not operate.

- When the AEB is deactivated
- When the vehicle speed exceeds 60 km/h
- When the steering wheel is operated
- When the gear shift lever is placed in the P (parking) or the R (reverse) position
- When the accelerator pedal is depressed



The AEB cannot detect a vehicle properly:

- on a sharply curved section or a steeply sloping road
- when the vehicle wobbles significantly
- when the tail lights of a front vehicle are asymmetrical or are not turned on at night
- when the rear side of a front vehicle is asymmetrical
- when a vehicle cuts in suddenly
- An animal, an object or a vehicle driving, or when the vehicle is driving in the opposite direction
- An approaching vehicle or a vehicle that is reversing
- An odd-shaped front vehicle
- When there is rapid change of illumination (tunnel entrance, etc.)
- When the shape is not visible due to shade right below an overpass

- There is poor visibility due to bad weather such as snow, rain and fog
- When the moisture formed on the glass of the windshield is not removed completely
- When the reflection from an object placed on the dashboard panel obstructs the recognition of the Front Camera Module (FCM)
- When there is a narrow object such as a motor cycle or a bicycle in front of the vehicle
- A vehicle moving or stopping perpendicularly to the driving direction at an intersection



Caution

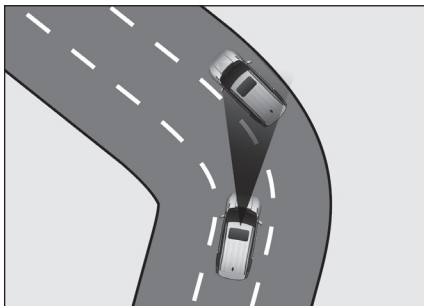
- **The driver's attention is required since the AEB may not respond normally or the system may malfunction when it is difficult to detect a vehicle.**

Curved road



On a curved road, a front vehicle on the same lane cannot be detected and the AEBs performance is reduced so that unnecessary warning or braking is applied or the system may not operate.

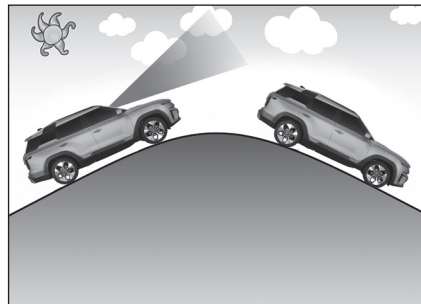
Check the front road and driving conditions on a curved road and adjust the vehicle speed directly by depressing the brake pedal if necessary.



A vehicle on another lane may be detected, affecting the speed. Check the front road and driving conditions and adjust the vehicle speed directly by depressing the brake pedal if necessary.

In such case, you can prevent unnecessary deceleration by depressing the accelerator pedal.

Sloping road

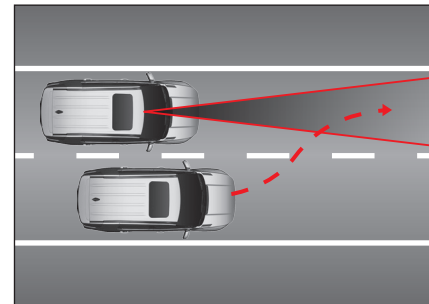


On a uphill road or a downhill road, a vehicle on the same lane cannot be detected and the AEBS performance is lowered so that unnecessary warning or braking is applied or the system may not operate.

Also, a front vehicle is detected suddenly and the warning and braking may be applied.

Check the front road and driving conditions on a uphill road or a downhill road and adjust the vehicle speed directly by depressing the brake pedal if necessary.

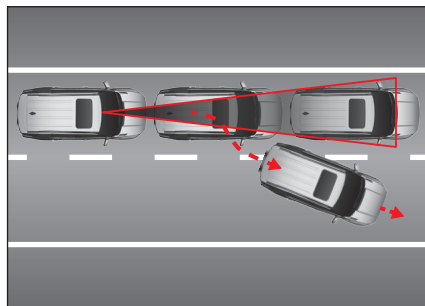
When changing the lane



When a vehicle on the next lane changes the lane to the same lane, the vehicle may not be detected until it enters the detection range of the Front Camera Module (FCM).

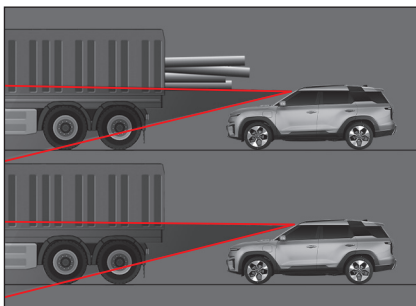
Always pay attention since a vehicle that cuts in suddenly may be detected late.

4



Caution should be taken that if there is a vehicle stopped in front of the vehicle ahead and the vehicle ahead moves out of the lane while your vehicle has been decelerated due to the AEBS operation, the vehicle stopped at the front is not selected as the control target, causing a collision risk.

Recognition of a vehicle ahead



Caution should be taken that a tall vehicle or a vehicle with cargo sticking out the back of the vehicle may cause a dangerous situation.

The AEBS cannot detect a pedestrian

- who is not standing normally
- whose body is hidden or who does not walk upright
- who moves fast
- who cuts in suddenly
- who wears clothes in a color similar to the background
- when the surrounding illumination intensity is too high or too low
- at night or when the surrounding area is dark
- if there is a structure similar to a person
- if he/she is short
- whose behavior is unstable
- When there is a situation that disables the AEBS to detect a pedestrian by environments
- when there are many people gathered together
- When there is an object (cart, bicycle, two-wheeler, suitcase, stroller, etc) pushed by the pedestrian



Warning

- The AEBS is not activated in all situations. Therefore, do not test the AEBS targeting a person or an object. Doing so may cause serious injury or death.
- When you start the vehicle, the AEBS is always activated automatically. If you need to deactivate the function, use the User Settings menu on the instrument cluster.
- If the AEBS is activated and you apply a sudden braking, occupants in the vehicle may face danger. Therefore, always pay attention just in case.
- If the front camera is stained with foreign materials, its detection function is lowered and the AEBS is deactivated temporarily. Always keep the camera clean.
- If the front camera has deviated from its normal position due to a shock, the system may not operate normally even if the warning light does not turn on or the warning message is not displayed on the instrument cluster.
- At night, the vehicle and pedestrian detection performance may be lowered since the lighting condition is poor in comparison to daytime.
- If frost forms on the windshield during winter, the front camera may not detect normally. Be sure to remove the frost.

- Failure to do so may result in unnecessary warning and braking, and the warning and braking may not be applied due to the detection limitation of the sensor.
- If a vehicle ahead applies a sudden braking, proper brake application may not be carried out, causing a collision. Always pay attention in preparation for a dangerous situation.
- If you tow another vehicle or a trailer, cancel the AEBS setting. Applying braking while towing may lower the safety of the vehicle.
- When you load the vehicle on a truck, a train or a ship that transports a vehicle, deactivate the AEBS. The system may be activated according to the contact condition in the loading process.

Caution

- The AEBS may be deactivated temporarily by a strong electromagnetic wave.
- Do not tint the Front Camera Module (FCM) detection area. Doing so may cause the relevant system to malfunction or not to operate.

Part prohibited for tinting (FCM detection area)

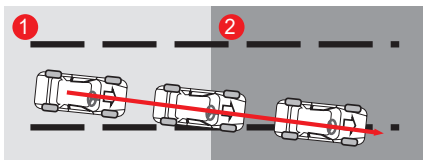


4



LDW (Lane Departure Warning)*

The LDW is a driving assist system that its Front Camera Module (FCM) detects the lanes ahead and issues a warning message and sounds the warning buzzer to help the driver to drive the vehicle while maintaining the vehicle on the line properly when the vehicle deviates from the lane with the turn signal not activated.

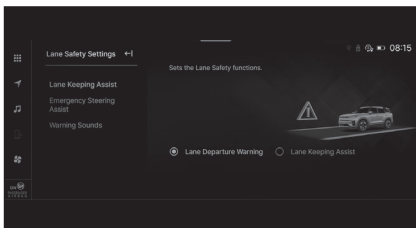


- 1 Detect the deviation of the lane with the turn signal not activated
- 2 Display a warning message and sound the warning buzzer

Warning

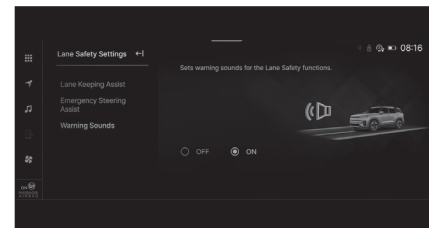
- The LDW prevents the lane departure, gives a warning to the driver and sounds the warning buzzer. Never depend on the lane departure warning system in any case and drive while checking the road condition.

To activate lane departure warning (LDW)



- From the main menu of the hypervisor control panel, select Vehicle Settings (🚗) → Driving Assistance → Lane Safety Settings → Lane Keeping Assist → Lane Departure Warning / Lane Keeping Assist.

How to set LKA warning sound



- From the main menu of the hypervisor control panel, select Vehicle Settings (🚗) → Driving Assistance → Lane Safety Settings → Lane Keeping Assist → Warning Sounds → ON/OFF.

You can turn the warning sound off or on when the Lane Departure Warning (LDW) system is operating.

To activate / deactivate Lane Departure Warning (LDW)

- Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position and press and hold the LDW setting button.
- At this time, the lane departure warning (LDW) indicator will illuminate and LDW is activated.

While the lane departure warning (LDW) is activated, press and hold the button again to deactivate the function.



LDW ON indicator



When the lane departure warning system is activated, the indicator on the instrument cluster turns on.

- White indicator turns on: The lane departure warning system is in ready status (the vehicle speed is below a prescribed speed or the lane is not recognized).
- Green indicator turns on: The lane departure warning system is operating normally.
- Yellow warning light turns on/blinks: When the LDW is abnormal

Activation conditions

If the following conditions are met, the LDW is activated.

- When the LDW is set
- When the vehicle speed is between 40 kph and 175 kph
- When the front camera recognizes the left and right lanes
- A straight road or gently curved road

☞ Refer to "LKA (LDW) indicator / warning lamp" (p.4-31)

4

Notice

- **Entry and release conditions depending on vehicle speed**
 - **Entry conditions: 40 kph or above, 155 kph or less**
 - **Release conditions: 35 kph or less, 165 kph or above**



Warning

- Be sure to hold the steering wheel while driving.
- The driver is responsible for operating the steering wheel to ensure the safe driving of the vehicle.
- Do not steer the vehicle rapidly when the lane departure warning system is activated.
- The lane departure warning system only gives a warning and sounds the warning buzzer. Therefore, the driver should keep the vehicle in the lane by steering the vehicle carefully while driving.
- The lane departure warning system may be deactivated, may not operate or may operate unnecessarily according to road condition and surrounding environment. Therefore, pay attention while driving.
- Do not attempt dangerous driving for activating the lane departure warning system.

Caution

- Do not tint or attach a sticker or an accessory to the Front Camera Module (FCM) detection area. Doing so may cause the relevant system to malfunction or not to operate normally.
- The lane departure warning system recognizes a lane using the camera, and if the lane is not recognized properly, the system may be deactivated or may operate unnecessarily, so be careful when using the system.
- If the lane is not recognized properly, be sure to check the conditions for driver's attention.
- Do not detach any component from the LDW or apply an impact to the LDW.
- Do not place a reflecting object (white paper or mirror) on the dashboard. Doing so may cause the system to malfunction due to the reflection of light.
- The warning buzzer of the LDW may not be heard due to the loud sound from the audio system.

Cases that the system is not activated

- When the turn signal and the hazard warning lamp are operated for changing the lane
- When both the left and right lanes are not recognized
- When the vehicle is driven on one side of the lane continuously without moving to the center of the lane after changing the lane
- If the steering wheel is operated suddenly for changing the lane (the system is not activated temporarily)
- When the Electronic stability control system (ESC) is activated
- When the vehicle is circling fast on a curved road
- When the vehicle speed is less than 40 kph and more than 175 kph
- When you need to change the lane rapidly
- When the width of the lane is too narrow or too wide so that the lane cannot be detected
- When there are 2 or more lane markings on the lane while driving (example: construction section)
- If the radius of a curved road is too small



- In case of a steep sloping road
- When the vehicle speed is reduced rapidly
- When the tinted part of the windshield covers a part of the Front Camera Module (FCM) detection range



Warning

- **Change the lane after operating the turn signal switch.**



Caution

- **Do not tint the Front Camera Module (FCM) detection area. Doing so may cause the relevant system to malfunction or not to operate.**

Part prohibited for tinting (FCM detection area)

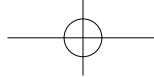


Cases requiring the driver's attention

In any of the following cases, the system may not operate or may operate unnecessarily. Therefore, the driver's attention is necessary.

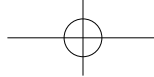
- If the lanes are not visible due to foreign substances (rain, snow, dust, puddle, wet road surface)
- If the color of lane markings and the road cannot be distinguished clearly
- If the lane markings are not clear or are damaged or two or more lane markings are present on one side
- If there are markings other than or similar to the lane marking near the lane
- If the lane markings are covered in the shade of median strips, guardrails, noise barriers, other structures or roadside trees
- If there are boundary structures such as sidewalk blocks
- If the lane is crowded due to the construction section or some lanes are replaced with structures

- When the lane suddenly disappears or is invisible on the intersection
- There is a section where the number of lanes increases or decreases or the lanes intersect complicatedly (tollgate entrance, road junction/merge section, etc)
- If the lane is too narrow or too wide
- If the distance from a vehicle ahead is extremely short or a vehicle ahead is driving while hiding the lane
- There is a marking for a crosswalk or road sign on the road surface
- If the visibility is poor due to bad weather such as fog, heavy rain or heavy snow
- If the visibility is poor so that the lane cannot be recognized
- When the brightness outside the vehicle changes rapidly such as the entering a tunnel
- When the light is weak or the head light of the vehicle is not used at night or in a tunnel section



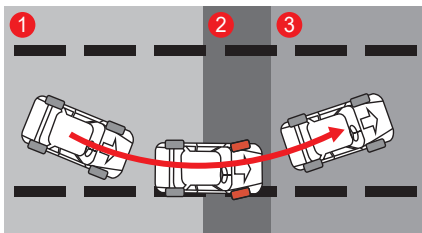
- When you drive the vehicle on the bus-only lane or on the left or right lane of the bus-only lane
- On a sharply curved section or a steeply sloping road
- when the vehicle wobbles significantly
- When a reflecting object (white paper or mirror, etc.) is placed on the dashboard
- When the windshield or the front side of the camera lens is contaminated with dust
- When the moisture formed on the glass of the windshield is not removed completely
- When the temperature near the camera is very high due to direct sunlight
- When there is backlight in the moving direction of the vehicle
- When the sunlight, streetlight or the light from an incoming vehicle is reflected by water on the road surface
- When front camera is arbitrarily refitted (Be sure to visit our authorized service center to perform the calibration of the front camera. Otherwise, it may cause the camera to malfunction.)

4-150 Starting and driving



Lane Keeping Assistance (LKA)*

The LKA (Lane Keeping Assist) is an assistive vehicle operation technology that detects vehicles up ahead using the FCM (Front Camera Module), and when the system detects that the vehicle is departing from the current lane without a lane change indication, the vehicle visually and audibly warns the driver through the LDW (Lane Departure Warning), and if the vehicle continues to depart from the lane, the vehicle maintains stays in the current lane by taking control using the EPS (Electronic Power Steering) system.

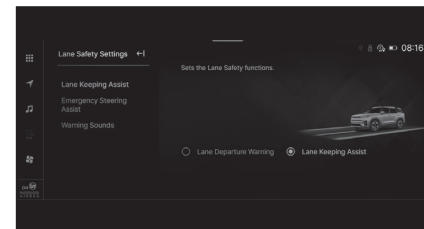


- 1 Lane departure without activation of turn signal lamp detected
- 2 Steering control by EPS as well as warning message and buzzer
- 3 The vehicle is steered toward the center of the lane.

Warning

- The LKA assists the driver with audible and visual warnings so that the vehicle does not move out of the driving lane unintentionally. Do not drive the vehicle in a dangerous or reckless manner relying on the LKA. Always drive safely paying attention to the road conditions.
- The LKA is an assistive device that precisely controls the steering wheel so that the vehicle does not leave the lane regardless of the intention of the driver.

To activate Lane Keeping Assistance (LKA)

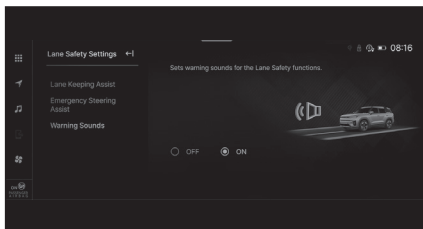


- From the main menu of the hypervisor control panel, select Vehicle Settings (F6) → Driving Assistance → Lane Safety Settings → Lane Keeping Assist → Lane Departure Warning / Lane Keeping Assist.

4



How to set LKA warning sound



- From the main menu of the hypervisor control panel, select Vehicle Settings (F6) → Driving Assistance → Lane Safety Settings → Lane Keeping Assist → Warning Sounds → ON/OFF.

You can turn the warning sound off or on when the Lane Keeping Assistance (LKA) system is operating.

To enable / disable LKA

- Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position and press and hold the LKA setting button.
- At this time, the lane keeping assistance (LKA) indicator will illuminate and LKA is activated.

While the lane keeping assistance (LKA) is activated, press and hold the button again to deactivate the function.



LKA ON indicator



This indicator light up on the instrument cluster when the LKA is activated.

- Indicator ON in white: System READY state (Vehicle speed below specified value or no lane detected)
- Indicator ON in green: LKA operates normally
- Indicator ON in yellow / flash: Faulty LKA system



Operating conditions

The LKA system is activated when:

- LKA is enabled
 - Vehicle travels at a speed between 40 kph and 175 kph
 - Front camera recognizes left/right lanes
 - Driving on a straight road or gentle curve
 - Turn signal is not activated
-  Refer to "LKA (LDW) indicator / warning lamp" (p.4-31)

Notice

- Entry and release conditions depending on vehicle speed
 - Entry conditions: 40 kph or above, 155 kph or less
 - Release conditions: 35 kph or less, 165 kph or above

Warning

- Do not release your hands from the steering wheel while driving.
- The driver is responsible for safe driving of the vehicle by maneuvering the steering wheel.
- Do not steer the vehicle rapidly while the LKA is activated.
- The LKA does not always control the steering wheel automatically.

Warning

- The LKA is only a device to assist with the steering wheel operation, and the driver is entirely responsible for maintaining the lane with the steering wheel operation.
- The LKA may be deactivated, not work at all, or activated when it is not desired depending on the road conditions and surrounding environment.
- Never drive the vehicle in a dangerous or reckless manner to test the LKA.
- When replacing the steering wheel system-relevant parts, have the system checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Dealer or KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.

Caution

- Do not attach sticker, accessory, tinting films on the detection area of the FCM. This can cause malfunctions and abnormal operation of the related systems.
- The LDW recognizes the lanes by using the images from the cameras. Keep in mind that the LDW may be deactivated or activated when it is not desired if the lanes are not recognized successfully.
- Pay close attention especially when the LKA fails to detect the lane markings.

Caution

- Do not remove any part of the LDW or apply impact on it.
- Do not put any object with reflective surface (white paper, mirror, etc.) on the instrument panel. Reflected lights can cause system malfunction.
- You may not hear the audible alert (chime) if the sound from your audio source is too loud.
- If you drive without holding the steering wheel for too long, LKA will be turned off automatically after the hands off alert.
- Please note that when driving at high speed, the steering assist force of the lane keeping assist system may be reduced, which can cause the vehicle to leave the lane.
- The driver is responsible for operating the steering wheel.
- The driver can still steer the vehicle in the event of the faulty LKA.
- Please operate the steering wheel by hand without using the LKA when:
 - Weather is bad
 - Road condition is not good
 - Frequent steering wheel control is required
- You may feel that the steering wheel is heavy or light when the LKA is not operating.



Cases that the system is not activated

- When the turn signal and the hazard warning lamp are operated for changing the lane
- When both the left and right lanes are not recognized
- When the vehicle is driven on one side of the lane continuously without moving to the center of the lane after changing the lane
- If the steering wheel is operated suddenly for changing the lane (the system is not activated temporarily)
- When the Electronic stability control system (ESC) is activated
- When the vehicle is circling fast on a curved road
- When the vehicle speed is less than 40 kph and more than 175 kph
- When you need to change the lane rapidly
- When the width of the lane is too narrow or too wide so that the lane cannot be detected
- When there are 2 or more lane markings on the lane while driving (example: construction section)
- If the radius of a curved road is too small

- In case of a steep sloping road
- When the vehicle speed is reduced rapidly
- When the tinted part of the windshield covers a part of the Front Camera Module (FCM) detection range

Warning

- **Change the lane after operating the turn signal switch.**

Caution

- **Do not tint the Front Camera Module (FCM) detection area. Doing so may cause the relevant system to malfunction or not to operate.**

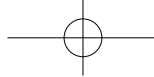
Part prohibited for tinting (FCM detection area)



Cases requiring the driver's attention

In any of the following cases, the system may not operate or may operate unnecessarily. Therefore, the driver's attention is necessary.

- If the lanes are not visible due to foreign substances (rain, snow, dust, puddle, wet road surface)
- If the color of lane markings and the road cannot be distinguished clearly
- If the lane markings are not clear or are damaged or two or more lane markings are present on one side
- If there are markings other than or similar to the lane marking near the lane
- If the lane markings are covered in the shade of median strips, guardrails, noise barriers, other structures or roadside trees
- If there are boundary structures such as sidewalk blocks
- If the lane is crowded due to the construction section or some lanes are replaced with structures



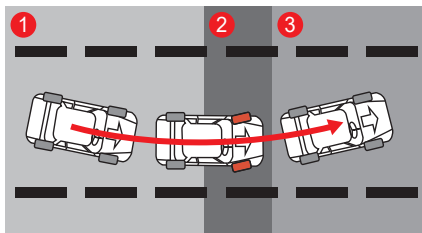
- When the lane suddenly disappears or is invisible on the intersection
- There is a section where the number of lanes increases or decreases or the lanes intersect complicatedly (tollgate entrance, road junction/merge section, etc)
- If the lane is too narrow or too wide
- If the distance from a vehicle ahead is extremely short or a vehicle ahead is driving while hiding the lane
- There is a marking for a crosswalk or road sign on the road surface
- If the visibility is poor due to bad weather such as fog, heavy rain or heavy snow
- If the visibility is poor so that the lane cannot be recognized
- When the brightness outside the vehicle changes rapidly such as the entering a tunnel
- When the light is weak or the head light of the vehicle is not used at night or in a tunnel section

- When you drive the vehicle on the bus-only lane or on the left or right lane of the bus-only lane
- On a sharply curved section or a steeply sloping road
- when the vehicle wobbles significantly
- When a reflecting object (white paper or mirror, etc.) is placed on the dashboard
- When the windshield or the front side of the camera lens is contaminated with dust
- When the moisture formed on the glass of the windshield is not removed completely
- When the temperature near the camera is very high due to direct sunlight
- When there is backlight in the moving direction of the vehicle
- When the sunlight, streetlight or the light from an incoming vehicle is reflected by water on the road surface
- When front camera is arbitrarily refitted (Be sure to visit our authorized service center to perform the calibration of the front camera. Otherwise, it may cause the camera to malfunction.)



Centering Lane Keeping Assist (CLKA)*

The centering lane keeping assist is a driving aid that, once the front camera module (FCM) recognizes the lane ahead, helps the driver's vehicle stay on the road-edge through steering wheel (EPS) control.



- 1 Vehicle leaving center of lane detected
- 2 Steering control by EPS as well as warning message and buzzer
- 3 Controls vehicle to move to center of lane

Notice

- To operate the centering lane keeping assist (CLKA), the driver must always press the LKA setting button briefly after turning the ignition switch to the ON position.

Warning

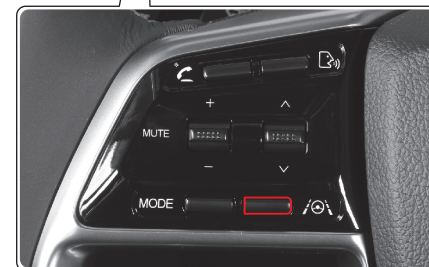
- The centering lane keeping assist (CLKA) is the system that provides a visual and audible warning to the driver to keep the driver's vehicle between lanes (center). Do not drive the vehicle in a dangerous or reckless manner relying on the CLKA. Always drive safely paying attention to the road conditions.
- The CLKA is an assistive device that precisely controls the steering wheel so that the vehicle does not get out of the middle of the lane regardless of the driver's intention.

To activate / deactivate CLKA

Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position and press the LKA setting button briefly.

At this time, the centering lane keeping assist (CLKA) indicator will illuminate and CLKA is activated regardless of the lane departure warning (LDW) and lane keeping assistance (LKA) settings.

While the CLKA is activated, press the button briefly again to deactivate the function.





Centering lane keeping assist (CLKA) ON indicator lamp



- When the centering lane keeping assist (CLKA) is activated, the indicator illuminates on the instrument cluster.
- Indicator ON in white: CLKA standby mode (Vehicle speed below specified value or no lane detected)
- Indicator ON in green: CLKA normal operation
- Indicator ON in yellow / flash: In the event of faulty CLKA

Notice

- For safe operation, turning the ignition switch to the OFF position cancels the setting of the centering lane keeping assist (CLKA). Press the button briefly to operate the CLKA.
- If intelligent cruise control (IACC) is activated during CLKA operation, CLKA will be disabled. If IACC is subsequently disabled, CLKA is automatically reactivated.

Conditions for activation

CLKA will be activated when:

- LKA setting button is pressed briefly.
- Vehicle speed is 180 km/h or lower.
- Front camera recognizes left/right lanes.
- The vehicle is driving on a straight road or gentle curve.
- Turn signal is not activated.
- Turn signal on the opposite side of direction in which you are about to move is operated.

☞ Refer to "LKA (LDW) indicator / warning lamp" (p.4-31)

4



Warning

- Do not release your hands from the steering wheel while driving.
- The driver is responsible for safe driving of the vehicle by maneuvering the steering wheel.
- Do not steer the vehicle unnecessarily rapidly while the CLKA is activated.
- The CLKA does not always provide the steering wheel control automatically.
- The CLKA is only a device to assist with the steering wheel operation, and the driver is entirely responsible for maintaining the lane with the steering wheel operation.
- The CLKA may be deactivated, not work at all, or activated when it is not desired depending on the road conditions and surrounding environment.
- Do not try to drive the vehicle in a dangerous or reckless manner to see how the CLKA is operated.
- When replacing the steering wheel system-relevant parts, have the system checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Dealer or KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.

Caution

- Do not attach sticker, accessory, tinting films on the detection area of the FCM. This can cause malfunctions and abnormal operation of the related systems.
- The CLKA recognizes the lanes by using the images from the cameras. Keep in mind that the CLKA may be deactivated or perform unnecessary operations if the lanes are not recognized successfully.
- Pay close attention especially when the LKAS fails to detect the lane markings.
- Do not remove any part of the CLKA arbitrarily or apply impact on it.
- Do not put any object with reflective surface (white paper, mirror, etc.) on the instrument panel. Reflected lights can cause system malfunction.
- You may not hear the audible alert (chime) from CLKA if the sound from your audio source is too loud.
- If you drive without holding the steering wheel for too long, CLKA will be disabled automatically after the hands off alert.

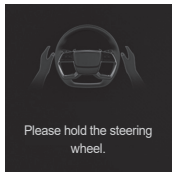
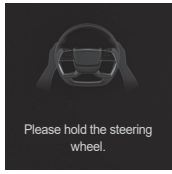
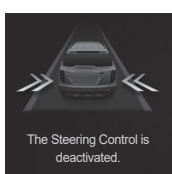
Caution

- Please note that when driving at high speed, the steering assist force of the CLKA may be reduced, which can cause the vehicle to leave the lane.
- The driver is responsible for operating the steering wheel.
- The driver can still steer the vehicle in the event of the faulty CLKA.
- Please operate the steering wheel by hand without using the CLKA when:
 - Weather is bad
 - Road condition is not good
 - Frequent steering wheel control is required
- You may feel that the steering wheel is heavy or light under conditions in which CLKA does not assist steering wheel operation.



Centering lane keeping assist (CLKA) hands-off warning

If the driver is not holding the steering wheel while the steering wheel is being controlled by the central lane keeping assist (CLKA), the hands-off warning will be displayed in two stages. After the second stage, the CLKA function will be deactivated.

Pop-up	Description
	- Step 1: Message - Warning message is displayed.
	- Step 2: Message + warning - Warning message is displayed and beep sounds.
	- System deactivated: Message + warning - After the second warning message, the system will shut down after a certain period of time.

Caution

- If the driver hold the steering wheel so weakly that there is no left or right movement when driving on a straight road, the system may determine that the driver does not hold the steering wheel and may generate a hands-off warning.
- Hands-off warning may be issued late depending on the road conditions. Always hold the steering wheel while driving.

Caution

The steering wheel (steering force) control system may not function or intervene unnecessarily under following circumstances:

- The system cannot recognize the lane markings because of rain, snow, dust, standing water or puddles, other obstruction on the road.
- The color of the lane markings is not clearly distinct from the road color.
- The lane markings are not clear or tampered by the traffic, or there are 2 or more lane markings on one side.
- There are other markings similar to the lane markings on the roads.

- The lane markings are covered in shadows of the median barriers, guardrails, noise barrier walls, roadside trees.
- There are environmental barriers, such as bollard.
- The traffic is heavy due to the construction in the area or traffic control items, such as traffic cones, are used to separate traffic flows.
- The lane markings are suddenly discontinued at roundabouts and road intersections.
- The vehicle is passing through a certain section, such as highway interchange, where the number of lanes increases or decreases.
- The width of the driving lane is too narrow or wide.
- The distance to the vehicle ahead is too short or a wheel of the vehicle ahead is touching the lane marker.
- There are other roadway markings on the roads, such as crosswalk markings, arrows, symbols, along with the lane markings.



Caution

- Poor visibility due to factors such as fog, heavy rain, heavy snow, etc.
- Hard to recognize other vehicles and pedestrians because of poor visibility.
- There is rapid change of illumination, for example at tunnel entry and exit points
- The headlamps are not turned on or the brightness of the lamps is too low when driving at night or through tunnels.
- When you are traveling within or near the outer edges of the bus-only lane.
- The vehicle is driven on a steep hill or around sharp corners.
- the vehicle is driven under specific conditions which cause severe vibration.
- Objects with reflective surface (white paper, mirror, etc.) are on the dashboard.
- The windshield glass in front of the camera module is covered with ice, snow, slush, mud, dirt or debris.
- Fog or mist on the windshield.
- The temperature around the front view camera is too high because of the direct sunlight.
- The vehicle is moving towards a light source.
- The light from the sun, streetlamps, or headlamps of oncoming vehicles is reflected by the wet road surface.
- Bend such as sharp S-curve

The CLKA does not work when:

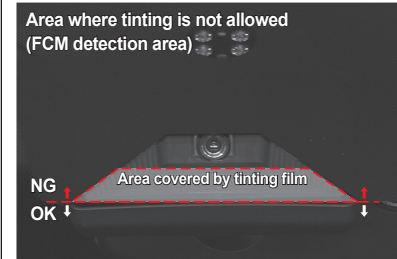
- The driver activates the turn signal lamps or hazard warning lamp.
- Both lanes are not detected.
- The vehicle keeps being driven too close to any side of the lane after changing the lane.
- The driver changes the lane with abrupt steering wheel operation. (temporarily system inactivated)
- Electronic stability control (ESC) is activated.
- The vehicle is cornering at high speed.
- Vehicle speed is above 180 km/h
- The driver changes the lane abruptly.
- The lane is too narrow or too wide to recognize it.
- There are 2 or more lane markings (e.g. construction zone).
- The vehicle is driven around a curve with too small radius.
- The vehicle is driven on steep hills.
- The vehicle decelerates abruptly.
- The windshield tinting film covers the detection range of the front camera module (FCM).

Warning

- Activate the turn signal lamps before trying to make a lane-change.

Caution

- Do not apply tinting film on the FCM detection area. This may cause the related system to malfunction or not work.





Driver Attention Required

The CLKA may not work at all or be activated when it is not desired in the following conditions:

- The system cannot recognize the lane markings because of rain, snow, dust, standing water or puddles, other obstruction on the road.
- The color of the lane markings is not clearly distinct from the road color.
- The lane markings are not clear or tampered by the traffic, or there are 2 or more lane markings on one side.
- There are other markings similar to the lane markings on the roads.
- The lane markings are covered in shadows of the median barriers, guardrails, noise barrier walls, roadside trees.
- There are environmental barriers, such as bollard.
- The traffic is heavy due to the construction in the area or traffic control items, such as traffic cones, are used to separate traffic flows.
- The lane markings are suddenly discontinued at roundabouts and road intersections.
- The vehicle is passing through a certain section, such as highway interchange, where the number of lanes increases or decreases.
- The width of the driving lane is too narrow or wide.
- The distance to the vehicle ahead is too short or a wheel of the vehicle ahead is touching the lane marker.
- There are other roadway markings on the roads, such as crosswalk markings, arrows, symbols, along with the lane markings.
- Poor visibility due to factors such as fog, heavy rain, heavy snow, etc.
- Hard to recognize other vehicles and pedestrians because of poor visibility.
- There is rapid change of illumination, for example at tunnel entry and exit points
- The headlamps are not turned on or the brightness of the lamps is too low when driving at night or through tunnels.
- When you are traveling within or near the outer edges of the bus-only lane.
- The vehicle is driven on a steep hill or around sharp corners.
- the vehicle is driven under specific conditions which cause severe vibration.
- Objects with reflective surface (white paper, mirror, etc.) are on the dashboard.
- The windshield glass in front of the camera module is covered with ice, snow, slush, mud, dirt or debris.
- Fog or mist on the windshield.
- The temperature around the front view camera is too high because of the direct sunlight.
- The vehicle is moving towards a light source.
- The light from the sun, streetlamps, or headlamps of oncoming vehicles is reflected by the wet road surface.
- When front camera is arbitrarily refitted (Be sure to visit our authorized service center to perform the calibration of the front camera. Otherwise, it may cause the camera to malfunction.)



Adaptive Cruise Control*

The Adaptive Cruise Control System is an auxiliary convenience device that maintains a constant vehicle speed without having to press the accelerator pedal in a traffic flow that is above the legal safety distance, and maintains a constant distance from the vehicle in front at a set distance when detecting a vehicle in front.

The ACC system is not a safety driving device, so always drive with an eye on the vehicle's speed and the surrounding conditions.

Adaptive cruise control switch



- ① Adaptive Cruise Control switch
 - When Adaptive Cruise Control and Speed Limit are not active, briefly pressing the switch engages Adaptive Cruise Control (ON)
 - With Adaptive Cruise Control active, a short switch press puts Adaptive Cruise Control on standby
 - With Adaptive Cruise Control activated (ON) or on standby, pressing and holding switch turns Adaptive Cruise Control off (OFF)
- ② Speed selector lever
 - RES+
 - Reactivating Cruise Control
 - Increasing speed
 - SET-
 - Setting cruise control driving speed
 - Decreasing speed
- ③ Adaptive Speed Assistance (ISA) ON/OFF switch
- ④ Safe distance setting switch

☞ Refer to "Speed limit warning" (p.4-202)

Conditions for using Cruise Control

Please use cruise control in the following traffic and road conditions.

- Use it when the traffic is smooth.
- Please use this function on roads with little or no changes in driving conditions, as roads with many traffic lights, vehicles, pedestrians, and other factors may cause accidents.

Warning

- Use the cruise control system on roads with good road conditions.
- Stop using it in the following road conditions as it may be impossible to control the vehicle and cause an accident:
 - Hard wind or crosswind
 - Traffic congestion
 - Slippery roads, ramps or continuous turns

Notice

- For the safe operation of the driver, the ACC (Adaptive Cruise Control) will be deactivated when the ignition switch is in the OFF position.
- In order to use ACC, you need to reset it.

Adaptive Cruise Control Ready / Enabled Display



Set adaptive cruise (enabled)

When Adaptive Cruise Control and Speed Limit are not active, briefly pressing the switch engages Adaptive Cruise Control (ON).

- A** "Adaptive Cruise Control set" pop-up displayed
- B** "Adaptive Cruise" message displayed
- C** Shows how distance to vehicle in front is set (It does not appear when the system is in a ready state).
- D** Shows speed set for vehicle

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) operates when the vehicle is traveling at speeds above about 10km/h.



Adaptive Cruise Control Ready

With Adaptive Cruise Control active, briefly press the corresponding switch.

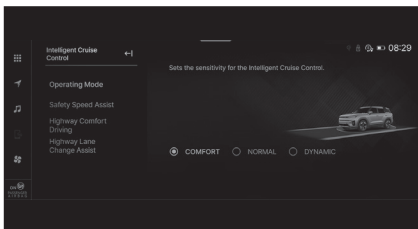
The instrument cluster displays the following message and Adaptive Cruise Control enters the ready mode.

- “Adaptive cruise READY” pop-up displayed
- Symbol and “--- km/h” indicating that system ready to display speed displayed

Notice

- **To switch off Adaptive Cruise Control, press and hold the Speed Limit and Adaptive Cruise Control ON switch while the system is ready and operating.**

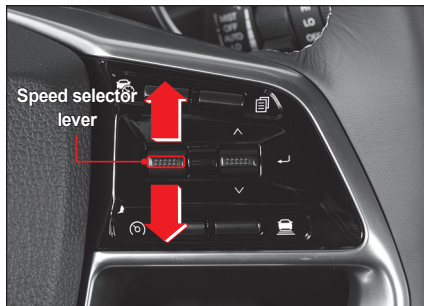
To set adaptive cruise control (ACC) operation sensitivity



- In the main menu of the hypervisor control panel, select Vehicle Settings (F6) → Driving Assistance → Adaptive Cruise Control → Operation Mode → COMFORT/NORMAL/DYNAMIC.

Driving settings of adaptive cruise control (ACC)

- 1 Press the cruise control ON/OFF switch. The adaptive cruise control (ACC) is activated.
 - “Adaptive cruise control set” message is displayed on the instrument cluster.
 - Then, the vehicle maintains the set speed without depressing the accelerator pedal and keeps driving in the middle of the lane via steering wheel (steering force) control.
 - If a preceding vehicle is detected, the driver's vehicle will travel while maintaining a set distance to the vehicle ahead.
- 2 When the adaptive cruise control (ACC) is activated, the vehicle speed is set as follows:
 - Set to 30 km/h if vehicle speed less than 30 km/h
 - Set to current speed if vehicle speed 30 km/h or higher
- 3 You can change the set speed by lowering the speed control lever towards SET- or raising it towards RES+.



Caution

- The vehicle speed may decrease or increase temporarily on uphill or downhill while the adaptive cruise control is operating.



Warning

- Familiarize yourself with the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) system thoroughly before setting or disabling the function. ACC operation must be set while driving, so if it is operated improperly or without understanding the system, it may cause an accident.
- Do not change the transmission shift lever to the N (neutral) position when the ACC is activated while driving. This may cause an abnormality in the relevant system or cause an accident.
- When cruising at a constant speed with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) activated, you should drive safely to be prepared for any situation that may arise on the road, and be prepared to immediately operate the brake and accelerator pedals.
- Always keep a safe braking distance and step on the brake when necessary.
- The vehicle speed may vary and different from the set speed when driving up and down a hill. If possible, avoid using the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) system on hills or slopes. In particular, use the engine brake and foot brake on steep slopes for safety and to protect the vehicle system as well as for safe driving.

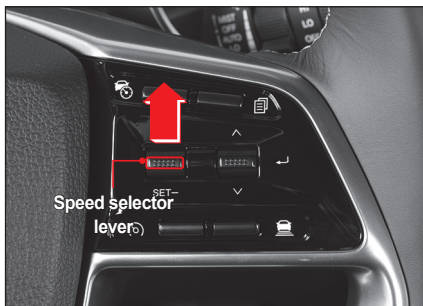
Notice

- If the tires of your vehicle are replaced with tires with different size at your disposal, it may cause an error in the set speed. In this case, please contact our service center.
- Refer to the following contents for operation details depending on vehicle conditions.



Increasing speed

To increase the set speed during adaptive cruise control operation, push the speed selector lever up toward RES+ without depressing the accelerator pedal.



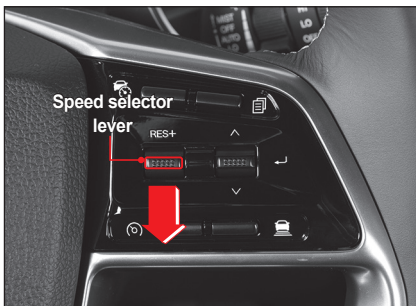
- Each time you push up the speed selector lever briefly, the speed increases by 5 km/h.
- If you push up the speed control lever for a long time, the speed increases by 10km/h. The vehicle setting speed increases continuously while the lever is being raised. (The set speed increases by a factor of 10.)
- You can set up to 180 km/h.

Caution

- Since if you push up and hold the lever the vehicle speed increases quickly, be careful of the surrounding situation when operating.

Decreasing speed

To decrease the set speed during adaptive cruise control operation, push the speed selector lever down toward SET- without depressing the accelerator pedal.



- Each time you push down the speed selector lever briefly, the speed decreases by 5 km/h.
- If you push down and hold the speed selector lever, the speed decreases by 10 km/h. The set speed decreases continuously while the lever is being lowered. (The set speed decreases by a factor of 10.)
- The lowest settable speed is 30 km/h.

Temporary acceleration (override)

Depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle temporarily while adaptive cruise control is in operation.

Temporary acceleration is possible by driver's will without affecting the set speed.

In order to return the set speed, release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle will travel at the set speed.

Caution

- If you depress the accelerator pedal for more than about 60 seconds for temporary acceleration, the adaptive cruise control system will stop operating.



Deactivating

If any of the following conditions is met while adaptive cruise control is operating, it will be disabled. (adaptive cruise control ready mode)

Disable conditions

- Brake pedal depressed for braking
- Depressing accelerator pedal for more than 60 sec (override)
- Electric vehicle posture stability control system in operation (e.g., ESC, TCS and ABS)
- Electric vehicle posture stability control system OFF (by ESC OFF switch)
- SBW (shift by wire) in positions other than D (drive)
- EPB applied
- Driver's door open
- Maximum adaptive cruise control speed (180 kph) exceeded
- 3rd warning, emergency braking applied by AEBS
- HDC system in operation
- Heavily contaminated radar sensor cover

Other disable conditions

- No preceding vehicle at the time of restart after vehicle stop by control
- Distance to front vehicle too far or too close during vehicle stop control
- Vehicle stop control occurs frequently

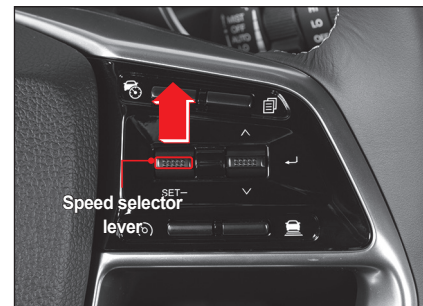
Notice

- If "Adaptive cruise control READY" message is displayed on the instrument cluster with the disable conditions met, when you push up the speed selector lever toward RES+ briefly, the adaptive cruise control is reactivated.
- To restart the vehicle in which AUTO HOLD is operating at the same time, you should depress the accelerator pedal.

Resume

If the adaptive cruise control is disabled (adaptive cruise control ready), you may reactivate it.

Push up the speed control lever toward RES+ briefly at a vehicle speed of about 10km/h or higher without depressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.



4

- The set speed returns to the value before adaptive cruise control was disabled.



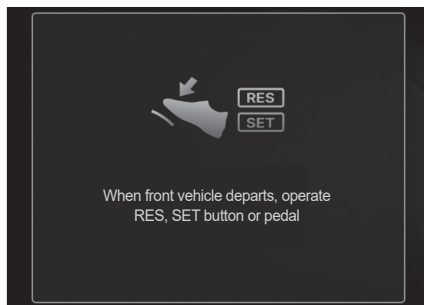
Caution

- **When resuming, the vehicle speed can be increased or decreased quickly to the set speed just before it is disabled. Be aware of the surrounding road conditions before resuming.**

If the following message is displayed on the instrument cluster while the vehicle is stationary, push up or lower the speed selector lever briefly toward RES+ or SET-.

Then, the adaptive cruise control resumes.

Depressing the accelerator pedal also resumes the adaptive cruise control.



To Deactivate

In order to completely deactivate the adaptive cruise control (ACC), press the cruise control ON/OFF switch.

- Adaptive cruise pop-up disappears on the instrument cluster.

When not using the adaptive cruise control, always press the switch to deactivate it.

Caution

- **If you depress the accelerator pedal for more than about 60 seconds for temporary acceleration, the adaptive cruise control system will stop operating.**

Warning

- **When not using the adaptive cruise control, always turn off the system.**
- **Always set the speed of the adaptive cruise control within the speed range specified by law.**
- **Check the surrounding road conditions prior to using the adaptive cruise control.**
- **Do not use the adaptive cruise control under following circumstances:**
 - Near high interchange and tollgate
 - Where there are a lot of metals around road such as construction site and iron tunnel
 - Where lanes and guard rails in close proximity
 - Where there is no lane such as parking lot
 - Uphill or downhill with steep incline
 - Poor visibility due to factors such as fog, heavy rain, heavy snow, etc.
- **The adaptive cruise control is a convenience feature for the driver. Do not use it as a safety device.**
- **The vehicle control should be determined by the driver at his/her own discretion. Relying on adaptive cruise control only increases the risk of accidents.**

To set safety distance to front vehicle

If the preceding vehicle is detected while the adaptive cruise control is operating, this system allows the driver's vehicle to maintain a distance to the preceding vehicle constant.

If the adaptive cruise control is activated, it will operate with the previously set safety distance without separate operation. If necessary, press the safety distance set button to change the inter-vehicle distance (safety distance) in 5 steps.

Set the safety distance according to the current vehicle speed.



- The set speed returns to the value before adaptive cruise control (ACC) was disabled.



- If no preceding vehicle is detected, the vehicle travels at a speed set to the adaptive cruise control system.
- When the preceding vehicle accelerates and the inter-vehicle distance increases, the driver's vehicle accelerates only up to the set speed and then travels at constant speed.



Forward situation awareness



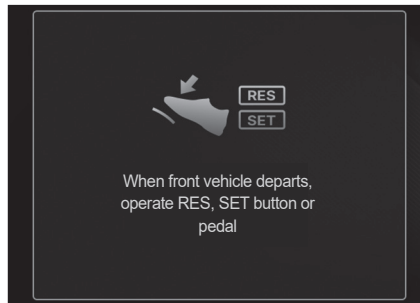
If the distance to the front vehicle is so close that a collision can occur or the front vehicle disappears from the front view due to lane change, etc. while the adaptive cruise control is activated, the message is displayed on the instrument cluster.

- If the driver has to operate the brake pedal or steering wheel, immediately reduce the vehicle speed or change the direction.

Caution

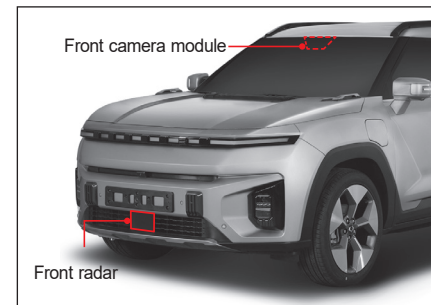
- If the front vehicle disappears from the front view due to lane change, etc. while traveling and maintaining the distance to the front vehicle constant at a low speed the driver's vehicle may collide with a newly appearing stationary vehicle or object.

Starting at congested areas



When the adaptive cruise control is operating, in congested areas, drive the vehicle while maintaining the distance to the front vehicle constant. Depress the accelerator pedal or push up the speed selector lever toward RES+ briefly or lower it toward SET- briefly to restart the vehicle 3 seconds after since the vehicle stops due to the front stationary vehicle.

Front detection sensor (Front radar + front camera)

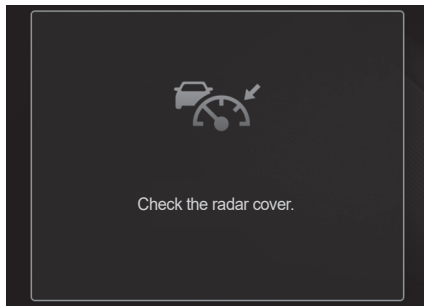


Front radar

It is a sensor that detects the front vehicle and allows the driver's vehicle to maintain the distance to the front vehicle constant and follow the front vehicle. If snow, rain, or foreign objects are stuck around the front sensor, the sensing performance of the sensor may deteriorate and adaptive cruise control may not function or may be temporarily disabled. Always keep the area around the front radar sensor clean.

Front camera

The camera detects the lane ahead of the vehicle through the sensor of the front camera module (FCM), allowing the vehicle to maintain the middle of the lane during adaptive cruise control operation. Always keep the area around the front camera module clean.



Caution

- Always keep the area around the front detection sensor clean and never attach any accessory (license plate molding, sticker etc.).
- Be careful not to damage the sensor due to high-pressure washing or to prevent water from entering during car washing (lower part).
- After car washing, be sure to wipe off moisture around the sensor.
- Avoid subjecting the front bumper to impacts. The impact may change the sensing area of the sensor.
- Use a genuine sensor only.
- Do not paint the front bumper arbitrarily.

Vehicle detection is difficult under the following circumstances:

- Driving on a steep hill or sharp corners
- Driving under specific conditions which cause severe vehicle vibration
- A vehicle or a pedestrian recklessly cuts in front of you
- There is an approaching or reversing vehicle
- there is a vehicle with arbitrary shape
- Vehicle traveling close to one side lane or ahead
- Vehicle traveling at a very low speed or performing abrupt deceleration
- Stationary vehicle
- Vehicle with narrow rear structure (trailer, motorcycle, bicycle, etc.)
- When driving on a narrow road or a road with heavy curve
- When operating steering wheel
- When front part of vehicle lifted upwards due to excessive load in luggage compartment
- Foreign object stuck in sensor due to snow, rain, fog, etc.
- Vehicle which moves or is parked perpendicular to the direction of travel for your vehicle

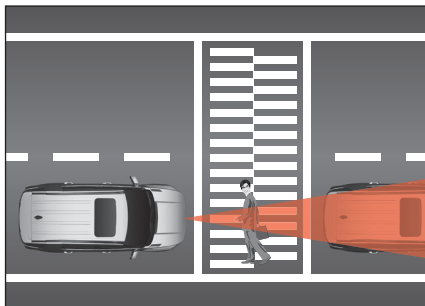


Caution

- The system may not recognize the preceding vehicle under the circumstances described earlier. Special care is required. Always be careful of motor traffic and reduce the vehicle speed by depressing the brake pedal, if needed.



Not detected preceding pedestrian



- The adaptive cruise control may not detect people.
- When traveling while maintaining the inter-vehicle distance, if a pedestrian appears in front of your vehicle, which can cause a dangerous situation.

Curved road



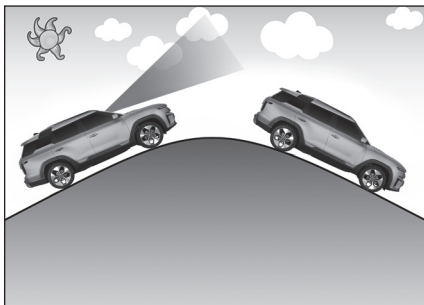
- The system may fail to recognize a preceding vehicle in the same lane on a curved road and accelerate the vehicle to the set speed rapidly.
- If the preceding vehicle is suddenly detected, the vehicle speed may decelerate rapidly.
- Always be careful of motor traffic and reduce the vehicle speed by depressing the brake pedal, if needed.



- It may detect a vehicle in a different lane on a curve and which may affect the driver's vehicle speed. Always be careful of motor traffic and reduce the vehicle speed by depressing the brake pedal.
- In this case, check the traffic conditions around you, then step on the accelerator pedal to prevent unnecessary deceleration.



Uphill or downhill

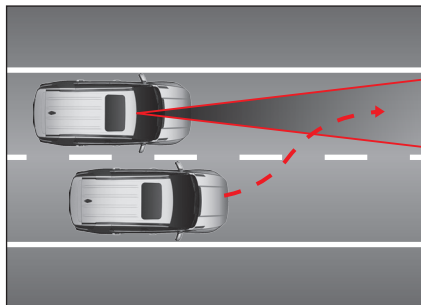


- The vehicle may accelerate to the driver set speed rapidly by failing to recognize a preceding vehicle in the same lane on an uphill or downhill.
- If the preceding vehicle is suddenly detected, the vehicle speed may decelerate rapidly.
- Always be careful of motor traffic on the uphill or downhill and reduce the vehicle speed by depressing the brake pedal, if needed.

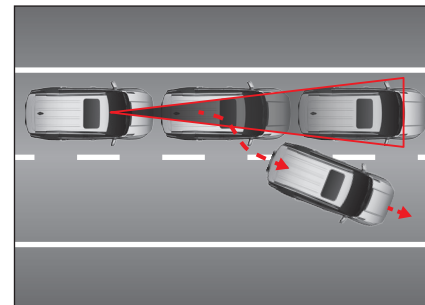
Warning

- **Never charge the battery over 90% SOC in high altitudes such as mountainous areas.**
- **When driving downhill after fully charging the battery, braking may be delayed due to the inability of regenerative braking.**

To change lane



- When a vehicle in the lane next to you enters the same lane, the system may fail to recognize this vehicle until it enters into the sensor detection area.
- Be cautious at all times since the sensor may detect a vehicle cutting in suddenly late.
- Make sure to decelerate to maintain the vehicle-to-vehicle distance when an interposing vehicle's speed is lower than the driving speed.
- Make sure to keep the set speed to maintain the distance to a preceding vehicle when an interposing vehicle's speed is faster than the driving speed.

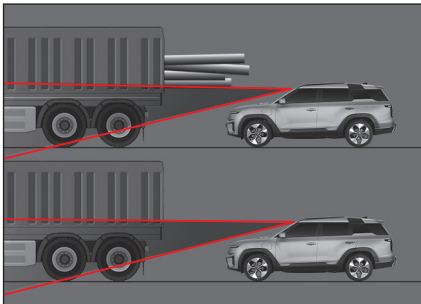


- If the front vehicle leaves the lane due to lane change, etc., be careful that there is a risk of collision because the system can not detect another vehicle ahead.

4



Detecting vehicle ahead



- Your attention is always required while driving behind a vehicle carrying cargo longer than the cargo bed or with high ground clearance because the AEBS may not work properly.



Warning

- In the event of an emergency, always stop the vehicle by depressing the brake pedal.
- Keep safety distance at all times. In particular, if you set the distance to the preceding vehicle to closer at high speed, it can cause a very dangerous situation such as collision with the front vehicle.
- The adaptive cruise control system can not cope with the vehicles parked in front, vehicle stopping suddenly, pedestrians, vehicles coming on opposite sides, etc. The driver should always be careful to look ahead and respond to unforeseen circumstances.
- If the preceding vehicle changes lanes frequently, the sensor recognition response rate may be slower. The driver should always be careful to look ahead and respond to unforeseen circumstances.
- The adaptive cruise control is a convenience device for the driver and not a safety device. The safe maneuvering and controls are always the driver's responsibility.



Warning

- The driver should always be aware of the adaptive cruise control set speed and distance to the front vehicle.
- Always allow for extra distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead. Reduce the vehicle speed by depressing the brake pedal, if needed.
- The adaptive cruise control can not recognize complicated traffic conditions, so you should always be careful about traffic conditions while it is operation and the driver must adjust the vehicle speed personally in dangerous situations.
- To use the adaptive cruise control more safely, be sure to read and familiarize yourself with the user manual before using it.



Caution

- The adaptive cruise control may be deactivated in an instant by strong electromagnetic waves.



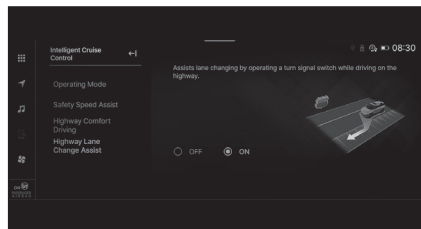
Automatic Lane Change (ALC)*

Automatic Lane Change (ALC) is an assistive system that uses the front camera module, front radar, front corner sensors, and rear corner sensors to help the driver safely change lanes on the highway automatically with just a turn signal operation while driving on the highway.

Warning

- Automatic Lane Change (ALC) is an assistive system that help you drive safely. Do not rely on the ALC system under any circumstances, and be sure to check road conditions while driving.
- If you receive an alert that there is a problem with the ALC system, have it inspected and repaired at our nearest authorized service center.

How to set Automatic Lane Change (ALC)



- From the main menu of the hypervisor control panel, select Vehicle Settings (⚙️) → Driving Assistance → Intelligent Cruise Control → Highway Lane Change Assist → ON/OFF.



Caution

- You can set up Automatic Lane Change with Highway Driving Assist turned on.
- This feature only works when Highway Driving Assist, Automatic Lane Change, Centering Lane Keeping Assist and Intelligent Cruise Control are all set.

Notice

- If you turn the ignition off and then on, Highway Driving Assist remains on.

4



Operating Conditions

Automatic Lane Change (ALC) is activated when the following conditions are met:

- Highway Driving Assist set
- Centering Lane Keeping Assistance activated
- Intelligent Cruise Control activated
- After ignition turned on, vehicle behind you detected at least once
- Hazard warning indicator turned off
- Vehicle speed when changing lanes: 60 km/h to 180 km/h
- Navigation activated
- Road driver is traveling on is a highway or an automobile-only road
- On steering wheel
- Driver holding steering wheel
- No forward safety and blind spot warnings
- No collision risk in the lane to be changed
- Lane to be changed marked with a single dotted line
- Lane to be changed is drivable road
- Vehicle is driving in the center of road (not lean to one side)

Notice

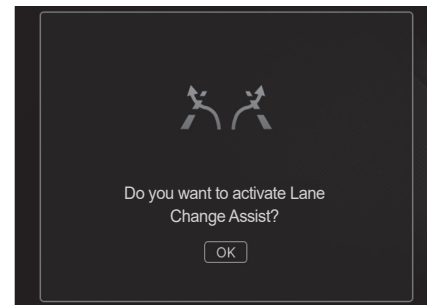
- **Lane Safety setting does not pause even if a turn signal or emergency warning light is operated while Automatic Lane Change is set.**
- **Automatic Lane Change (ALC) is disabled when entering the following road sections:**
 - One-way, one-lane road
 - Roads with intersections or crosswalks ahead
 - Roads without a physical median (guardrail, etc.)
 - Roads with pedestrians or bicyclists in front of the travel lane
- **If the vehicle speed drops below 60 km/h, the system goes into standby.**



Caution

- **This feature may not work in lanes for entering and exiting highways.**

How Automatic Lane Change (ALC) operates



- 1 With Highway Driving Assist, Automatic Lane Change, Centering Lane Keeping Assist, and Intelligent Cruise Control all set, if the driver's vehicle enters a freeway and the vehicle speed is above 60 km/h, the instrument panel displays corresponding pop-up for 5 seconds.

Notice

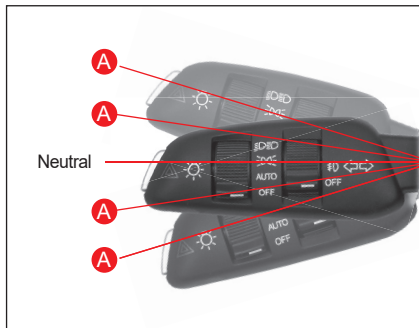
- **If you turn off Centering Lane Keeping Assist and Intelligent Cruise Control with Automatic Lane Change enabled and then reset, the pop-up will appear again for 5 seconds.**



- 2 When the pop-up appears (within 5 seconds), press the right select button (A) on the steering wheel.

Warning

- Automatic Lane Change (ALC) is temporarily disabled when there are ICs, interchanges, and rest areas (rest stops) near the driver vehicle. Then, when the vehicle is a certain distance away from these places, a pop-up message will appear.



- 3 The lane change symbol is activated and the feature works.
- 4 With the feature enabled and the operating conditions met, activate the turn signal by placing the turn signal switch in the (A) position and the vehicle will safely change lanes in that direction.

Notice

- During Automatic Lane Change, if you turn off the turn signal before the vehicle touches the lane you want to change to, Automatic Lane Change continues to operate and the turn signal turns off after the lane change is complete.

Standby

Automatic Lane Change (ALC) goes into standby if:

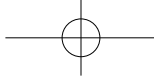
- Any of the operational conditions are not met
- Driver's vehicle is a certain distance in front of and behind the highway toll booth
- Driver's vehicle is on a section of roadway that terminates without an operable interchange (IC/JC) ahead
- Driver's vehicle is on sharp curves and narrow road sections

4

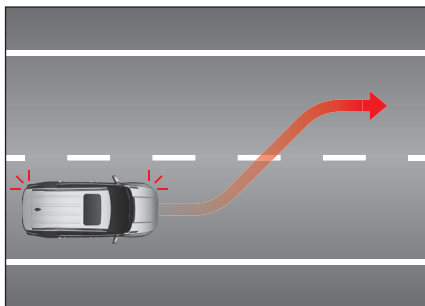
How to disable

You can cancel the Automatic Lane Change (ALC) by:

- Moving the turn signal switch in the opposite direction of the lane you are changing to.
- Operating the steering wheel with strong force

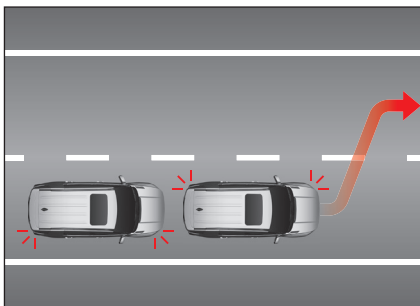


Changing lanes (1)



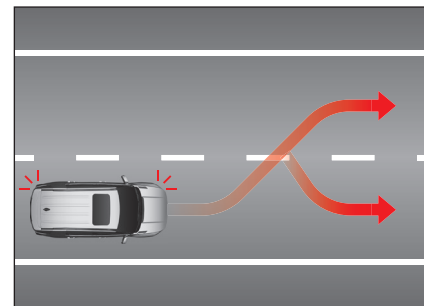
- Operating turn signal while driving on highway
- Change to 1 lane after a few seconds if there are no hazards in the lane driver want to change to
(Turn signal lamp turns off and on when changing lanes additionally)

Changing lanes (2)



- While driving on a highway, if driver activate the opposite turn signal within one second of activating the turn signal
- Change to 1 lane after a few seconds if there are no hazards in the lane on the side of the last operated turn signal
(Turn signal lamp turns off and on when changing lanes additionally)

Changing lanes (3)



- Stopping after operating turn signal while driving on highway
- Performs a continuation or return depending on the state of lane change control.



Warning

- If any of the following conditions are met while Automatic Lane Change (ALC) is operating, it immediately stops operating.
 - Highway Driving Assist turned off
 - Lane Safety setting temporarily disabled
 - Hands-off warning triggered
 - Hazard warning indicator operated
 - Forward safety and blind spot warnings triggered
 - It is determined that a collision is likely to occur even with no forward and blind-spot warnings displayed (such as oncoming traffic and road structures)
 - There is a road divide in front of the lane you are changing to (determined to be a crash risk)
 - Lane you want to change to disappears ahead
 - Lane in the direction you want to change to is not recognized
 - Automatic Lane Change (ALC) turned off
 - Vehicle speed drops below 53 km/h
 - Faulty navigation
- When Automatic Lane Change (ALC) is operated and the driver cancels the feature, it may enable or disable Lane Safety Settings depending on driving conditions.

Warning

- It may not work properly on roads with pedestrians or bicycles, such as intersections/crosswalks.
- When it comes to driving a vehicle, the driver's control takes precedence in any situation, so driver attention is essential.
- Always keep your hands on the steering wheel.
- Automatic Lane Change is a means of assisting the driver and is not a fully autonomous driving system. Drivers should always check traffic conditions and take appropriate action themselves if necessary.
- Regardless of whether Automatic Lane Change is activated or not, drivers are still obligated to keep their eyes on the road ahead, drive safely, and not violate road traffic laws.
- The vehicle manufacturer is not responsible for any violations or appeals of road traffic laws.
- Automatic Lane Change can't determine all of the traffic around the driver's vehicle.
- Always look ahead and drive safely, as possible collision targets (such as cars, motorcycles, bicycles, pedestrians, guardrails, and unspecified objects and structures) may not be detected.

Warning

- Automatic Lane Change may operate or turn off unintentionally depending on road conditions (navigation information) and your surroundings.
- LKAS can be temporarily disabled by the front camera not properly recognizing a lane or by a hands-off warning.
- You may not hear the warning sounds from Automatic Lane Change due to sounds inside or outside your vehicle.
- If you are speeding above the appropriate speed in a high-speed zone, you may drift into or out of your road-edge.
- It is recommended not to use Automatic Lane Change when towing another vehicle or rear cargo (such as a trailer), as it can reduce the safety of control.
- Hands-off warnings can occur sooner or later depending on how you are holding the steering wheel, road conditions, etc.
- For your safety, be sure to read the user manual before use.
- Automatic Lane Change does not operate during startup or during recognition sensor and navigation initialization (such as a reboot).



Warning

- Highway Lane Change Assist may not operate correctly or at all and requires driver's attention if:
 - The map information in your car's navigation isn't up to date and doesn't match the actual road.
 - Real-time GPS data or map data errors that cause the navigation map to differ from the actual road.
 - Multiple functions such as navigation, video playback, voice commands, and hands-free functions are performed at once, causing overload.
 - GPS signal is not received in tunnels, etc.
 - A route is re-discovered (including TPEG re-discovery) or canceled because the driver doesn't drive the set route or resets the destination.
 - Driver enters a rest area or sleeping shelter in close proximity to the road traveling.
 - Navigation / smartphone interlink technologies such as Android Auto or CarPlay are enabled.
 - There is an error in determining the exact current location of the driver's vehicle (for example, an upper/lower divider or different adjacent roads).



Warning

- White single-dotted lanes and road boundaries are not detectable.
- Some lanes are temporarily closed due to road construction, etc.
- There is no physical separation in the center of the road, such as a median.
- The lane you want to change is a bus-only/variable lane.



Intelligent Speed Assistance (ISA)*

ISA (Intelligent Speed Assistance) is a driver safety system that recognizes the speed limit through the front camera module and controls the vehicle speed with visual and audible warnings to ensure that the vehicle does not exceed the speed limit.

Notice

- Uses a vehicle's built-in camera and navigation to display information about the speed limit on the road currently traveling on a cluster to help drivers stay within the speed limit.



Caution

- Depending on your navigation information and vehicle speed, the distance at which road signs are recognized can vary. In some cases, the system may not recognize road signs.
- ISA is intended for the purpose of vehicle safety support. Even when using this system, the driver must remain aware of the surrounding environment and comply with all traffic regulations while driving.
- ISA is a driving assistance function, so the driver is responsible for driving even when using the system.
- If a navigation is applied to the vehicle, the navigation needs to be regularly updated for Intelligent Speed Assist to operate properly. For checking latest map version and downloading, visit <https://ssangyong.navshop.com/#/downloads>.

You can update the map at General settings → System → Navigation map update after inserting a USB contains the map file.



Warning

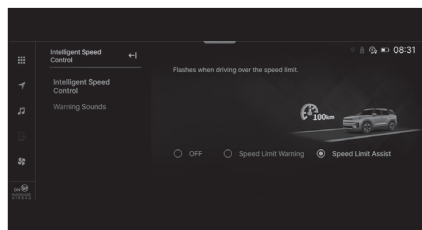
- All warnings from the ISA system installed in the vehicle do not violate the actual road speed limit, and the driver is solely responsible for checking and complying with it.
- Temporary changes in speed limits for specific periods of time and on specific sections due to non-routine events such as accidents or construction may not be reflected by the ISA system.



Image That Shows Operation Status Of ISA



How To Set ISA



- From the main menu of the hypervisor control panel, select Vehicle Settings (⚙️) → Driving Assistance → Intelligent Speed Control → Off/Speed Limit Warning/Speed Limit Assist.
- Speed limit warning
If the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit on the road, the system will issue a beep and warning message.
- Speed limit assist
If the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit on the road, the system will issue a beep and warning message, and slow the vehicle down to avoid exceeding the speed limit.

How to operate Intelligent Speed Assistance (ISA)



With Intelligent Speed Assistance set, pressing the right Intelligent Speed Assistance switch on the steering wheel will enable the function.

How ISA appears on instrument panel



Based on information from the front camera (road sign detection) and navigation, the instrument panel displays speed limit information for the lane you're driving in.

Notice

- Traffic sign detection is only available at vehicle speeds below 250 km/h and displays the sign on the instrument panel within 0.1 seconds of detection.

Speed limit warning

Enabling speed limit warnings

Basic conditions for speed limit warnings to operate

- Speed limit warning enabled
- Speed limit recognized
- Speed of the vehicle you are driving is higher than 1 km/h above the speed limit

If all of the speed limit warning default conditions are met, the system notifies the driver with a visual warning.

Disabling speed limit warnings

The speed limit warning is turned off if any of the following conditions are met:

- Speed limit not recognized
- Speed of vehicle you are driving is below speed limit

Speed Limit Assist

Enabling Speed Limit Assist

Basic conditions for Speed Limit Assist to operate

- Speed Limit Assist enabled
- Vehicle not stationary
- Speed limit over 30 km/h recognized
- Speed limit (instrument panel display speed) differs from set speed
- Intelligent Cruise Control or Speed Limit enabled

If the driver presses the Intelligent Speed Control switch while the SET indicator is displayed to the left of the instrument panel speed limit display, it will change to the recognized speed limit.

Notice

- Speed Limit Assist only operates when the speed limit indicator is displayed on the instrument panel.



Disabling Speed Limit Assist

Speed Limit Assist enters a standby mode if any of the following conditions are met:

- Intelligent Cruise Control or Speed Limit turned off
- Speed limit (instrument panel display speed) is equal to set speed
- Vehicle is stationary
- Faulty Speed Limit Assist system

Recognizing Traffic Signs

Lateral distance condition based on velocity

- Depending on the vehicle speed, traffic signs may not be recognized.

Notice
• Intelligent Speed Assistance (ISA) determines road properties (local roads, freeways) based on information from navigation.

Recognizable traffic signs

Speed limit signs

- Recognizable diameters: 0.3m to 1.0m
- Typical speed signs (10 to 140 km/h)
- LED type speed signs (30 to 140 km/h)
- Speed limit remove signs

Traffic signs can be difficult to recognize when:

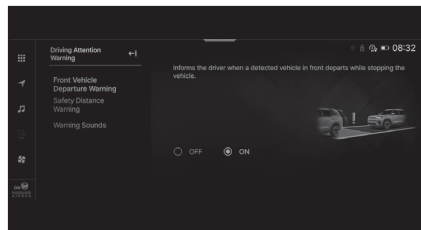
- Signs are obscured by shade from overpasses or street trees.
- Difficulty recognizing the front camera due to backlighting, rain, or snowfall.
- The sign is obscured by other objects, such as tree branches along the road.
- The sign is damaged.
- Visibility is poor enough to make it difficult to recognize the sign.
- The sign is not recognized by the headlight illumination angle or if only part of the sign is detected.
- Glare is caused by sign reflections.
- The light from the light source is reflected due to rain or snowfall.



Front Vehicle Start Warning (FVSW)*

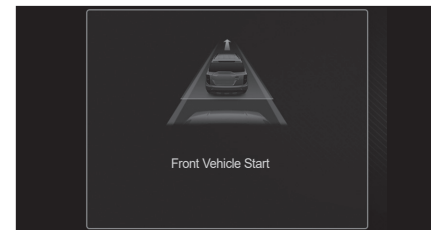
It is a system that notifies the driver when the driver does not recognize that the ahead vehicle departed while the driver's vehicle is stationary, using the sensor (FCM) at front of the vehicle.

How To Set



- From the main menu of the hypervisor control panel, select Vehicle Settings (Fe) → Driving Assistance → Driver Attention Warning → Front Vehicle Departure Warning → OFF/ON.

Operation



If the driver does not perform any operation (such as not starting the vehicle) about 1 second after the ahead vehicle departs, the message will be displayed on the LCD and alarm will sound.

4



Caution

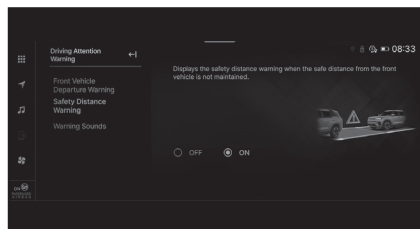
- For safe driving, be sure to check the front and surrounding road conditions before starting the vehicle.
- The front vehicle departure warning (FVSW) function does not operate unless the brake pedal is applied to stop.
- If you stop the vehicle with shift lever in N (neutral) position, it may not operate or may generate a false alarm.
- In an environment other than the normal driving situation (non-motorway / highway), it may generate a false alarm.
- The FVSW works only when the shift lever is in D (drive) or N (neutral) position.
- There may be a false alarm if you stop at a speed bump or ramp.



Safe Distance Warning (SDW)*

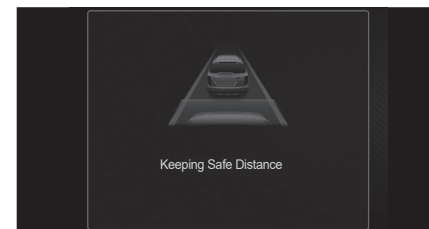
Safety Distance Warning is a system that utilizes the front camera module (FCM) and front radar (FRM) to alert the driver when the vehicle does not maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of it relative to the vehicle speed while driving.

How to set Safe distance Warning (SDW)



- From the main menu of the hypervisor control panel, select Vehicle Settings (F4) → Driving Assistance → Driver Attention Warning → Safe Distance Warning → OFF/ON.

How Safe Distance Warning (SDW) operates



A "Keep a safe distance" pop-up appears when the distance to the vehicle in front of you is closing.

Slow down the vehicle you're traveling in to gain distance from the vehicle in front of you.



Front Cross Traffic + Rear Cross Traffic Alert*

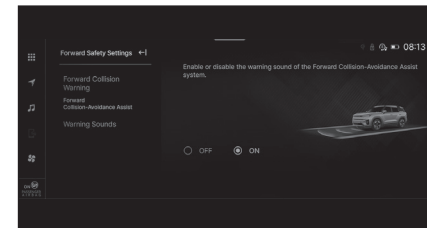
Front Cross Traffic + Rear Cross Traffic Alert is an assistive system that uses sensors on the inside of both the front and rear bumpers and the front camera module to detect and alert you to blind spots that are difficult for you to see.

- Front Cross Traffic + Rear Cross Traffic Alert includes the following systems:
 - Intersection Oncoming Traffic Response
 - Intersection Lateral Vehicle Response
 - Front Oncoming Traffic Response
 - Front Cross Traffic Alert On Overtaking
 - Oncoming Traffic Alert On Overtaking
 - Evasive Steering Assist
 - Driver Steering Assist

Autonomous Emergency Braking

Autonomous Emergency Braking uses sensors on the inside of the front bumper corners and the front camera module to detect blind spots that are difficult for the driver to see, and helps brake with an audible warning if a collision is imminent.

How to set Autonomous Emergency Braking



- From the main menu of the hypervisor control panel, select Vehicle Settings (🚗) → Driving Assistance → Forward Safety Settings → Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist → OFF/ON.

4

Notice

- Selecting OFF disables the feature and the "AEBS OFF" indicator lights up.
- Selecting ON sets the feature on.



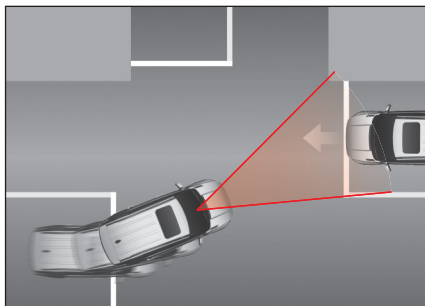
Caution

- For your safety, turn on and off Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) before driving or after stopping the vehicle in a safe place.



Intersection Oncoming Traffic Response

An assist system that activates a warning (instrument cluster warning message and beep) followed by emergency braking when a crossing vehicle is detected at an intersection.



Operating conditions for Cross Oncoming Traffic Alert

- Emergency Lane Keeping enabled

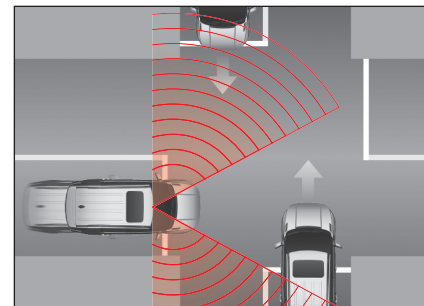
Cross Oncoming Traffic Response enabled

- Display collision warnings (instrument cluster message + chime)

Items	Vehicle speed	Braking force
Primary warning	0km/h to 30km/h	-
Secondary warning	0km/h to 30km/h	The system applies partial braking.
Tertiary warning	0km/h to 30km/h	The brake control operates at maximum just before a collision.

Intersection Lateral Traffic Response

This is an assist system that applies emergency braking after a warning when it detects a vehicle approaching from the left or right while driving through an intersection.



Operating conditions for Cross Lateral Traffic Response

- Emergency Lane Keeping enabled

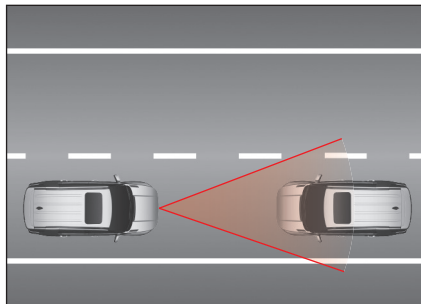
Cross Lateral Traffic Response enabled

- Display collision warnings (instrument cluster message + chime)

Items	Vehicle speed	Braking force
Primary warning	0km/h to 30km/h	-
Secondary warning	0km/h to 30km/h	The system applies partial braking.
Tertiary warning	0km/h to 30km/h	The brake control operates at maximum just before a collision.

Front Oncoming Traffic Response

This is an assist system that warns and then applies emergency braking when it detects a vehicle approaching straight ahead in a straight lane while driving.



Operating conditions for Front Oncoming Traffic Response

- Emergency Lane Keeping enabled

Front Oncoming Traffic Response enabled

- Display collision warnings (instrument cluster message + chime)

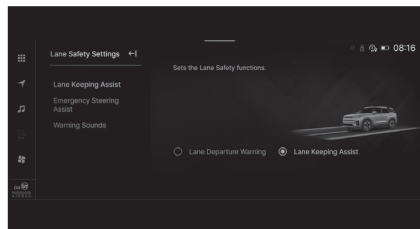
Items	Vehicle speed	Braking force
Primary warning	30km/h to 70km/h	-
Secondary warning	30km/h to 70km/h	The system applies partial braking.
Tertiary warning	30km/h to 70km/h	The brake control operates at maximum just before a collision.



Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK)*

Emergency Lane Keeping is an assistive system that uses the front camera module, front radar, front corner sensors, and rear corner sensors to help you avoid a collision by controlling steering if it detects a potential collision while driving.

How to enable Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK)



- From the main menu of the hypervisor control panel, select Vehicle Settings (🚗) → Driving Assistance → Lane Safety Settings → Lane Keeping Assist → Emergency Steering Assist → ON/OFF.

Notice

- An assist system that assists with steering when the vehicle may be at risk of crashing in the ON selection.



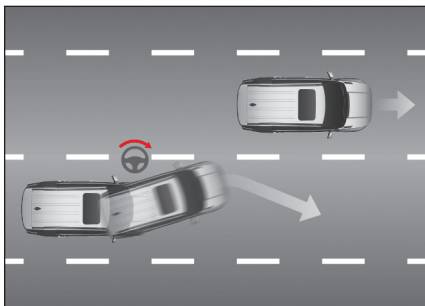
Caution

- For your safety, turn on and off Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) before driving or after stopping the vehicle in a safe place.
- When the risk of a collision is deemed to have decreased, Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) will terminate and you will need to manually operate the steering wheel as needed.



Front Cross Traffic Alert On Overtaking

An evasive steering assist system that assists in steering to avoid a collision with a vehicle approaching from the front side if it determines there is a risk of collision when changing lanes.



Operating conditions for front cross traffic alert on overtaking

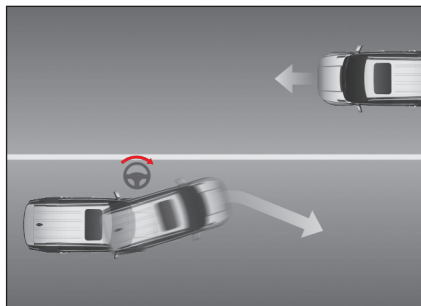
- Emergency Lane Keeping enabled
- Vehicle travels at a speed between 40km/h and 145km/h
- Both lanes recognized

How front cross traffic alert works

- Display collision warnings (instrument cluster message + chime)
- Control steering force for avoidance and mitigation

Oncoming Traffic Alert On Overtaking

An evasive steering assist system that assists in steering to avoid a collision with an oncoming vehicle if it determines there is a risk of collision when changing lanes.



Operating conditions for front cross traffic alert on overtaking

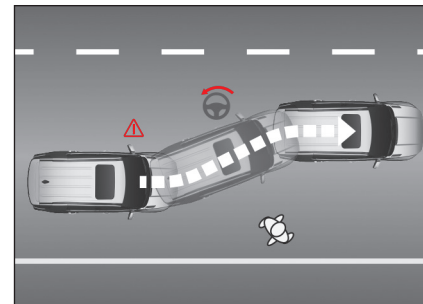
- Emergency Lane Keeping enabled
- Vehicle travels at a speed between 40km/h and 145km/h
- Both lanes recognized

How front cross traffic alert works

- Display collision warnings (instrument cluster message + chime)
- Control steering force for avoidance and mitigation

Evasive Steering Assist

If an obstacle is detected in your lane, steering assist will be engaged to help you avoid it within that lane.



4

Operating conditions for evasive steering assist

- Emergency Lane Keeping enabled
- Vehicle travels at a speed between 65km/h and 75km/h
- Obstacles in front of driver's vehicle in the same lane overlap between 10 and 90% of vehicle's width

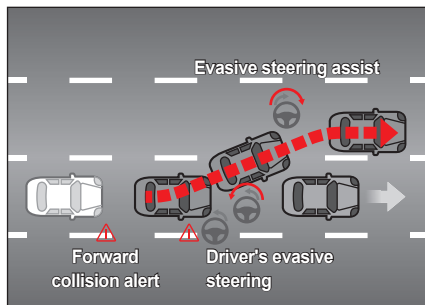
How evasive steering assist operates

- Display collision warnings (instrument cluster message + chime)
- Controls steering force within the same lane for avoidance and mitigation



Driver Steering Assist

This is an assist system helps the driver avoid the obstacle by applying steering force in the direction of the steering, if an obstacle is detected in front of the vehicle while steering.



Operating conditions for driver steering assist

- Emergency Lane Keeping enabled
- Vehicle travels at a speed between 40km/h and 85km/h

How driver steering assist operates

- Display collision warnings (instrument cluster message + chime)
- Provides additional steering force in the steering direction for avoidance and mitigation

Notice

- Driver steering assist works independently of lane awareness.

Warning

- You must keep your hands on the steering wheel while driving your vehicle, regardless of whether Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) is activated or not.
- The driver is responsible for safe driving of the vehicle by maneuvering the steering wheel.
- Do not try to drive the vehicle in a dangerous or reckless manner to see how the ELK is operated.
- When replacing the steering wheel system-relevant parts, have the system checked and serviced at our authorized service center.

Cautions

- If Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) is assisting with steering wheel control, the feature may stop working if it anticipates a collision with an object.
- If you are in a tight space while Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) is operating, the feature may stop working.
- While Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) is activated, the feature may not work if you lock the steering wheel or turn it in the opposite direction from the direction you are controlling.
- If Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) is enabled, the steering wheel may turn automatically. In this case, don't spin it up any faster than necessary.
- Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) does not automatically and continuously control the steering wheel of a vehicle driving.
- Please exert caution while driving, as Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) may operate unnecessarily depending on road conditions and your surroundings.



Rear and side warning system*

The rear and side warning system is an auxiliary system that detects and informs the blind spot area that cannot be detected by the driver using the detection sensor located inside of both edges of the rear bumper.

- The rear and side warning system includes the following warning systems.
 - Blind spot-detection warning (BSW)
 - Lane change warning (LCW)
 - Rear cross traffic warning (RCTW)
 - Rear cross traffic-collision assist (RCTA)
 - Safety exit warning (SEW)
 - Rear cross warning (RCW)
 - Blind spot collision assist (BSA)

Display of rear and side warning system activation



Notice
• The BSW system can be set up in the hypervisor's Vehicle Settings.



Warning

- The rear and side warning system is an auxiliary system that helps the driver to drive the vehicle safely. Avoid depending on the rear and side warning system in any case and drive the vehicle while checking the road condition.



Caution

- Always keep the rear bumper clean. The sensor that detects the rear and both sides of the vehicle is installed inside of both edges of the rear bumper. If the rear bumper is stained with foreign materials, the sensors may not function normally
- When the rear bumper is replaced, painted or repaired, the system operation performance may be lowered.
- The detection sensors of the system may not operate depending on the surrounding environment. Drive the vehicle while checking the road condition directly for an emergency situation.
- Failure to do so may cause the system to malfunction due to a strong electromagnetic wave.

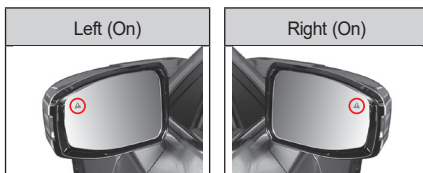
4



Warning Steps in BSW System

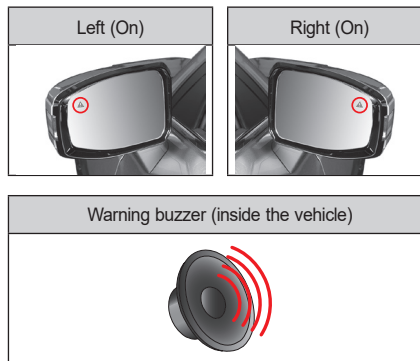
A first warning or second warning is issued when a vehicle approaching at a driving speed that matches the function settings of the blind spot-detection warning system is detected.

1st warning



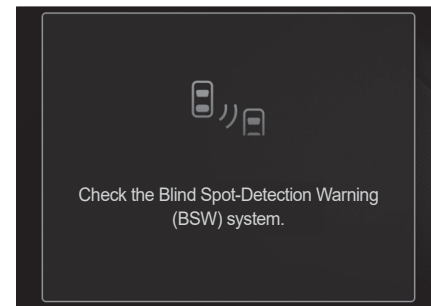
- Red warning lamp flashes on outside rearview mirror
- Functions affected by first warning
 - Blind spot-detection warning (BSW) system
 - Lane change warning (LCW) system

2nd warning



- Red warning lamp flashes on outside rearview mirror
- Warning buzzer sounds in vehicle
- Functions affected by second warning
 - Blind spot-detection warning (BSW) system
 - Blind spot collision assist (BSA) system
 - Lane change warning (LCW) system
 - Rear cross traffic warning (RCTW) system
 - Rear cross traffic assist (RCTA) system
 - Safety exit warning (SEW) system
 - Rear cross warning (RCW) system

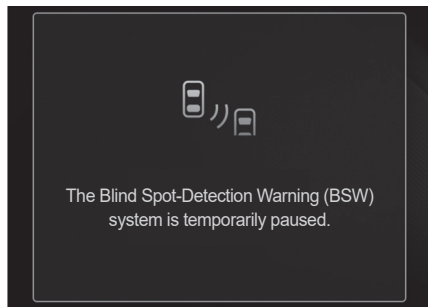
When the rear and side warning system is abnormal



When the rear and side warning system is abnormal, a warning message is displayed on the display of the instrument cluster.

! Caution

- **When the warning message on the faulty RCTW is displayed, all the RCTW relevant functions are disabled.**
- **If the warning message persists, have your vehicle checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.**

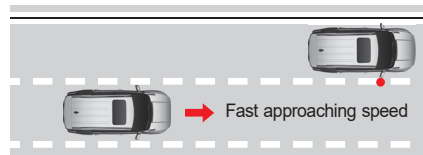


If the sensor cannot detect the rear and both side areas of the vehicle normally with the rear and side warning system activated, the message is displayed on the display of the instrument cluster.

- When there is a foreign material on the outside and inside of the rear bumper
- When equipment such as a trailer is installed on the rear of the vehicle
- When driving on open area where no objects around road continuously (e.g., desert, meadow)
- When there is a heavy snow or a heavy rain

Lane Change Warning (LCW) system

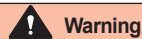
The LCW (Lane Change Warning) system is designed to alert the driver by flashing the outside rearview mirror and sounding the beep when a fast approaching vehicle is detected from the rear side of the driver's vehicle.



Operating conditions

The LCW system activates the warning system when the following conditions are met:

- BSW system is activated.
- Vehicle speed is between 30km/h and 255km/h.
- When a vehicle approaching at a high speed is in the detection area.
- Driver's vehicle is driving on a straight road.

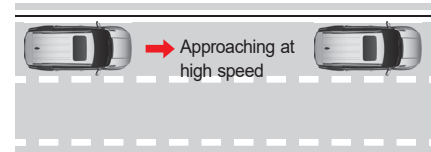


Warning

- **This system is an aid to ensure the driver convenience. If you depend on this system, it may cause accidents. Always check the surroundings with a side mirror when changing lanes.**

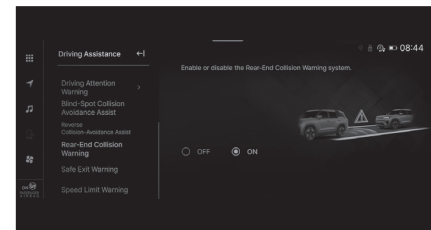
Rear Collision Warning (RCW)

Rear Collision Warning (RCW) is a feature intended to warn vehicles behind you by flashing your stop lights when it detects a vehicle approaching from behind at a high rate of speed.



4

How to set Rear Collision Warning (RCW)



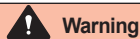
- From the main menu of the hypervisor control panel, select Vehicle Settings (Fc) → Driving Assistance → Rear -End Collision Warning → ON/OFF.



Operating Conditions

Rear Collision Warning (RCW) operates when the following conditions are met:

- Rear Collision Warning (RCW) set
- Transmission selector lever in N (Neutral) or D (Drive) position
- Vehicle speed is 5km/h or less
- Vehicle behind driver's vehicle approaching at a high rate of speed

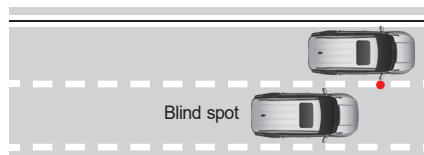


Warning

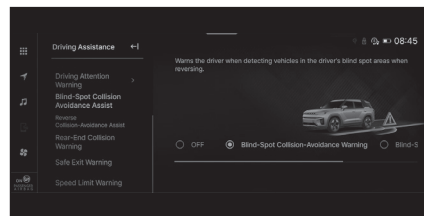
- **Rear Collision Warning (RCW) is an aid for drivers. Accidents can happen if you rely on this feature, and you should always check your surroundings with outside rearview mirrors.**

Blind Spot-detection Warning (BSW)

The BSW (Blind Spot-detection Warning) system is a feature that, when a vehicle is detected approaching the rear side blind spot of the vehicle, illuminates the warning lamp in the exterior mirror and rings an alarm to warn the driver of the risk of collision.



How to set Blind Spot-detection Warning (BSW)



- From the main menu of the hypervisor control panel, select Vehicle Settings (P) → Driving Assistance → Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist → OFF/Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Warning/ Blind-Spot Collision-A voidance Assist.

Operating Conditions

The Blind Spot-detection Warning (BSW) issues a warning when the following conditions are met:

- Blind Spot-detection Warning (BSW) set
- Vehicle speed is between 16km/h and 255km/h
- A vehicle is present within blind spot warning area



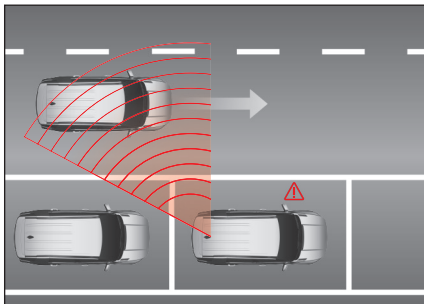
Warning

- **The Blind Spot-detection Warning (BSW) can warn only within a limited area, and warnings about vehicles approaching the rear blind spot due to surrounding conditions and driving conditions may not work.**

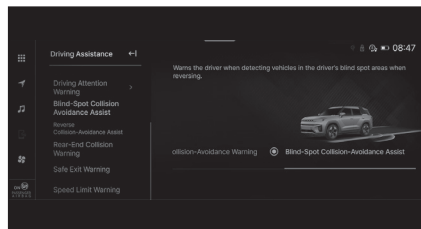


Blind Spot-collision Assist (BSA)

The Blind Spot-collision Assist (BSA) is a system that, when the driver's vehicle unintentionally closes to the lane, directs the vehicle through one-sided braking to the center of the lane when a collision with the vehicle in the rear blind spot is expected, and notifies the driver by illuminating the warning light in the outside rearview mirror.



How to set BSA system



- From the main menu of the hypervisor control panel, select Vehicle Settings (⚙️) → Driving Assistance → Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist → OFF/Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Warning/ Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist.

Operating conditions

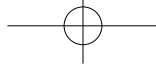
The blind collision assist (BSA) system issues a warning when:

- Blind spot collision assist (BSA) is set.
- Transmission selector lever in N (Neutral) or D (Drive) position
- Vehicle speed is between 3km/h or less.
- Vehicle approaching to the driver's vehicle has speed 5km/h or more.



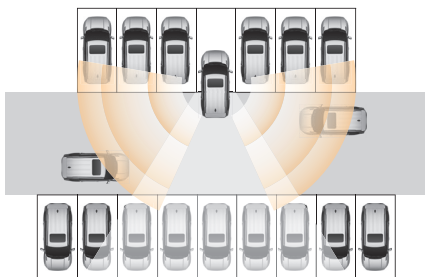
Warning

- Blind Spot-collision Assist (BSA) is an aid to help drivers in urgent and dangerous situations, but it does not guarantee safety.
- Not all urgent and dangerous situations can be determined by Blind Spot-collision Assist (BSA).
- Never drive the vehicle in a dangerous or reckless manner to test the Blind Spot-collision Assist (BSA).
- Blind Spot-collision Assist (BSA) does not automatically avoid all collision situations. The safe maneuvering and controls are always the driver's responsibility.
- For your safety, always check your vehicle's surroundings.
- Blind Spot-collision Assist (BSA) works by detecting the vehicle behind you by the BSD sensor module. The sensing performance of a sensor can be degraded by its surroundings.

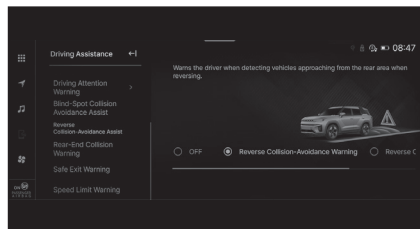


RCTW System

The Rear Cross Traffic Warning (RCTW) system is a system that, when a vehicle is detected approaching from the rear left/right side during reversing the vehicle, displays a warning message in the instrument panel display window, sounds an audible alert and illuminates the warning lamp in the outside rearview mirrors to inform the driver.



How to set RCTW system



- From the main menu of the hypervisor control panel, select Vehicle Settings (F6) → Driving Assistance → Reverse Collision - Avoidance Warning → OFF/Reverse Collision-Avoidance Warning/Reverse Collision-Avoidance Assist.

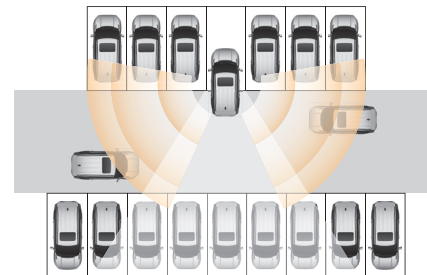
Activation conditions

- RCTW system is activated
- If the gear shift lever is placed in the R (reverse) position
- When the vehicle speed is 8km/h or less.
- If a vehicle exists within the RCTW range and the speed of the approaching vehicle is 5 km/h or more.

If an approaching vehicle is detected, the approach message from the relevant side is on the display of the instrument cluster.

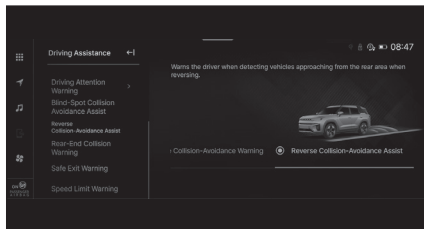
RCTA System

The Rear Cross Traffic-collision Assist (RCTA) system is an assistive device that outputs a warning message and a buzzer to inform the driver of risk of collision due to a vehicle approaching to your side when backing up and help collision avoidance or mitigate damage by applying brake assist.





How to set RCTA system

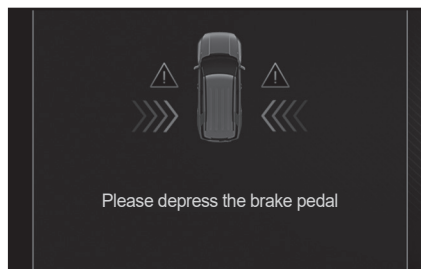
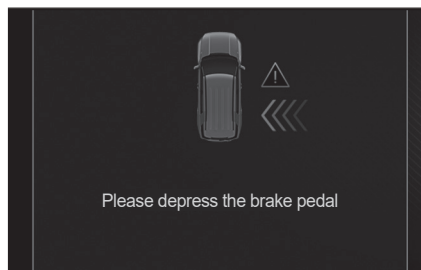
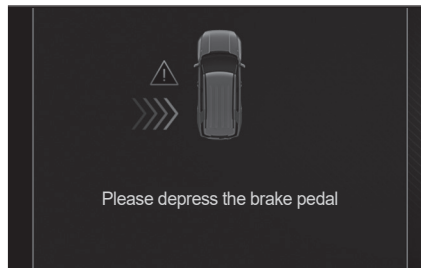


- From the main menu of the hypervisor control panel, select Vehicle Settings (⚙️) → Driving Assistance → Reverse Collision- Avoidance Warning → OFF/Reverse Collision-Avoidance Warning/Reverse Collision -Avoidance Assist.

Operating conditions:

- RCTA system is activated
- Shift lever in R (reverse) position
- Vehicle speed is 8 km/h or less.
- If a vehicle exists within the RCTA range and the speed of the approaching vehicle is 5 km/h or more.
- If the risk of collision is detected due to an approaching vehicle during operation of the RCTA system, emergency braking (braking assist) is performed.
- The braking assist does not restart for about 10 seconds after it operates.

Message on instrument cluster



Cases where RCTA system not work

In any of the following cases, the RCTA may not operate.

- If the target vehicle is out of the RCTA detection area
- If the target vehicle is right behind
- If the target vehicle is moving in the same direction
- If the speed of the target vehicle is fast
- If the speed of the target vehicle decreases suddenly
- If the detection sensor is covered with an obstacle

4

Cases where the RCTA system malfunctions

In any of the following cases, the system may malfunction, so the driver's attention is necessary.

- If the rear bumper is stained with foreign materials (rain, snow, dust, sticker, etc)
- When equipment such as a trailer is installed on the rear of the vehicle
- When the rear bumper is damaged or the vehicle body is distorted
- Sharp curve, tollgate entrance and exit section
- Tire pressure imbalance and excessive loading



- Bad (heavy snow, heavy rain) weather
- When there is a fixed object (median strips, guardrails, noise barriers) on the road or a construction section
- When a large vehicle or a small motor cycle (bicycle) is driving at a close range
- When your vehicle is passing by heavy-duty trailer
- When you accelerate the vehicle with an opposite vehicle together at the same time
- When the speed of a vehicle behind is very fast (passing)
- When you change the lane
- Steep uphill road, downhill road or a road condition where the height of lanes is different
- When an opposite vehicle is driving very closely to the rear side of the vehicle
- When a vehicle behind driving closely passes
- When the area near the sensor is covered with a vehicle, a column or a wall in the parking lot
- A vehicle that moves in the same direction when reversing the vehicle
- A small moving object such as a person, a shopping cart or a stroller
- When parking conditions are complicated (diagonal parking, near the ramp, obstacle, etc.)
- A vehicle with very low vehicle body

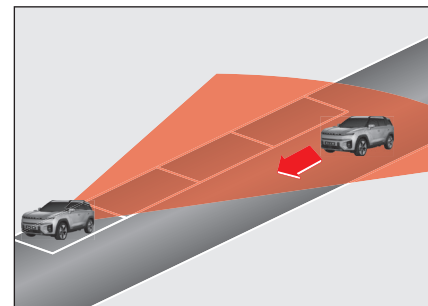
- A narrow road densely covered with trees or grass
- When the width of the road is very wide
- When the road surface is wet
- When the sensor detection area is changed due to a rear collision

Warning

- **The Rear Cross Traffic Warning (RCTW) system does not give a warning for an article adjacent to the vehicle and the warning function may not be activated for a vehicle approaching fast in the rear.**
- **The BSW and RCTW are assistive devices for the driver, not the safety devices. If you depend on these systems, it may cause accidents. The driver is responsible for safe driving of the vehicle by maneuvering the brake pedal. Depending on the surrounding environment and driving conditions, the warning and control functions of the system may not operate or may operate unnecessarily. Always check the surroundings while driving.**

SEW System

The Safety Exit Warning (SEW) system is an assistive device that warns the driver and passengers about the risk of an accident by displaying a warning message on the instrument panel along with a buzzer when there is a vehicle approaching from the rear side when the driver or passenger is getting off the vehicle.

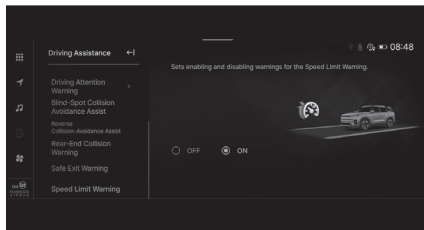


Caution

- **The exit assist function operates for about 10 minutes after the ignition switch is turned off. After about 10 minutes, the exit assist function does not work to prevent battery drain.**
- **When you lock the door with a smart key, the exit assist function will not work immediately.**



How to set SEW system



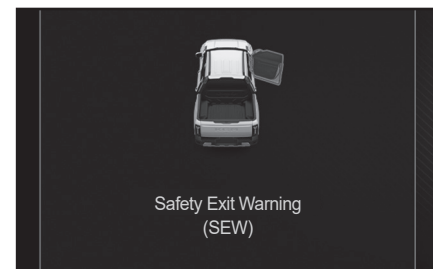
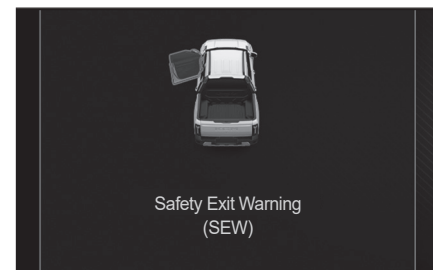
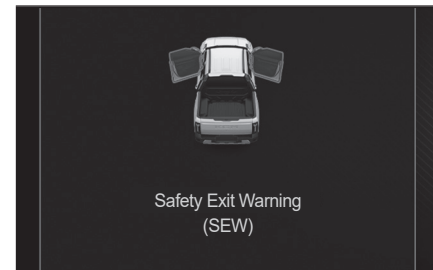
- From the main menu of the hypervisor control panel, select Vehicle Settings (⚙️) → Driving Assistance → Safety Exit Warning → OFF/ON.

Operating conditions:

- Shift lever in P (park) or N (neutral) position
- Vehicle parked
- You are about to open the door to leave the vehicle when a vehicle is approaching from the rear side
- Vehicle speed is 8 km/h or less.
- Vehicle approaching to the driver vehicle has speed between 6km/h and 8km/h.

If a vehicle approaching from the rear side is detected, a warning message is displayed on the instrument panel display along with a buzzer to inform the driver and the passenger.

Message on instrument cluster



4



Speed limit warning

The speed limit system is a safety device that prevents the vehicle from accelerating beyond the set speed even if the driver depresses the accelerator pedal on his/her own will.

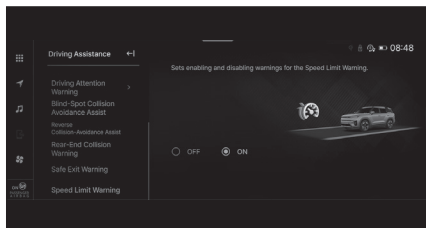
Speed limit warning switch



- ① Intelligent Cruise Control switch
 - With Intelligent Cruise Control and Speed Limit not set, pressing and holding the switch turns on Speed Limit
 - Short pressing the switch with Speed Limit activated puts Speed Limit into standby
 - Speed Limit operates (Speed Limit turns off with long press while ON and standby)
- ② Speed selector lever
 - RES+
 - Increasing speed
 - SET-
 - Decreasing speed

☞ Refer to "Adaptive Cruise Control*" (p.4-162)

How to set speed limit warning



- From the main menu of the hypervisor control panel, select Vehicle Settings (⚙️) → Driving Assistance → Speed Limit Warning → OFF/ON.

Issue speed limit warning

With Intelligent Cruise Control and Speed Limit not set, press and hold the switch to turn on Speed Limit.

When the Speed Limit Warning control is engaged, the vehicle does not accelerate beyond the set speed when the accelerator pedal is pressed, or a warning sounds, depending on the vehicle settings.

If you want to travel above the set speed, you must press the accelerator pedal to the maximum.

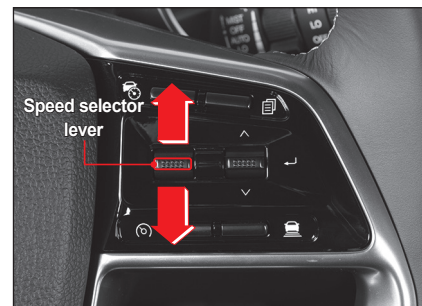
Press briefly the switch with Speed Limit in active to put Speed Limit into standby mode.

Deactivating Speed Limit Warning

Pressing the Speed Limit Warning ON/OFF switch again while Speed Limit Warning is in operation will disable the feature.

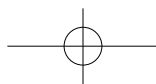
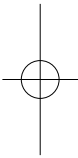
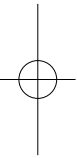
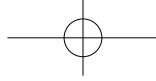
How to set speed at which Speed Limit Warning issues

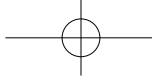
- With Speed Limit Warning set (active), the set speed changes in 5 km/h increments as you press and hold the speed control lever up or down.
- With Speed Limit Warning set (active), briefly raising or lowering the speed control stalk changes the set speed in 1 km/h increments.



Notice

- If the tires of your vehicle are replaced with tires with different size at your disposal, it may cause an error in the set speed. In this case, please contact our service center.





5. Emergency Measures in the Event of Emergency

You can check useful information and emergency measures for various emergency situations you can face while driving.

Information regarding the warning triangle and OVM tools, the correct procedure in case of a dead battery, flat tire, and towing a vehicle is provided. An explanation is also provided for how to respond to a fire, heavy snow, vehicle trouble, and an accident safely.

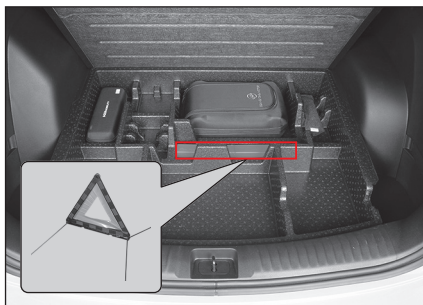


OVM (Owner Vehicle Maintenance) tools

Warning triangle*

A warning triangle is a stop sign that should be placed in the rear side of the vehicle in order to prevent any secondary accidents in the event of emergency such as car trouble or the occurrence of an accident.

Storage place of the warning triangle*



The warning triangle is stored at the bottom of the luggage board.

Caution

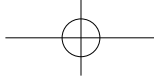
- While paying particular attention to surrounding traffic conditions, place the warning triangle in a position where its reflecting plate can be clearly visible to vehicles approaching from the rear.
- Place a road flare in addition to the warning triangle at night.
- If your vehicle becomes operational again or the problem is fixed, move the vehicle promptly while paying particular attention to the traffic conditions.

OVM tools

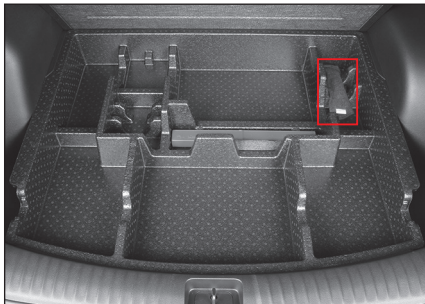
The OVM tools are apparatuses or tools stored in the vehicle in preparation for a failure or an emergency situation that can occur while driving the vehicle.



- 1 Sealant (Emergency sealing compound in case of a flat tire)
- 2 Compressor (managing the tire pressure and injecting sealant in case of a flat tire)
- 3 Spanner
- 4 Screwdriver (+ and -)
- 5 Vehicle towing hook
- 6 Tool roll pouch



Location where the OVM tools are stored



The OVM tools are stored in the storage box at the rear left side of the luggage compartment.
Take out and use the OVM tools any time when necessary.

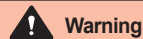
5



When Low Voltage (12 V) Battery Discharged (Emergency Start-up)

If the vehicle cannot be started due to depletion of the low battery, you can start the vehicle by connecting a battery of the same standard and capacity from another vehicle or an auxiliary battery to your battery using the jump cable.

Starting the vehicle using the jump cable



Warning

- Emergency start-up with jump cable is an extremely dangerous task that can damage the electrical system or cause injuries from battery explosions. Ask an expert for help and follow instructions below.



- 1 Make sure the 12 V battery with the same specification is correct.
- 2 Switch off all electrical accessories of the depleted vehicle.
- 3 Connect the jump cable in the following order.
 - + terminal (1) of the depleted battery
 - + terminal of the battery in another vehicle or an auxiliary battery that provides power supply
 - - terminal of the battery in another vehicle or an auxiliary battery that provides power supply
 - Vehicle body of the depleted vehicle (2) (a location far from the battery)
- 4 If the battery of another vehicle is used, start the engine of the relevant vehicle and idle the engine for several minutes.
- 5 Start the engine of the depleted vehicle.
- 6 When the vehicle is started, separate the jump cable in the following order.
 - Jump cable connected to the minus (-) terminal
 - Jump cable connected to the positive (+) terminal



Warning

- Follow the procedure to start the vehicle using the jump cable explained in this owner's manual. Failure to do so may cause an injury or damage the vehicle due to a battery explosion.
- If the battery is frozen, do not attempt to start the vehicle using the jump cable. Doing so may lead the battery to burst or explode, causing serious injury.
- Be sure to wear insulated gloves for starting the vehicle using the jump cable to prevent an electric shock.
- Make sure that two vehicles do not come into contact with each other. Failure to do so may result in ground connection status, causing an electric shock and a vehicle failure.
- Be sure to use the jump cable of the specified standard and a battery of the same standard and capacity. Failure to do so may cause a spark when the jump cables are connected and gas generated from the battery may explode.
- When using the battery of another vehicle, connect the jump cable with the motor of the other vehicle turned off for safety.



Warning

- When connecting the jump cables, make sure that the positive (+) and negative (-) cables do not come into contact with each other. Otherwise, an electric spark may occur, resulting in the explosion of the battery.
- Make sure that the jump cables are securely fixed to each terminal. Failure to do so may cause disconnection due to an instantaneous vibration when the vehicle is started. If the jump cable is separated and comes into contact with the vehicle body, an electric shock may be applied to the vehicle, damaging electric and electronic components.
- The battery fluid is very acidic, so if it comes into contact with your eyes or on your skin, take off the clothes that are stained with the battery fluid immediately, rinse the contacted area with clean water continuously and contact your doctor. While being transported to a hospital, gently wipe the contacted area with a water-wet soft cloth or sponge continuously.



Caution

- Make sure when starting the vehicle that the jump cable is not wound around the fan in the motor room.
- After starting the vehicle using the jump cable, do not turn off the vehicle for a certain period of time to allow the depleted battery to be recharged. Otherwise, you may not be able to start the vehicle again according to the charging status of the battery.
- If the cause of the depleted battery is not clear, have your vehicle checked at a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.



When a tire is flat



If a tire becomes flat while driving, do not panic and take action according to the following order.

- 1 Turn on the hazard warning lamp indicator.
- 2 Stop the vehicle at a safe place.
For such purpose, hold the steering wheel firmly, take your foot off the accelerator pedal, decelerate the vehicle slowly and depress the brake pedal slightly to stop the vehicle safely.
- 3 Place the gear shift lever in the P (parking) position and apply the parking brake.
- 4 Place a chock in front of and at the back of the tires located in the diagonal direction of the flat tire.

- 5 Be sure to place the warning triangle on a road or an expressway where other vehicles are driving.
The position that is easily identified by a driver in an approaching vehicle while maintaining a safe distance (100 m during daytime, 200 m in the rear during night time) is an appropriate place to place the warning triangle.
- 6 If there are other occupants besides the driver, evacuate such occupants to a safe place.
- 7 Judge if the flat tire can be repaired using the service kit for tire repair (stored in the storage box of the luggage compartment) and take the necessary action accordingly.



Warning

- If a tire becomes flat while driving, do not steer the vehicle or depress the brake suddenly. Doing so may cause the vehicle to lose its stability, leading to an accident.
- Do not drive the vehicle for even a short distance with a flat tire. Doing so may damage the wheels and disable normal driving, leading to a dangerous situation.
- Turn on the hazard warning lamp indicator, move the vehicle to the shoulder of the road or a safe location and place the warning triangle in a place easily identified by a driver in an approaching vehicle.
- If possible, park the vehicle on a flat, solid, and non-slippery road surface and repair the tire with no occupants in the vehicle.

Notice

- If you are not good at repairing a flat tire, request a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center or your auto insurance company for help.

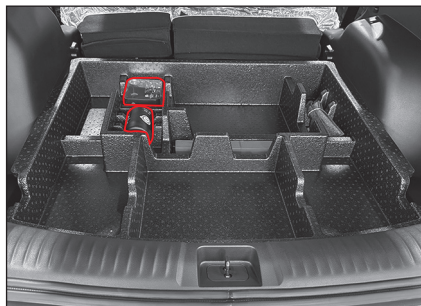
Repairing a flat tire/inflating a tire using the service kit* for tire repair

Components of the service kit for tire repair



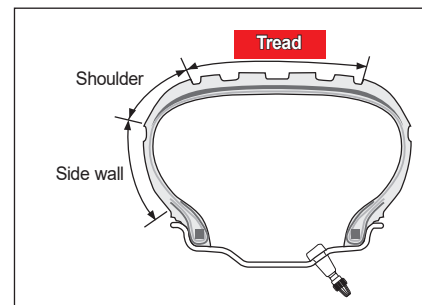
- 1 Sealant filler hose
- 2 Sealant
- 3 Air injection hose
- 4 Sealant removal button
- 5 Sealant mounting
- 6 Pressure gauge
- 7 Positive (+) cable
- 8 Negative (-) cable
- 9 Power switch
- 10 Deflating button

Storage location of the service kit



The service kit for tire repair is stored in the storage box at the rear left side of the luggage compartment with the OVM tools.

Confirming whether it is possible to repair the flat tire with the service kit or not



When a tire is flat, check the position of the hole first and use the service kit after judging whether it can be repaired using the service kit or not.

- If the size of the hole on the tread of the tire is less than 6 mm, it can be repaired using the service kit.



Warning

- Do not repair the tire using the service kit if the tire shoulder or the side wall is torn or there is a sign of cracks or damage. In such case, have the tire checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center or contact your car insurance company.



Operating principle of the service kit

When the vehicle is driven after the sealant is injected using the compressor, the sealant is spread on the inner surface of the tire, filling up the hole and enabling temporary driving.



Repairing a flat tire

When a tire is flat, it can be repaired in the following method using the service kit.

- 1 Take out the tire repair service kit from the bottom of the luggage compartment board.



- 2 Remove the speed limit sticker on the side of the sealant container and attach it to the steering wheel.



Caution

- The speed limit sticker alerts the driver that the tire has been repaired using the service kit and the speed should be limited. Do not drive the vehicle at a speed faster than 110 km/h at any time.



- 3 Take out the sealant filler hose at the top of the sealant container.



! Caution

- Check the expiration date of the sealant. The expiration date is marked on top of the sealant. Replace expired sealant with a new one since the sealing performance of the expired sealant may be degraded.
- Be sure to read the cautions on the container before using the sealant.

Notice

- Before using the sealant, shake the container well to mix the contents.

- 4 Fix the sealant container onto the compressor body completely.



- 5 Remove the air valve cap of the flat tire.
- 6 Connect the sealant filler hose which you took out at the sealant container to the air valve of the flat tire firmly.



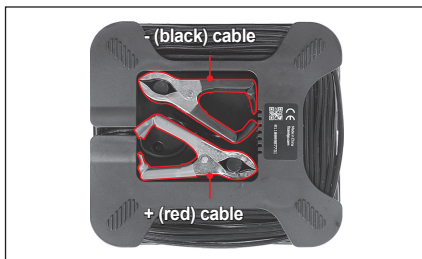
5

! Caution

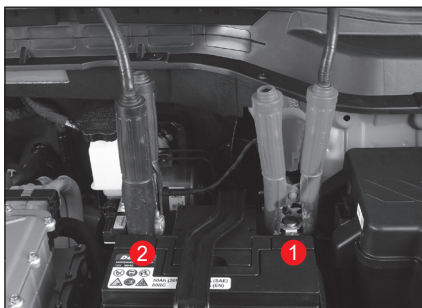
- The power switch of the service kit should be in the OFF position.



- 7 Take out the + (red) / - (black) cables at the bottom of the compressor.



- 8 Connect the + (red) (1) cable of the service kit to the vehicle battery and then connect the - (black) (2) cable.



Warning

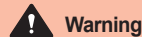
- Use caution when connecting the cables. Sparks may occur.



Caution

- Connecting the positive (+) and negative (-) terminals of the battery in reverse may result in damage to the battery and the tire service kit. Be sure to connect the cables in the correct order.
- Be sure to start with removing the negative (-) terminal (black cable) when disconnecting the cables.

- 9 Start the vehicle.



Warning

- Be sure to repair a tire in a well-ventilated area.

- 10 Press the power switch of the service kit to activate the compressor.



Caution

- Do not operate the compressor for more than 10 minutes. Doing so may overheat the compressor, leading to a malfunction.

- 11 Wait until the pressure reaches the prescribed pressure (36 psi, 2.48 bar) while checking the pressure gauge of the service kit.



5-10 Emergency Measures in the Event of Emergency



Warning

- If the specified tire pressure is not reached within 8 minutes (however, current tire pressure has reached at least 26 psi), re-inflate the tire as described below:
 1. Stop using the service kit and remove the sealant from the compressor.
 2. Place the service kit back in place (bottom of the luggage compartment board).
 3. Drive the vehicle at low speed for about 10 m so that the sealant is applied on the inner surface of the tire evenly.
 4. Fit the air injection hose at the compressor to the flat tire.
 5. Connect the power cable at the bottom of the compressor to the vehicle battery.
 6. Start the vehicle to operate the compressor.
 7. Operate the compressor until the tire pressure reaches to the specified value (36 psi, 2.48 bar).

If the tire is overinflated, press the air pressure release button to adjust the tire pressure.



- 12 When the prescribed pressure is reached, turn off the service kit.

Caution

- If the tire pressure does not go above 26psi after operating the compressor for more than 10 minutes, the tire cannot be repaired using the service kit. Request an emergency rescue service or vehicle towing.

- 13 Disconnect the air hose from the tire.
- 14 Install the air valve cap on the tire.
- 15 Turn off the vehicle.
- 16 Remove the sealant container and the air hose from the service kit and place the service kit back to its original position (bottom of luggage compartment board).
- 17 Drive the vehicle immediately for approximately 10 km to allow the sealant to be spread on the inner surface of the tire evenly.
- 18 Stop the vehicle at a safe place and measure the tire pressure with the service kit.

5



Warning

- Use the service kit only when a small hole (approximately 6 mm or less) has occurred on the tread of the tire.
- Do not use the service kit if the tire shoulder or side wall is torn or the hole is too large. In such case, have your vehicle towed or serviced at a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.
- When a tire repaired using the service kit is fixed, drive the vehicle at a speed less than 110 km/h.
- The service kit should be used only for temporary repair. The maximum distance that can be traveled with a tire repaired by injecting sealant is approximately 200 km.
- If a vibration occurs or the steering is unstable and a noise occurs while driving, stop driving the vehicle immediately. In such case, have your vehicle serviced at a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.

Caution

- Remove the sealant container carefully to prevent the sealant from coming into contact with your skin. If sealant comes into contact with your skin, wash it with soapy water.
- The sealant container cannot be used after it is used once. Just in case, purchase and replace with new sealant.
- Do not discard the used sealant container anywhere. Return it to a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.
- Do not use an unauthorized sealant which is not KG Mobility genuine sealant. Doing so may damage the sensor of the TPMS.
- Replace the tire repaired using the sealant with a new one at a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center as soon as possible and have the TPMS checked for abnormality.
 Refer to "Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)" (p.2-29)

Checking the tire pressure after repairing a flat tire

The pressure of the tire repaired using the service kit should be checked as follows after driving for approximately 10 km.

- 1 Take out the tire repair service kit from the bottom of the luggage compartment board.
- 2 Take out the air hose from the service kit.
- 3 Remove the air valve cap of the tire.
- 4 Connect the air hose of the service kit to the air valve on the tire firmly.
- 5 Check the tire pressure from the pressure gauge of the service kit.

If the tire pressure is higher or lower than the prescribed pressure (36 psi, 2.48 bar), adjust it to the prescribed pressure using the air valve of the tire.

Warning

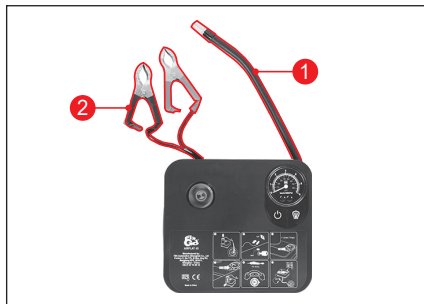
- If the tire pressure is not maintained at the prescribed pressure (36 psi, 2.48 bar), stop driving the vehicle immediately and request a KG Mobility authorized service for help.



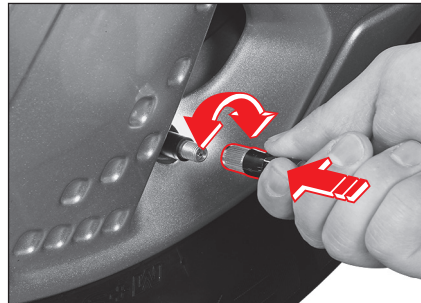
Inflating a tire

When the tire pressure is insufficient, you can inflate the tire to the prescribed pressure with the following method using the service kit.

- 1 Take out the tire repair service kit from the bottom of the luggage compartment board.
- 2 Take out the air hose (1) and the power cable (2) from the service kit.



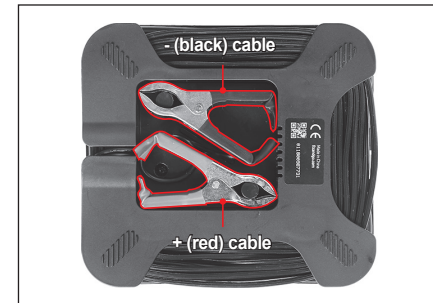
- 3 Remove the air valve cap of the tire you wish to inflate.
- 4 Connect the air hose of the service kit to the air valve on the tire firmly.



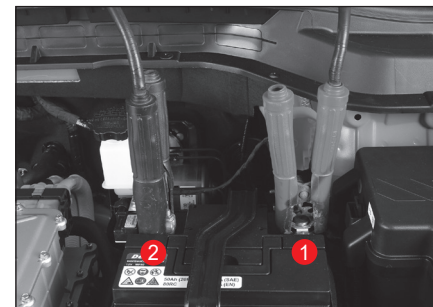
! Caution

- The power switch of the service kit should be in the OFF position.

- 5 Take out the + (red) / - (black) cables at the bottom of the compressor.



- 6 Connect the + (red) (1) cable of the service kit to the vehicle battery and then connect the - (black) (2) cable.



5



7 Start the vehicle.



Warning

- Be sure to repair a tire in a well-ventilated area.

8 Press the power switch (1) of the service kit to activate the compressor.

9 Wait until the pressure reaches the prescribed pressure (36 psi, 2.48 bar) while checking the pressure gauge (2) of the service kit.



If the tire is overinflated, press the air pressure release button to adjust the tire pressure.



10 When the prescribed pressure is reached, press the power switch (1) of the service kit to turn it off.



Caution

- Do not operate the compressor for more than 10 minutes. Doing so may overheat the compressor, leading to a malfunction.

11 Turn off the vehicle.

12 Disconnect the air hose from the tire.

13 Install the air valve cap on the tire.

14 Place the service kit back to its original position (storage box at the rear left side of the luggage compartment).

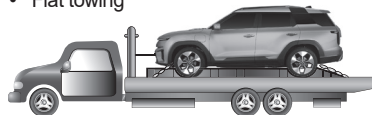
5-14 Emergency Measures in the Event of Emergency



When you need to have your vehicle towed

Towing a disabled vehicle

- Flat towing



- Towing with front wheels on ground



Dolly

- Towing with rear wheels on ground



Dolly

Towing with tow truck

The best towing method is to lift the entire vehicle onto the flatbed so that all wheels are off the ground. If it is impossible, put the front or rear wheels on the jig and tow the vehicle using a dolly, with other wheels off the ground.

Warning

- If your vehicle should be towed due to wheel slips in mud or sand, you can use the towing hooks in your vehicle. However, if the load to hooks is too heavy, the towing hook, rope or chain could be broken, resulting in serious personal injury and vehicle damage.
- To prevent damage to your vehicle, proper lifting and towing procedures are necessary. When you need a towing service, contact KG Mobility Dealer or KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.

For 2WD vehicles

It is not allowed to use a tow truck or keep the rear wheels from moving with the parking brake released for towing, as shown in the following figure.

Do not tow the vehicle with the rear wheels on the ground.

Caution



- Do not tow with the sling-type equipment or the bumper and lower parts can be damaged.
- Be careful not to damage the bumper and lower parts during towing.

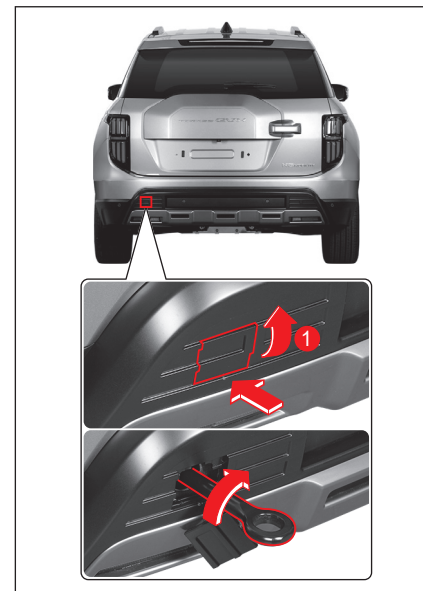
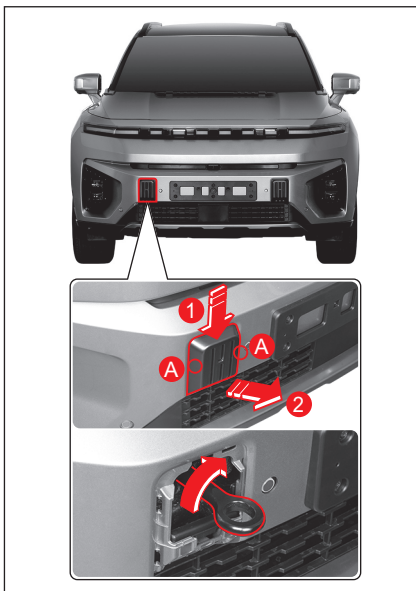


When a tow truck is unavailable (in case of emergency)

If your vehicle needs to be towed when a tow truck is unavailable, you can have your vehicle towed by installing the towing hook to a towing vehicle and the vehicle to be towed and connecting the two vehicles with the towing rope (sold separately).

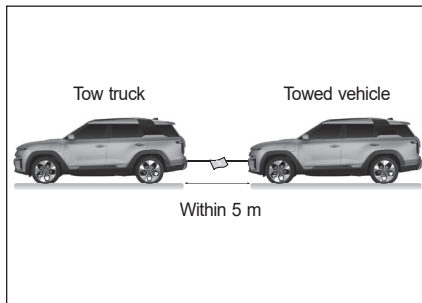
Installing the towing hook

- 1 Take out the towing hooks from the OVM tools stored in the storage box at the rear left side of the luggage compartment.
- 2 For front bumper:
While pressing the top of the hole cover on the front bumper of the vehicle to be towed in the direction of arrow (1), grasp the side of the hole cover (A) and pull in the direction of arrow (2) to remove the cover.
- 3 For rear bumper:
Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow (3) from the bottom portion of the hole cover on the rear bumper of the vehicle to be towed.
- 4 Insert the towing hook into each hole and fasten it firmly.





Using a towing rope



- 1 Connect the towing rope to the towing hook of the towing vehicle and the vehicle to be towed securely.
- 2 Tie a white cloth in the middle of the rope so that the towing rope is clearly visible.
- 3 Release the parking brake of the vehicle to be towed and place the SBW (shift by wire) in the N (neutral) position.
- 4 If the vehicle of the vehicle to be towed is turned off, place the START/STOP switch in the ON position.
- 5 Turn on the hazard warning lamp of both the towing vehicle and the vehicle to be towed.

- 6 Start the vehicle of the towing vehicle and tow the vehicle to be towed.

At this time, the length of the towing rope should be less than 5 m and the total length of the towing vehicle and the vehicle to be towed should not exceed 25 m.

Tow the vehicle at a speed of 5 km/h or less.

Warning

- Use the towing hook only for towing a vehicle for a short distance temporarily or in an emergency situation. Avoid using it for towing all the time.
- If you want to tow the vehicle using the towing hook, make sure that the force is applied in the front, rear and horizontal direction. Do not drive off suddenly or recklessly since it can apply excessive load to the towing hook. Doing so may damage the towing rope or chain, leading to vehicle damage or a serious injury.

Caution

- Avoid impractical towing and towing a vehicle which is heavier than the towing vehicle.
- If there are many steep downhill or slopes in the towing path, do not attempt to tow the vehicle using the towing hook.
- The brake performance is significantly lowered while the vehicle is not running. Therefore, depress the brake pedal stronger than usual when towing the vehicle using the towing hook.
- Tow the vehicle while operating the turn signal and the hazard warning lamp along with the towing vehicle's signals.



Trailer towing

Your vehicle is designed primarily as a passenger vehicle therefore handling, braking, durability and economy will be affected by towing a trailer.

Your safety and satisfaction depend upon proper use of correct equipment. Also, you should avoid overloading and other abusive use.

The maximum loaded trailer weight you can pull with your vehicle depends on your intended use and what special equipment has been installed on it. Before attempting any towing, ensure that the correct equipment is fitted to your vehicle.

Your KG Mobility Dealer will help supply and install towing equipment to suit your requirement.

Trailer loading

To load your trailer properly, you must know how to measure gross trailer weight and trailer ball weight. Gross trailer weight is the weight of the trailer plus all cargo in it.

You can measure gross trailer weight by putting the fully loaded trailer on a vehicle scale.

Trailer ball weight is the downward force exerted on the hitch by the trailer coupler at its normal towing height. This weight can be measured using a bathroom scale.

The weight of your loaded trailer (gross trailer weight) should never exceed the specified values.

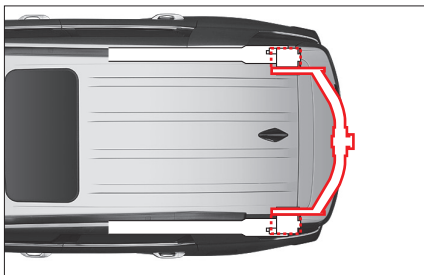
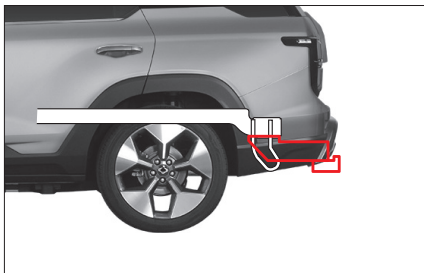
The permissible trailer loads are valid for several gradients from 6.8% to 12.6% according to vehicle power applied.

When the trailer has been coupled, the permissible rear axle load for the fully loaded towing vehicle (including occupants) must not be exceeded.

Maximum Load Limits

(unit: kg)

Type	Maximum Trailer	Trailer coupling weight	
		Maximum permissible static vertical load on the coupling device	Maximum trailer hitch
with brake	1,500	60	25
without brake	500		



If you want to pull a trailer

Important points:

- You have to consider a sway control. You can check the sway control to hitch dealer.
- If the total driving distance of your new vehicle is under 800 km (500 miles), do not tow a trailer. For the first 800 km (500 miles) that you tow a trailer, do not drive over 80 km/h (50 mph) and do not start off your vehicle at full throttle. Otherwise, your other parts could be damaged due to heavier loads.
- Always drive your vehicle at a moderate speed (less than 80 km/h).
- You have to consider the weight of trailer.
- The permissible trailer ball weight varies according to the cargo weight on the deck.
- It has to be limited to the number of passengers by 5 people including a driver.

Weight of trailer

To keep the vehicle and trailer safely, you must consider many factors except the maximum load limit.

The vehicle and trailer's safety depends on how you use your trailer. Vehicle speed, altitude, load, outside temperature and frequency of using trailer are all very important. Any special equipment on your vehicle also affects on your vehicle.

Weight of trailer tongue

The tongue load of a trailer is also considered very carefully because it affects the gross vehicle weight (GVW) of your vehicle. This weight includes the curb weight of vehicle, any luggage in trailer, and the passengers in vehicle. In addition to that, you must add the trailer tongue load to the GVW because your vehicle will carry all the weight.

The trailer tongue should weigh a maximum of 4% of total loaded trailer weight. To check the weights are proper, you must weigh the trailer and the tongue separately after loading. If the weights are not proper, unload some items from the trailer.



Caution

- **Never load a trailer with more weight in the rear side than in the front side.** (Recommendation - Front: approx. 60%, Rear: approx. 40%)
- **Never exceed the maximum load limits of trailer or trailer towing equipment.** Improper loading may result in damage to your vehicle. It may occur the personal injury. Before driving, check the weight and loading at a commercial scale or highway patrol office equipped with scales.
- **An improperly loaded trailer may cause the loss of vehicle control.**
- **When towing the trailer, turn the Idle Stop & Go (ISG) system off.**

5



Trailer brakes

If the trailer brakes are used, you should follow all instructions provided by the manufacturer. Never modify the brake system of your vehicle.

Trailer lights

Make sure your trailer is equipped with lights which meet country and local requirements.

Always check for the proper operation of all trailer lights before you start to tow.

Tires

When towing trailers, be sure your tires are properly inflated to the inflation pressure.

Safety chains

Always attach safety chains between your vehicle and the trailer. Cross the safety chains under the tongue of the trailer so that the tongue will not drop to the road if it becomes separated from the hitch. Follow the manufacturer's recommendation for attaching safety chains. Always leave just enough slack to permit full turning. Never allow safety chains to drag on the road.

Brake fluid

Change the brake fluid every 15,000 km (9,000 miles) under the following conditions.

- Towing a trailer frequently.
- Driving in hilly or mountainous terrain.

Automatic transmission fluid

More frequent maintenance is required if your vehicle tows trailer frequently.

Towing tips

When towing a trailer, your vehicle will handle differently compared with normal driving condition.

- For safety, observe the following precautions:
- Practice turning, stopping, and reversing before you begin towing in traffic.
Do not tow in traffic until you are confident that you can handle the vehicle and trailer safely.
- Before driving, make sure that the lighting system of the trailer works properly.
- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h.
- Make sure that you have enough room when cornering and avoid sudden maneuvers.
- Avoid abrupt starts, acceleration or stops.
- Avoid sharp turns or lane changes.
- Always have someone guide you when reversing.

- Allow adequate stopping distance.
Stopping distance is increased when you tow a trailer.
- Avoid holding the brake pedal down too long or too frequently, which will cause the brakes to overheat and result in reduced brake efficiency.
- Always block the wheels on both vehicle and trailer when parking. Apply the parking brake firmly.
- Parking on a steep slope is not recommended.
You really should not park your vehicle, with a trailer attached, on a hill.
If something goes wrong, such as the trailer/ caravan hitch becoming disengaged, people can be injured and both the vehicle and trailer can be damaged.
- If someone removing the blocks stands directly behind the trailer, he could be injured.
If your brakes or the hitch slipped, the trailer could roll backward. Make sure anyone removing blocks from your wheels stands to one side.
- Take note of trailer manufacturer's instructions.



Driving on hill

You start down a long or steep downgrade. If you don't shift down, you might have to use your brakes so much that they would get hot and no longer work well.

Parking on hills

You really should not park your vehicle, with a trailer attached, on a hill. If something goes wrong, your rig could start to move. People can be injured, and both your vehicle and the trailer can be damaged.

But if you ever have to park your rig on a hill, here's how to do it:

- 1 Apply your regular brakes, but don't shift into PARK (P).
- 2 Have someone place chocks under the trailer wheels.
- 3 When the wheel chocks are in place release the regular brakes until the chocks absorb the load.
- 4 Reapply the regular brakes. Then apply your parking brake, and then shift to PARK (P).
- 5 Release the regular brakes.

When you are ready to leave after parking on a hill

- 1 Apply your regular brakes and hold the pedal down while you:
 - Start your vehicle
 - SBW into a gear and
 - Release the parking brake.
- 2 Let up on the brake pedal.
- 3 Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
- 4 Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

5

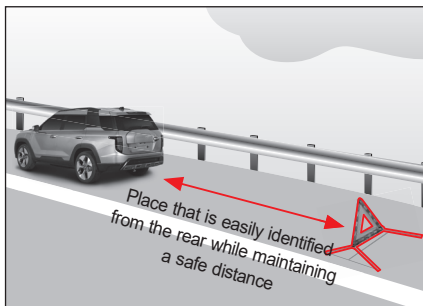
Maintenance when towing trailer

Your vehicle will need service more often when you're towing a trailer. See the maintenance Schedule for more on this. Things that are especially important in trailer operation are brake pads & discs. Each of these is covered in this manual and the index will help you find them quickly. If you want to tow a trailer, it's a good idea to review these sections before you start your trip.

Check periodically to see that all hitch nuts and bolts are tight.



When the vehicle has stopped due to a failure



If the vehicle malfunctions and has stopped while driving, do not panic and take an action according to the following order.

- 1 Turn on the hazard warning lamp of the vehicle.
- 2 Move your vehicle to the right shoulder of the road or a safe location.
- 3 Place a warning triangle (if it is available).

The position that is easily identified by a driver in an approaching vehicle while maintaining a safe distance (100 m during daytime, 200 m in the rear during night time) is an appropriate area to place the warning triangle.

Place a road flare additionally at night.
- 4 Evacuate all occupants to a safe place.
- 5 Request an emergency rescue service or vehicle towing.

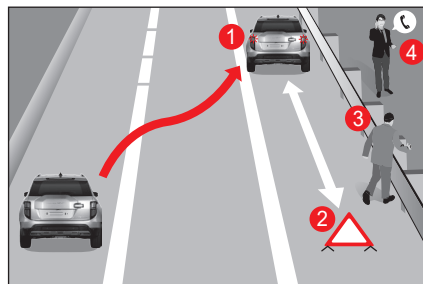


In the event of an accident

If an accident has occurred while driving, do not panic and take an action according to the following order.

- 1 Turn on the hazard warning lamp of the vehicle.
- 2 Move your vehicle to the right shoulder of the road or a safe location.
- 3 Place a warning triangle (if it is available).
The position that is easily identified by a driver in an approaching vehicle while maintaining a safe distance (100 m during daytime, 200 m in the rear during night time) is an appropriate area to place the warning triangle.
Place a road flare additionally at night.
- 4 Evacuate all occupants to a safe place.
- 5 If anyone is injured, give aid and call an ambulance.
- 6 Contact the nearest police station and when a police officer arrives, follow his/her instructions.
- 7 Even in case of a minor accident, be sure to visit a hospital and see the doctor.

Tips when an accident or a malfunction occurs on the expressway



When you stop the vehicle on the expressway due to an accident or a malfunction, take an action according to the following order in order to prevent a secondary accident.

- 1 Turn on the hazard warning lamp promptly and move the vehicle to the shoulder of the road (1).
- 2 If a warning triangle or a road flare is available: Place a warning triangle on the rear side of the vehicle (2). (Place a road flare additionally at night)
- 3 The driver and any occupants should be evacuated to a safe area such as behind the guardrail (3).
- 4 If you need help, contact the police, fire department, or highway department.



Warning

- In the event of a vehicle accident, move the vehicle to a safe place and cut off power by turning off the vehicle and disconnecting the terminals of the auxiliary battery (12 V) to prevent high voltage electrical leakage.
- Do not touch the wires if there are exposed wires when viewed from inside or outside the vehicle. In addition, do not touch high voltage wires (orange) and connectors and all electrical components and devices. Failure to do so may result in electrical shock.
- In the event of a vehicle accident, the drive (high voltage) battery may be damaged, resulting in leakage of gases and electrolytes harmful to the human body. Be careful not to let leaked liquids touch your skin. If combustible and toxic gas leaks are suspected, open windows to ventilate and evacuate to a safe place. If a leaked liquid enters the eye or comes into contact with the skin, immediately flush the area with running or salt water and consult a doctor.
- If your vehicle is flooded, turn off the ignition immediately, evacuate to a safe place, and contact emergency agencies such as fire stations and KG Mobility dealer or KG Mobility Authorized Service Center for assistance.

5



In the event of a fire

When a fire has occurred in the vehicle, do not panic and take an action according to the following order.

- 1 Turn on the hazard warning lamp of the vehicle.
- 2 Stop the vehicle at a safe place immediately and stop the vehicle.
- 3 Extinguish the fire using an extinguisher.
- 4 If you cannot extinguish the fire, report it to a police station or a fire station.

At this time, do not approach the vehicle and maintain a safe distance with the vehicle.



Warning

- When a vehicle accident occurs, the fuel may leak, causing a fire. Stop the vehicle immediately and keep any inflammables away from the vehicle.



Warning

- In the event of a vehicle fire, extinguish the fire using a powder fire extinguisher dedicated to the electric fire. If an electrical fire extinguisher is not available, use sufficient water to extinguish the fire. Using a small amount of water or an improper fire extinguisher may result in injury from electrical shock. If the fire cannot be extinguished quickly, the drive (high voltage) battery may heat up and explode, so evacuate to a safe place and keep people away from it. Contact emergency agencies, such as fire station, to inform them of the electric vehicle fire and take action.
- For small fires, use an electrical fire extinguisher (ABC and BC fire extinguishers) to extinguish the fire. If early fire suppression is not possible, evacuate to a safe place and keep people away from the vehicle. Make an emergency phone call to notify the electric vehicle of a fire and receive appropriate guidance on the fire.
- If the fire has spread to a high voltage battery underneath the vehicle, a large amount of water must be continuously supplied for a long period of time to completely extinguish the fire. If a small amount of water or an inappropriate fire extinguisher is used, it is difficult to extinguish the fire and may result in an electric shock.

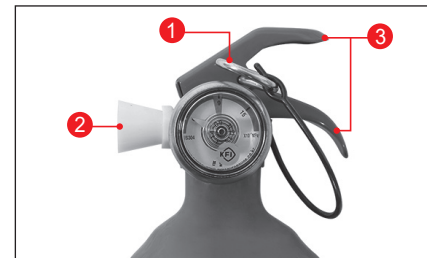
Placing an extinguisher in the vehicle

Place an extinguisher in the vehicle since it is needed for early fire extinguishing when a fire occurs.

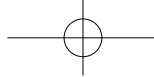
Notice

- At VAN specification, It is possible to store the extinguisher at rear side of driver seat.

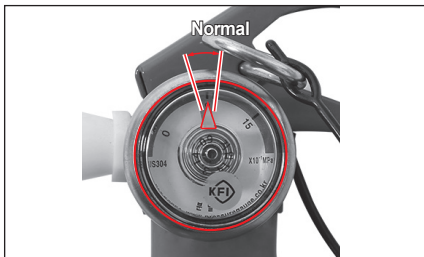
How to use the extinguisher



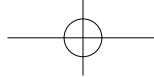
- 1 Remove the safety pin (1) from the extinguisher with the wind at your back.
- 2 Face the extinguisher nozzle (2) towards the place where the fire occurs.
- 3 Hold the handle (3) and spray to the place where the fire occurs, using a sweeping motion.



Checking and maintaining the extinguisher



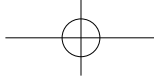
- Check at least once a month if the needle on the pressure gauge of the extinguisher is in the normal range.
If there is a pressure loss or other abnormalities, have the extinguisher serviced immediately.
- The lifetime of the extinguisher is approximately 5 years when it is maintained under normal conditions.
After 5 years have passed, it should be inspected and confirmed by a fire fighting equipment company every 2 years.
- After using the extinguisher, be sure to release the chemical (ABC powder) from the inside of the extinguisher completely and refill with an ABC powder fire extinguishing agent.
If it is left unattended for a long period of time, the contents may become hardened and it cannot be used. Shake the extinguisher periodically.



In the event of a heavy snow

When there is a heavy snow, do not panic and refer to the following tips for actions.

- Always listen to the radio and use the expressway information call number.
- Drive slowly on a curved road, an uphill road or a bridge.
- Avoid parking or leaving the vehicle on the shoulder of the road that cause inconvenience for snow removal operations.
- Be sure to leave your contact information when you leave the vehicle unavoidably.
- Drive slowly while securing a safe distance between vehicles.
- Avoid using the brake as much as possible, and use the regenerative braking system to slow down gradually and stop your vehicle.
- Clear the snow around the vehicle from time to time.



6. Periodic Checking and Maintenance

You can check the necessary periodic check and maintenance methods in detail for safe and pleasant vehicle driving.



Maintenance Schedule

Maintenance item	Daily check	Change interval
High voltage battery and heater cabin coolant	○	Every 4 years or 80000 km
Driving and charging system coolant	○	Every 5 years or 200000 km
Brake fluid	○	Every 2 years
Brake pipe and hose	-	Check at first 10000 km of driving / then check every 20000 km of driving or every year /replace if necessary
Reducer oil	-	Change every 40000 km
A/C filter	-	Replace every 10000 km of driving (Under severe conditions such as dusty road, unpaved road, and excessive A/C and heater operation, shorten the replacement interval)



Warning

For all consumables and oils, use genuine parts specified by us.



Oils capacity/specifications

Category		Capacity	Specifications
Coolant	Driving and charging system	≐ 4.6L	SYC1025
	High-voltage battery and heater cabin coolant	≐ 6.5L	SYC306E
Brake fluid		As required	KG Mobility genuine oil (DOT4)
Reducer oil		≐ 1.3L	CASTROL BOT 384



Warning

- Always use KG Mobility genuine oils and liquids.
- Do not mix oils and liquids with other products. It can damage corresponding parts of the vehicle.
- When replenishing or changing oils and liquids, check the oil level.



Scheduled maintenance services - EV

* Use only approved KGM genuine parts.

Maintenance service and record retention are the owner's responsibility. You should retain evidence that proper maintenance has been performed on your vehicle in accordance with the scheduled maintenance service chart.

Daily check items	
Check and replenish high voltage battery coolant	Various oil leakage and coolant leakage
Check and replenish driving and charging system coolant	Seat belt and buckle operation status
Check connection of cooling system	Whether warning lamp and ON indicator illuminated or not
Check low voltage (12 V) battery	Operating status of outdoor/indoor lamps
Steering wheel free play	Wiper, washer operation and mirror status
Check and replenish brake fluid	Wiper blade check and replacement
Brake pedal operation and free play	Washer fluid level check and fill up if necessary
Tire pressure check and inflation	Cooling/Heating system operation

6-4 Periodic Checking and Maintenance



Maintenance interval Maintenance item	x 1000km	10	20	40	60	80	100	120	140
	x 1000miles	6	12	24	36	48	60	72	84
	months	-	12	24	36	48	60	72	84
High voltage battery and heater cabin coolant	Change every 4 years or 80000 km								
Driving and charging system coolant	Change every 5 years or 200000 km								
Brake fluid (1)*	Change every 2 years								
Brake pipe and hose	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
	Check and adjust or replace if necessary								
Brake pad and disc (2)*	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
	Inspect and change (inspect frequently)								
Parking brake operation (2)*	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
	Check and adjust frequently								
Reducer oil (1)*	I	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	I
	Add or change oil as necessary								
Re-tighten power steering mounting bolt (3)*	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Check each steering system connection, gearbox, boot (3)*	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

Chart Symbols:

I - Inspect these items and their related parts. If necessary, correct, clean, replenish, adjust or replace.

R- Replace or change.

(1)* Refer to "Recommended fluids and lubricants".

(2)* More frequent maintenance is required if the vehicle is operated under any of the following conditions:

- In heavy city traffic where the outside temperature regularly reaches 32°C (90°F) or higher, or
- In hilly or mountainous terrain, or
- When doing frequent trailer towing, or
- Uses such as found in taxi, police or delivery service.

(3)* If vehicle is operated under severe condition: Shorten the service interval.

- Towing a trailer or off-road driving (Inspect the leak of fluid at any time, occasionally)
- Taxi, patrol service or delivery service (extended idling and excessive driving with low speed)
- Frequent stop-and-go traffic, extended idling, short driving distance
- Driving in a hilly or mountainous terrain, sandy, or dusty area
- Driving frequently at high speed over 170 km/hour
- Driving frequently in area where heavy traffic under the ambient temperature above 32°C



Maintenance interval Maintenance item	x 1000km	10	20	40	60	80	100	120	140
	x 1000miles	6	12	24	36	48	60	72	84
	months	-	12	24	36	48	60	72	84
Check ball joint (3)*	I	I	I	I	I	I	R	I	I
	Adjust or replace if necessary, change every 60 months or 100000 km (whichever comes first)								
Lower bolt/nut of chassis and body check tighten, ball joint grease leakage check, free play/tightness (3)*	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
	Adjust or replace if necessary								
Check drive shaft and boot (4)*	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
	Fill or change grease if necessary								
Tire wear	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tire rotation	Change every 10000 km of driving								
Wheel balance and wheel alignment	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Wheel nut/bolt tightness condition	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Various system test with diagnostic device	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Check and adjust headlamp aiming angle	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Hood, door, tailgate lubrication and operation	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
	Adjust or replace if necessary								
A/C filter (5)*	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
	Change every 10000 km of driving								

Chart Symbols:

I - Inspect these items and their related parts. If necessary, correct, clean, replenish, adjust or replace.

R- Replace or change.

(3)* If vehicle is operated under severe condition: Shorten the service interval.

- Towing a trailer or off-road driving (Inspect the leak of fluid at any time, occasionally)
- Taxi, patrol service or delivery service (extended idling and excessive driving with low speed)
- Frequent stop-and-go traffic, extended idling, short driving distance

- Driving in a hilly or mountainous terrain, sandy, or dusty area

- Driving frequently at high speed over 170 km/hour

- Driving frequently in area where heavy traffic under the ambient temperature above 32°C

(4)* After completion of off-road operation, the drive shaft boots should be inspected.

(5)* Severe Conditions in Air Conditioner Filter

- Pollutant area or off-road driving, extended air conditioner or heater operation

6-6 Periodic Checking and Maintenance



Maintenance Schedule (under severe condition)

Maintenance item	Daily check	Change interval
High voltage battery and heater cabin coolant	○	Every 2 years or 40000 km
Driving and charging system coolant	○	Every 3 years or 100000 km
Brake fluid	○	Every 1 year
Brake pipe and hose	-	Check at first 5000 km of driving / then check every 10000 km of driving or every year /replace if necessary
Reducer oil	-	Change every 20000 km
A/C filter	-	Replace every 5000 km of driving (Under severe conditions such as dusty road, unpaved road, and excessive A/C and heater operation, shorten the replacement interval)



Warning

For all consumables and oils, use genuine parts specified by us.

6



Scheduled maintenance services (under severe condition) - EV

* Use only approved KGM genuine parts.

Maintenance service and record retention are the owner's responsibility. You should retain evidence that proper maintenance has been performed on your vehicle in accordance with the scheduled maintenance service chart.

Daily check items	
Check and replenish high voltage battery coolant	Various oil leakage and coolant leakage
Check and replenish driving and charging system coolant	Seat belt and buckle operation status
Check connection of cooling system	Whether warning lamp and ON indicator illuminated or not
Check low voltage (12 V) battery	Operating status of outdoor/indoor lamps
Steering wheel free play	Wiper, washer operation and mirror status
Check and replenish brake fluid	Wiper blade check and replacement
Brake pedal operation and free play	Washer fluid level check and fill up if necessary
Tire pressure check and inflation	Cooling/Heating system operation



Maintenance interval Maintenance item	x 1000km	5	10	20	30	40	50	60	70
	x 1000miles	3	6	12	18	24	30	36	42
	months	-	6	12	18	24	30	36	42
High voltage battery and heater cabin coolant	Change every 2 years or 40000 km								
Driving and charging system coolant	Change every 3 years or 100000 km								
Brake fluid (1)*	Change every year								
Brake pipe and hose	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake pad and disc (2)*	Check and adjust or replace if necessary								
Parking brake operation (2)*	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Reducer oil (1)*	Check and adjust frequently								
Re-tighten power steering mounting bolt (3)*	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Check each steering system connection, gearbox, boot (3)*	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

Chart Symbols:

I - Inspect these items and their related parts. If necessary, correct, clean, replenish, adjust or replace.

R- Replace or change.

(1)* Refer to "Recommended fluids and lubricants".

(2)* More frequent maintenance is required if the vehicle is operated under any of the following conditions:

- In heavy city traffic where the outside temperature regularly reaches 32°C (90°F) or higher, or
- In hilly or mountainous terrain, or
- When doing frequent trailer towing, or
- Uses such as found in taxi, police or delivery service.

(3)* If vehicle is operated under severe condition: Shorten the service interval.

- Towing a trailer or off-road driving (Inspect the leak of fluid at any time, occasionally)
- Taxi, patrol service or delivery service (extended idling and excessive driving with low speed)
- Frequent stop-and-go traffic, extended idling, short driving distance
- Driving in a hilly or mountainous terrain, sandy, or dusty area
- Driving frequently at high speed over 170 km/hour
- Driving frequently in area where heavy traffic under the ambient temperature above 32°C



Maintenance interval \ Maintenance item	x 1000km	5	10	20	30	40	50	60	70
	x 1000miles	3	6	12	18	24	30	36	42
	months	-	6	12	18	24	30	36	42
Check ball joint (3)*	I	I	I	I	I	I	R	I	I
	Adjust or replace if necessary, change every 30 months or 50000 km (whichever comes first)								
Lower bolt/nut of chassis and body check tighten, ball joint grease leakage check, free play/tightness (3)*	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
	Adjust or replace if necessary								
Check drive shaft and boot (4)*	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
	Fill or change grease if necessary								
Tire wear	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tire rotation	Change every 5000 km of driving								
Wheel balance and wheel alignment	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Wheel nut/bolt tightness condition	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Various system test with diagnostic device	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Check and adjust headlamp aiming angle	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Hood, door, tailgate lubrication and operation	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
	Adjust or replace if necessary								
A/C filter (5)*	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
	Change every 5000 km of driving								

Chart Symbols:

I - Inspect these items and their related parts. If necessary, correct, clean, replenish, adjust or replace.

R- Replace or change.

(3)* If vehicle is operated under severe condition: Shorten the service interval.

- Towing a trailer or off-road driving (Inspect the leak of fluid at any time, occasionally)
- Taxi, patrol service or delivery service (extended idling and excessive driving with low speed)
- Frequent stop-and-go traffic, extended idling, short driving distance
- Driving in a hilly or mountainous terrain, sandy, or dusty area

- Driving frequently at high speed over 170 km/hour

- Driving frequently in area where heavy traffic under the ambient temperature above 32°C

(4)* After completion of off-road operation, the drive shaft boots should be inspected.

(5)* Severe Conditions in Air Conditioner Filter

- Pollutant area or off-road driving, extended air conditioner or heater operation

6-10 Periodic Checking and Maintenance



Table for check and change intervals under demanding conditions

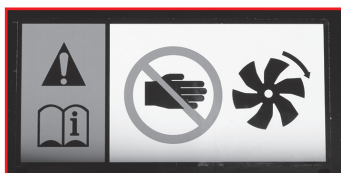
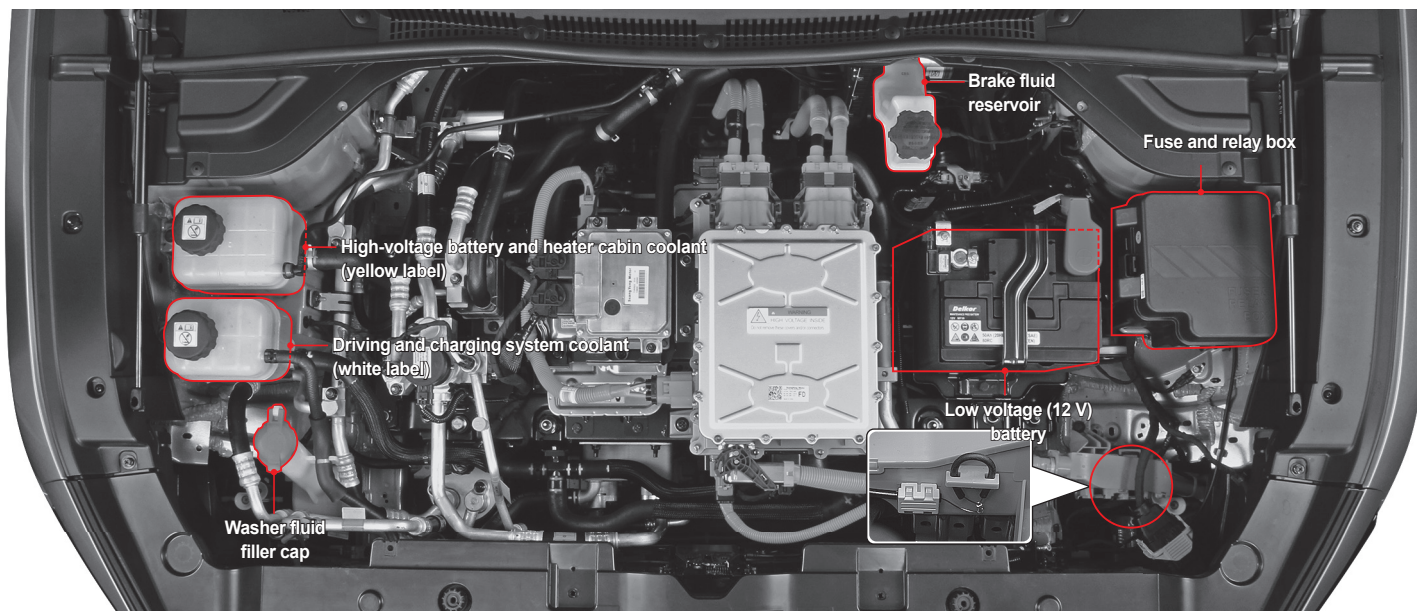
Maintenance item	Check and change intervals	Driving conditions
Brake pad and disc	Check frequently and adjust or replace if necessary	2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8
Ball joint	Check frequently and adjust or replace if necessary	2, 3, 4, 5, 6
Drive shaft and boot	Check frequently and adjust or replace if necessary	2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7
A/C filter	Check frequently and adjust or replace if necessary	2
Reducer oil	Change every 40000 km of driving	1, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10

When driving under the following demanding conditions, check frequently by shortening the check and replacement interval and replace, if necessary.

- 1 Driving a short distance repeatedly
- 2 Driving in a dusty and sandy area
- 3 Operating in a place with heavy traffic
- 4 High frequency of driving in rough roads such as sand, gravel road, snowy road and unpaved road
- 5 Frequent driving up mountain roads or in hilly terrain
- 6 Using the vehicle as a police car, taxi, fleet, tow truck (trailer towing), etc.
- 7 Driving at a high speed (170 km/h) frequently
- 8 Frequent stop-and-start driving
- 9 High frequency of driving in hot areas (30°C or higher)
- 10 Frequent acceleration and sudden departure



Checking Motor Room



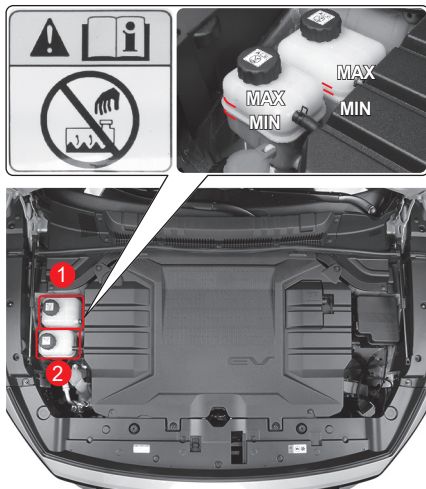
Warning

- Do not put your hand in the rotating part of the motor room cooling fan. This can lead to serious injuries.
- Electric shock can lead to death.
- Do not remove the cover and connector.
- Do not disassemble internal parts.

6-12 Periodic Checking and Maintenance



Coolant



- 1 High-voltage battery and heater cabin coolant
- 2 Drive motor coolant auxiliary tank

Warning

- Low coolant level can cause poor performance and fire due to overheating the high voltage battery, poor performance due to overheating the drive system, and poor indoor heater performance. Check coolant level at regular intervals.
- For coolant, always use our genuine antifreeze. If the product is supplemented with other types of products or non-standard products, a chemical reaction can form a scale in the cooling system and block coolant flow, causing overheating.
- Mixing coolant and replenishing water can cause problems in the vehicle. So, if the coolant level is close to or below the minimum mark, have the system checked and serviced by a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.
- Open the coolant surge tank cap slowly when the coolant is sufficiently cooled. If you rush to open it while it's hot, hot steam or water may spew out and burn you.
- If the coolant mix ratio is not correct (the concentration of antifreeze is less than 35% or more than 60%), scale or corrosion can form in the cooling system.

Caution

- Avoid any direct contact of the coolant to the painted body of the vehicle.

Level Check & Replenishment

Park the vehicle on level ground and apply the parking brake.

Stop the motor room and wait until it cools.

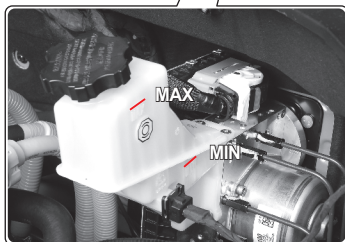
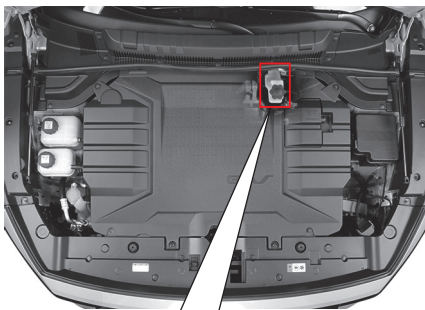
- 1 Check that the coolant level is between the maximum mark (MAX) and the minimum mark (MIN) inside the coolant auxiliary tank.
- 2 If it is near or below the minimum scale (MIN), top off the coolant.

Notice

- The factory antifreeze mix ratio for your vehicle is as follows:
 - High-voltage battery and heater cabin coolant: 50%
 - Driving and charging system coolant: 45%



Brake and clutch fluid



Specification and Replacement

Specification	DOT 4
Service interval	Every 2 years

Level Check and Replenishment

- Check the brake fluid on a level ground.
- The fluid level should be between the “MAX” and “MIN” levels on the reservoir.
- Check the level on a level surface. If it drops to or below the MIN mark, refill the tank with the specified fluid. Only use the specified fluid.

Caution

- Be careful not to let any foreign materials enter the tank when adding the fluid.
- Do not add the fluid above the “MAX” level.
- Do not allow the fluid to make contact with the body paintwork.
- After adding the fluid, tighten the cap securely.
- If frequent refills are required, have the system checked by a KG Mobility Dealer or KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.

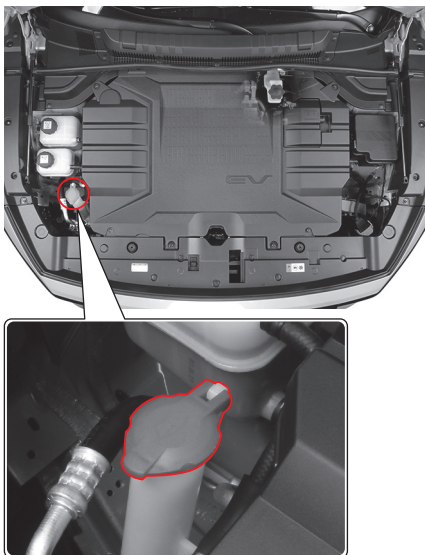


Warning

- Use only the KG Mobility genuine brake fluid.
- Do not allow the fluid to make contact with skin or eyes. If contact happens, rinse affected areas immediately with plenty of water. If irritation persists, consult a doctor.
- The fluid gradually decreases according to brake pad wear. A sudden drop of the fluid level may indicate a leak in the system. In this case, have the system checked by a KG Mobility Dealer or KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.



Washer fluid



Frequently check the washer fluid level and add the specified product as needed.

In winter, use only the specified washer liquid for winter season.

Washer fluid tank
capacity

Approx. 3.5L

Caution

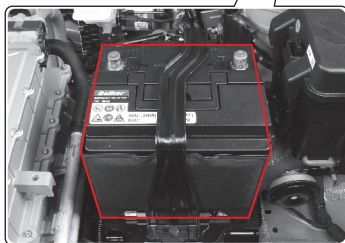
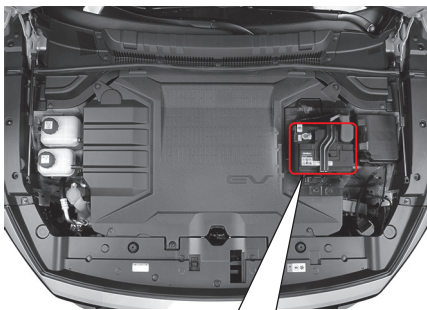
- If you use plain water as washer fluid, it will freeze during the winter and damage the washer fluid reservoir and motor. Use only the specified washer fluid.
- If you operate the washer switch without washer fluid, the motor could be damaged due to overloads. Therefore, if there is no washer fluid, do not operate the washer motor.
- Operating the wipers on a dry surface on the windshield or rear window without any washer fluid may cause damage to the glass. Operate the wipers after sufficiently spraying the washer fluid.
- Avoid any spills of washer fluid on the body paint of your vehicle during replenishment. If washer fluid spills onto your hand or other body part, wash it away under a clean water flow.
- There is no independent washer reservoir for the tailgate window. The front washer reservoir is also for the tailgate window.

Warning

- The washer fluid includes flammable materials to prevent freezing. It could cause a fire when directly contacted with flames. When checking the washer fluid, avoid the flames near the washer fluid tank.
- If antifreeze is used as the washer fluid, it will decrease your visibility through the windshield and may cause an accident.



Low voltage battery (12V)



If the low voltage battery charge warning lamp  illuminates while driving, there is a fault in the charging system of the vehicle including the low voltage (12 V) battery. In this case, immediately have the vehicle checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Dealer or KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.

Battery Maintenance

- Make sure the terminal connections are securely tightened.
- If the terminals are corroded, clean them with a wire brush or sand paper.
- Check the battery for any cracks, damages or leaks. Replace it if necessary. To remove any battery fluid on the battery surface, wear rubber gloves and wipe the fluid out with a wet-soapy cloth.

Specification

Specification	MF / 12V - 50AH
Capacity	50AH



Caution

- If you disconnect the battery terminal when the vehicle is running, electrical systems could be damaged.
- To remove the battery cable, disconnect the negative cable first and be careful on the battery terminal polarity when you connect the cables. The negative and the positive should not be confused.
- The polarity of the battery, i.e. the connections for positive and negative cables, must not be interchanged. Never short-circuit the battery.
- When the ambient temperature is too low, the battery capacity will drop and can be frozen.
- Keep the battery electrolyte at its specified level. If the electrolyte level is higher than the MAX level, it can overflow during battery charging and if the electrolyte is overcharged, the battery can explode.
- Only use a battery with the approved voltage and capacity. Otherwise, an incompatible battery can catch fire.



Warning

- The battery has acid that can burn you. And its gas can explode. You can get serious injuries if you are not careful. Keep naked flames, sparks and smoking items away from the battery.
- Loosely connected batter terminals can set up sparks. These sparks can cause a fire with flammable gas. Therefore, tightly connect the terminals.
- At night, if you need to check the motor room, do not use a lighter, but only use a battery-powered flashlight.
- Because the battery electrolyte is very strong acid, avoid any direct contact of the battery electrolyte on your skin or vehicle's body. If the acid contacts your skin, thoroughly wash your skin with fresh water and see your doctor. Do the same on your vehicle.
- Wear eye protection when working with a battery. If working in a closed area, keep good ventilation.



Warning

- Be sure to have your battery inspected and serviced at our nearest authorized service center.



Warning

- Always use the battery with correct voltage for the vehicle. Otherwise, there is a risk of fire.
- Observe the indications on the battery.



Always read the safety instructions in the User Manual before working on the battery.



The battery cell always contains highly flammable hydrogen gas which may explode if ignited. Be sure to keep it away from a cigarette, a spark or other flames.



Wear a protective goggle when charging the battery or performing any work. In addition, ensure adequate ventilation of the enclosed space.



The battery electrolyte solution contains a highly corrosive sulfuric acid. Be careful not to contact it with skin, eyes, clothes or paint. In particular, keep out of the children's reach.



When in contact with the skin, wash off the contact area; In case of eye contact, flush with running water for at least 15 minutes, and seek medical help immediately.



The hydrogen gas in the battery is highly flammable and may explode if ignited.



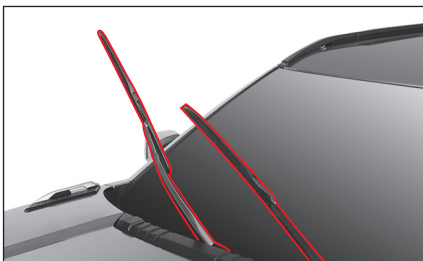
Do not throw out used battery as this pollutes the environment and is hazardous to our health. For environmental protection, used, properly dispose of used battery at designated disposal sites only.



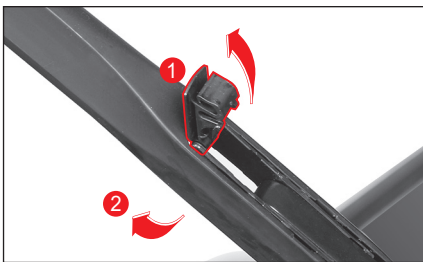
Checking the wipers and replacing the blade

Replacing the blade of windshield wiper

- 1 Lift the wiper arm up with the vehicle turned off.



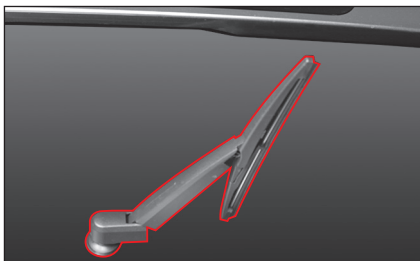
- 2 Press the wiper blade retainer (1) and pull the wiper blade out in the arrow direction (2).



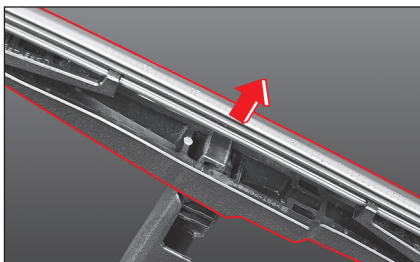
- 3 Insert a new wiper blade.
- 4 Put the wiper arm down.

Replacing the blade of rear window wiper

- 1 Lift the wiper arm up with the vehicle turned off.



- 2 With the wiper blade lifted to its side, remove it by pulling it in the arrow direction.



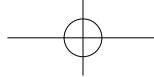
- 3 Insert a new wiper blade until a clicking sound occurs.
- 4 Put the wiper arm down.

Specifications of wiper blade

Windshield wiper		Rear window wiper
Driver seat side	Front passenger seat side	
600mm	450mm	250mm
24 "	18 "	10 "

Warning

- If there is a problem in wiper operation, it can be a fatal obstacle to safe driving when it rains or snows. Never drive the vehicle on a snowy day or a rainy day if the wiper does not operate.
- Holding the wiper arm or placing your hand near the operating part when the wiper is operating may cause an injury.



Caution

- Do not open the hood with the wiper lifted up. Doing so may damage the hood and the wiper.
- Do not operate the wiper when the windshield is dry.
- Do not wipe the windshield or the rear window with a towel stained with oil or wax. If the windshield or the rear window is stained with oil or wax, an abnormal noise may occur when you operate the wiper or light is reflected at night, making you unable to see the front well.
- When you check the wipers, be sure to lift the driver seat side wiper arm up first and then lift the front passenger seat side wiper arm up.
- When you lift the driver seat side wiper arm up, it may interfere with the front passenger seat side wiper arm, but that is normal.



Checking and replacing fuses and relays

If an electrical system does not operate normally, check the relevant fuse first. If the fuse is blown, replace it with a fuse of the same capacity.

Warning

- Not using a bulb or using a bulb with the capacity that does not meet the specifications or modifying the HID bulb or LED lamp wiring arbitrarily may cause the fuse disconnection, malfunction or damage other wiring-related devices.

Caution

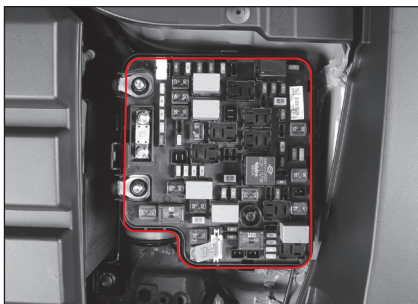
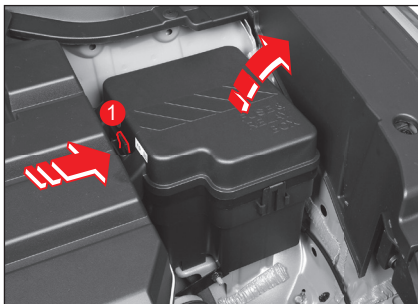
- Removing a fuse while the electricity is being supplied may damage the relevant electrical system. Be sure to replace a fuse after turning off all electrical systems.
- Replace the fuse with a new one of the same capacity that meets the specifications.
- If the replaced fuse is blown continuously, have your vehicle checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.

Notice

- Refer to the label attached to the fuse and relay box cover for the capacity and name of fuse.

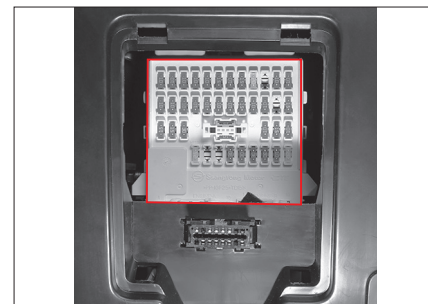
Motor room fuse and relay box

Open the hood and lift the fuse box cover up with the locking lever (1) in front of the motor room compartment fuse box cover pressed.



Interior fuse box

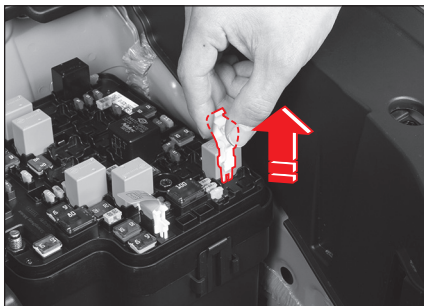
Open the driver seat door and open the interior fuse box by inserting your finger on the groove of the interior fuse box cover (1) and pulling it.



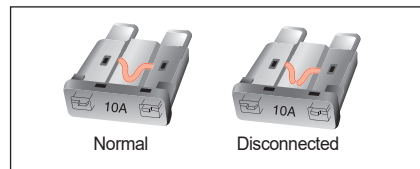
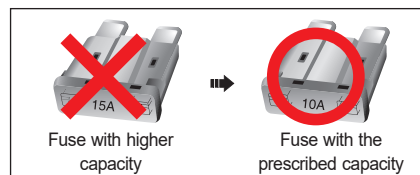


Checking and replacing fuses

- 1 Turn off all electrical systems and the vehicle.
- 2 Open the cover of the motor room compartment fuse box cover or the interior fuse box.
- 3 Check the relevant fuse by referring to the block diagram of the fuses shown inside of the fuse box cover.
- 4 Pull out the relevant fuse by using the fuse puller.
The fuse puller is provided in the motor room compartment fuse box.



- 5 Check visually whether the fuse is blown or not.
- 6 If the fuse is normal, insert it back to its original position.
- 7 If the fuse is blown, check the capacity indicated on top of the fuse and replace it with a new fuse of the same capacity.



Warning

- Using steel wire, copper wire or aluminum foil instead of the fuse may cause a fire due to the overload of the electrical system. Always use a fuse with the prescribed capacity.
- Never use a fuse with a capacity higher than the prescribed capacity indicated on the fuse and relay box since a fuse with higher capacity may damage electrical systems or cause a fire.
- When the fuse is disconnected, use a normal fuse with the prescribed capacity.

Notice

- Spare fuses for each capacity are provided in the fuse and relay box. If you use a spare fuse, replenish with a new one immediately. The capacity is indicated on top of the fuse.

6



Checking and replacing the lamps

Specifications of lamps and checking

Specifications and quantity of lamps and bulbs

Category				Quantity	Spec.
Exterior lamp (Vehicle front)	Head-lamp	High beam		-	LED
		Low beam		-	LED
	Front combination lamp	Daytime running light (DRL)/position lamp/turn signal lamp		-	LED
	Center position lamp		-	LED	
	Side repeater		-	LED	
	Fog light	Rear	-	LED	
	Exterior lamp (Vehicle rear)	Rear combination lamp		Turn signal lamp	-
Stop/tail lamp				-	LED
License plate lamp		2	W5W		
Backup lamp		-	LED		
High mounted stop lamp		-	LED		

Category		Quantity	Spec.
Interior lamp	Front room lamp	-	LED
	Rear room lamp	-	LED
	Luggage lamp	-	LED
	Sun visor / mirror lamp	-	LED
	Glove box lamp	1	5W
	Mood lamp (passenger side dashboard)	-	LED
	Mood lamp (driver side dashboard)	-	LED
	Mood lamp (front door)	-	LED
	Mood lamp (upper side of center console)	-	LED
	Mood lamp (bottom of center console)	-	LED



Checking the lamps

Operate the ON/OFF switch of various lamps to see if the lamp turns on or off normally.

If the lamp does not turn on, check the lamp in the following order and replace the relevant part if it is abnormal.

- Fuse
- Bulb

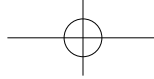
If the fuse and the bulb are normal, have your vehicle checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.



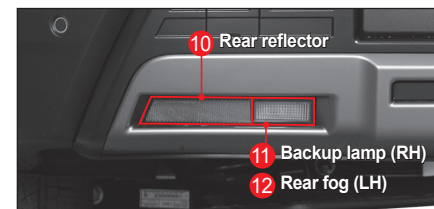
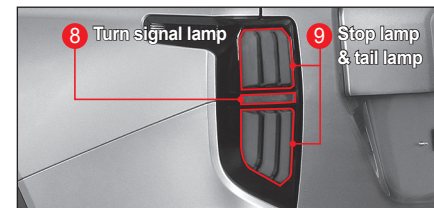
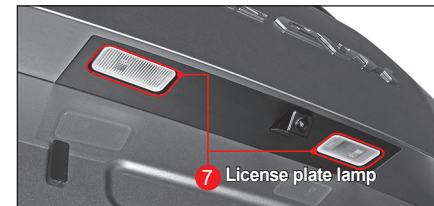
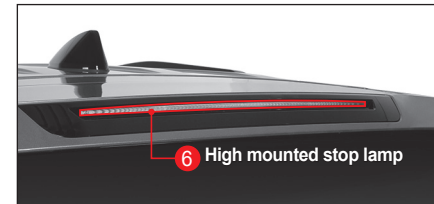
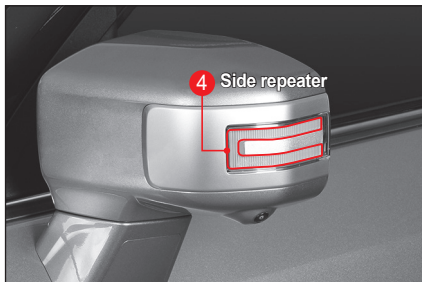
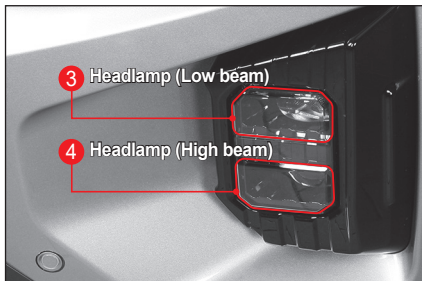
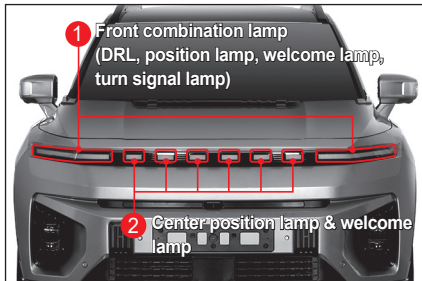
Caution

- Only use a bulb with the prescribed capacity when replacing the lamp.
- Be sure to disconnect the negative (-) battery cable or turn off the vehicle before replacing the lamp.
- Removing the lamp cover forcibly may damage the lamp cover so that it may not be used again, so caution should be taken when removing the lamp cover.
- Before replacing a bulb, be sure to turn off the relevant lamp.
- Do not touch the bulb with your hands during or right after bulb operation since there is a possibility of a burn.
- Holding the glass part of the bulb with your hand may leave a fingerprint, dust or moisture on the bulb, reducing its life or exploding it. In such case, wipe the glass part with a soft cloth.
- Be sure to have the aiming angle of the head lamp adjusted by a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.

- The internal surface of the head light and braking light lamp may be fogged temporarily under conditions such as rain or car washing. This is dew condensation according to a temperature difference between the inside and the outside of the lamp and it is not a functional problem. However, if water enters into the lamp or a large water drop occurs inside the lamp, contact a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.
- To replace an exterior lamp bulb, visit a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.



Position of exterior lights and lamps





Replacing exterior lamps

All lamps except for the following lamps should be checked and replaced at a nearby KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.

- Rear turn signal lamp
- Backup lamp

Warning

- Replacing with a lamp that does not meet the specifications may cause the disconnection of a fuse, malfunction or a fire.
- Before replacing the lamp, park the vehicle at a safe place, turn off the vehicle and disconnect the negative (-) battery cable. (After connecting the battery again, reset some functions of the vehicle.)
- Do not touch the bulb with your hands during or right after bulb operation since there is a possibility of a burn.

Caution

- When you install the lamp again after replacing it, install the socket firmly to the hole by turning it clockwise.
- Be sure to use genuine parts for the lamp.
- Do not install an additional lamp or LED for the lamps installed previously on the vehicle.

To replace license plate lamp

- 1 Unscrew the license plate mounting screws.



- 2 Remove the license plate assembly.

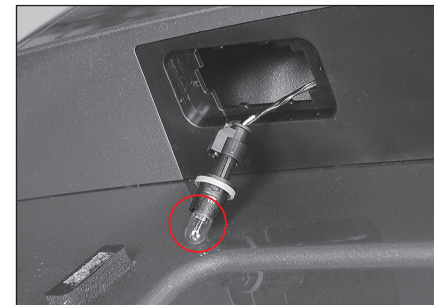
Caution

- Be careful not to damage the vehicle body and the rear combination assembly.

- 3 Turn the license plate assembly clockwise to remove the bulb socket.



- 4 Remove the license plate from the socket and replace it with new one with right specifications.

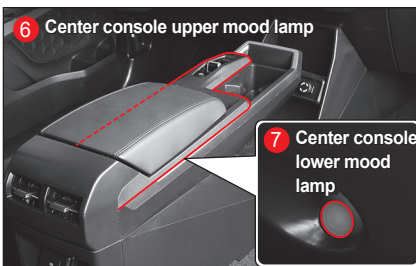
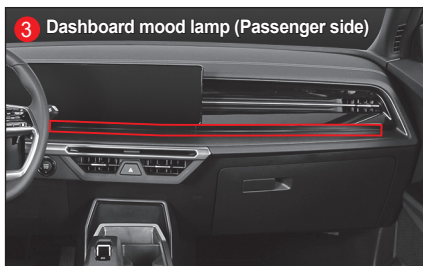
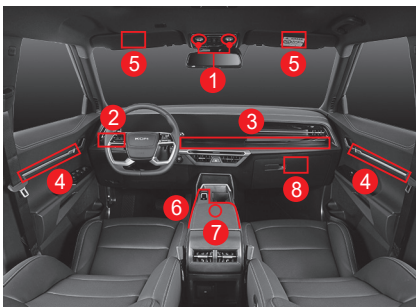
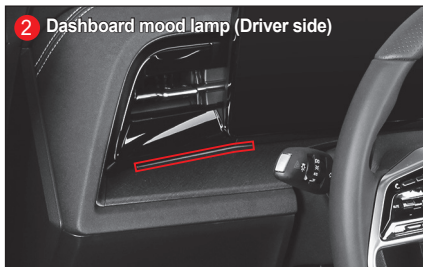
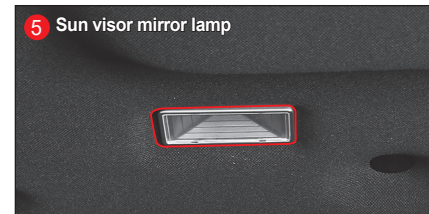


- 5 Once replacement is completed, assemble the lamp in reverse order of removal.

6



Position of interior lamps



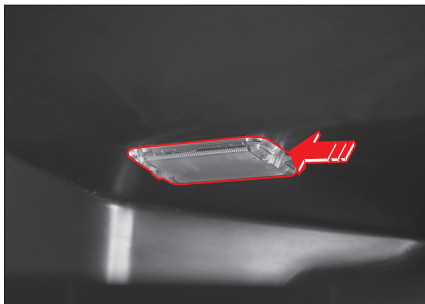
Rear room lamp





Replacing the glove box lamp

- 1 Disconnect the negative (-) battery cable and remove the lamp cover using a flat bladed screwdriver.

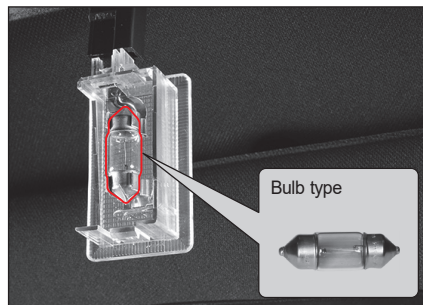


Caution

- Be sure to remove the lamp cover from the part marked with an arrow first. Removing it from the part on the opposite side first may damage the connector and the cover.

- 2 Remove the lamp and replace it with a new one.

At this time, avoid leaving a fingerprint or a foreign material on the surface of the bulb.



- 3 After replacing it, install the cover again.



Replacing the A/C filter

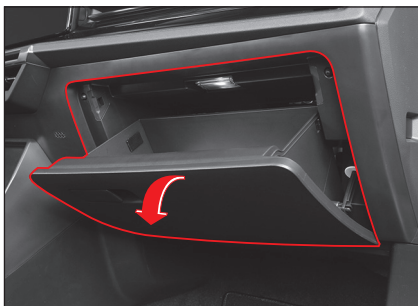
In any of the following cases, replace the A/C filter even if the replacement interval has not come near.

- If an unpleasant smell comes out when you operate the A/C after it is not operated for a long period of time
- If the cooling and heating performance or air blowing performance is lowered

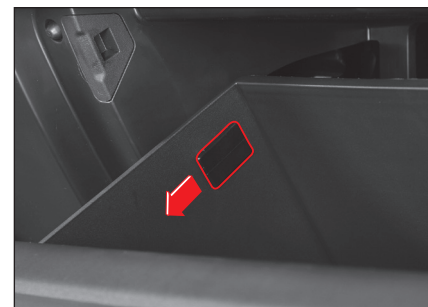
Caution

- Replace the A/C filter every 15000 km. However, if the vehicle is driven on a road where the air is heavily polluted, an unpaved road or the A/C and the heater are used excessively, replace the A/C filter earlier than the replacement interval.
- If the A/C filter is contaminated, the cooling performance may be lowered and an unpleasant smell may occur when you operate the A/C.
- Be careful not to switch the installation direction when replacing the A/C filter.

- 1 Open the glove box by pulling the glove box opening lever.

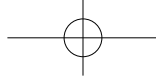


- 2 Pull the fixing holder on the left side and the right side of the glove box in the arrow direction.



Caution

- Do not pull the fixing holder of the glove box forcibly. Doing so may cause the fixing holder to deform, and the fixing status of the glove box may be loose when it is installed again.



- 3** Separate the glove box damper clip from the bottom right side of the glove box.



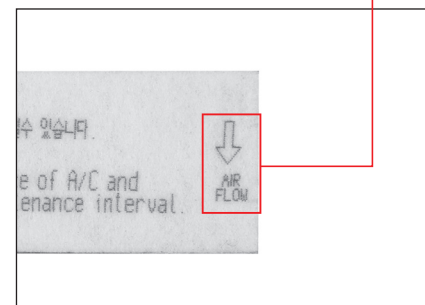
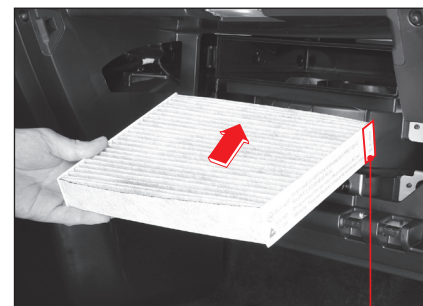
- 4** Remove the A/C filter cover by pressing the right side of the A/C filter cover.



- 5** Remove the A/C filter.



- 6** Replace it with a new one.
Install it with the "AIR FLOW arrow" facing down.



- 7** After replacing it, install it in the reverse order of A/C filter removal.

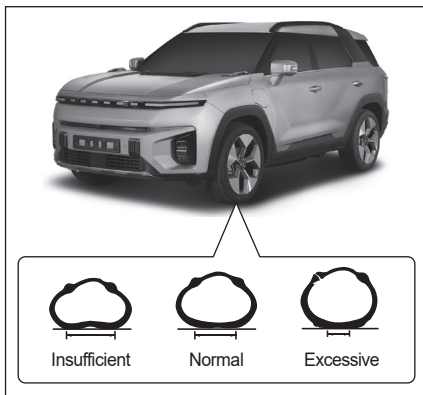
6



Checking the tires and wheels

Checking the tire pressure

Check the tire pressure before driving the vehicle or when the tires are cooled down completely.



Caution

- If the tire pressure is higher or lower than the prescribed value, the riding comfort or steering stability are lowered and the tires are easily damaged and uneven tire wear occurs. Be sure to adjust the tire pressure to the prescribed value.

Prescribed tire inflation pressure

Classification	Type	Wheel	Tire pressure
Driving tire	225/60R18	6.5JX18	36 psi, 2.48 bar
	245/45R20	8.0JX20	

Notice

- The prescribed tire inflation pressure is measured when the tire has been cooled down properly at room temperature. If you need to drive the vehicle on an expressway for a long period of time, increase the tire inflation pressure by 4~5psi from the prescribed value on the table.

Wheel alignment status and the balance between tires and wheels

If the wheels are not aligned as prescribed, it leads to uneven or accelerated wear of the tires and causes the vehicle to lead to one side while driving.

If the tires and wheels are not balanced, it may lead to vehicle vibration or uneven wear of tires.

In such case, have your vehicle checked and maintained at a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center.



Checking the status of tire wear

Check the status of tire wear on the contact surface of the tire along the marked part. Replace the tire before the tire tread goes down below the wear limit.

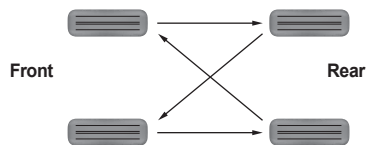


Warning

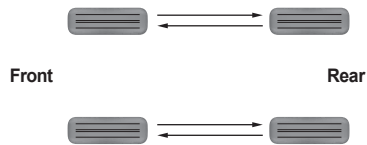
- Check the tire for damage or the status of tire wear frequently and replace if necessary.
- If the tire is worn excessively, the braking distance may increase or the steering wheel may become heavier. Also, the tire may be blown, resulting in an accident.

Rotating the tire positions

When a spare tire is not included



Directional tire



Refer to "When you have rotated the tires" (p.2-33)

Warning

- Be sure to replace a tire at a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center or a professional tire shop.
- Be sure to install the same manufacturer's tires with the same specifications, not mixing different types of tires.

Snow tire

Use snow tires in order to drive the vehicle safely on a snowy road or an icy road during winter.

The snow tires should be installed on all 4 wheels.

Warning

- If the snow tires for driving on a snowy road and an icy road are not installed, drive the vehicle as slowly as possible.
- The snow tire with the driving direction arrow on its side wall should be installed according to the driving direction.
- The snow tire is manufactured in consideration of the characteristics of road surface during winter. However, it is an auxiliary aid, so be sure to install the snow chains on a snowy road and an icy road and drive the vehicle as slowly as possible for safe driving.
- Replace the snow tires with ordinary tires when the winter has passed. Store the snow tires in a cool place with no direct sunlight and be careful not to allow them to come into contact with oil, grease or fuel.



Tire chain

- Install the tire chains on the front wheels for a 2-wheel drive vehicle and install the tire chains on both the front and rear wheels for a 4-wheel drive vehicle. If it is impossible, be sure to install the tire chains on the rear wheels.
- In case of a vehicle equipped with aluminum wheels, the wheels may be damaged if the tire chains are used. Therefore, use snow tires instead of the tire chains. If it is impossible, use the wire-type tire chains.
- When the tire chains are installed, drive the vehicle at a prescribed speed recommended by the chain manufacturer or at a speed of 30 km/h or less.
- If you hear a sound of the tire chain hitting the vehicle body, stop the vehicle immediately, check the installation status of the tire chains and tighten the tire chains if necessary.
- Take the tire chains off immediately on a normal road to prevent the chains from being damaged.
- Do not use the tire chains on a normal road, use only on a snowy road or an icy road.

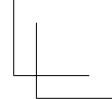
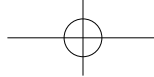
Warning

- After driving the vehicle with the tire chains installed for a certain distance (0.5~1 km), check the installation status of the tire chains and for any damage to the vehicle body. If the tire chains are loose, tighten them again.
- Be sure to use a tire chain that meets the specifications and install it correctly. If the tire chain does not meet the specifications or is installed incorrectly, the vehicle may be damaged or a serious problem in the steerability and safety of the vehicle may occur.

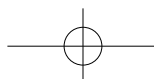
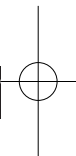
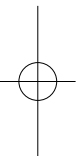
Cautions for checking the tires and wheels

Caution

- Be sure to use the same manufacturer's tire with the same specifications for all tires in order to maintain the characteristic of the vehicle safely.
- Be sure to check the status of tire wear and the tire pressure before driving the vehicle.
- The tire pressure and tightening status of tire wheel nuts should be checked frequently. Be sure to check the vehicle condition, tire pressure and the tightening status of tire wheel nuts before driving the vehicle for a long distance.
- Only use the same manufacturer's tires that meet the specifications. If the tire that does not meet the specifications when installed, you cannot operate the steering wheel normally, the fuel consumption may increase and the driving system or braking system of the vehicle may become abnormal. In addition, the vibration of the steering wheel and uneven tire wear may occur when you drive the vehicle at a high speed.
- Installing a tire that does not meet the specifications or a retreaded tire voids the warranty repair.



- Check the tires and wheels always before driving the vehicle. If the wheels are damaged, the tire pressure may decrease and the tires may be damaged.
- If a tire has been impacted by a stone or any other objects while driving, have your vehicle checked and serviced at a KG Mobility Authorized Service Center immediately.
- Do not mix the tires and wheels installed when the vehicle was shipped with other tires and wheels. Doing so may affect the driving stability of the vehicle, causing an accident.
- Check the status of the emergency tire service kit. Always check the operation status of the compressor and the preparation of sealant.
- Be sure to check and add the tire pressure before driving the vehicle for a long period of time or at a high speed. Driving the vehicle at a high speed with low tire pressure may cause the tires to burst due to the standing wave effect, resulting in a risk such as a rollover.





Vehicle management during winter

Various unfit elements for driving occur on a road in winter, so make sure to prepare in advance in order to respond properly.

Starting the vehicle and driving the vehicle

In winter, the resistance of the motor drive may increase and the performance of the battery may decrease. Please keep the SOC high in order to maintain the performance of the EV battery.

Managing the motor coolant

Be sure to check the concentration of coolant before the temperature begins to drop.

Managing washer fluid

Use only genuine washer fluid that does not freeze in cold weather.

If the washer fluid freezes due to the use of a non-standard washer fluid it may damage the washer motor and interfere with safe driving.

Installing a snow tire

It is recommended to replace the tires with snow tires during winter in order to prevent the vehicle from slipping on a snowy road or an icy road.

Managing the A/C

If the A/C is not used for a long period of time, the lubrication inside the A/C is not carried out. As a result, the packing inside of the A/C may be hardened that may lead to refrigerant leak and malfunction due to rusting.

It is recommended to operate the A/C for 5 to 10 minutes once a week regardless of season in order to maintain the performance of the A/C continuously.



Caution

- Do not remove the refrigerant in winter even if the A/C is not used.



Caution

- Drive the vehicle at a lower speed than usual if the snow tires are installed.
- Install the tire chains in a correct way. Failure to do so may damage the wheel house or the vehicle body.



High Voltage Battery Care Tips

- For optimal health of high-voltage (drive) batteries, a slow charge is recommended.
- We recommend charging to 100% SOC once a week, and you should charge to 100% SOC at least once a month.
- The remaining level of the high voltage (drive) battery may gradually decrease even if the vehicle is not driven.
- Storing the vehicle at high (40°C) or low (-30°C) temperatures can degrade the high voltage (drive) battery capacity.
- Even with the same charge, the range or power may vary depending on driving conditions (such as outside temperature). Driving at high speeds or uphill can result in higher power consumption from the high-voltage (drive) battery than normal, resulting in a shorter range.
- Using the heating and cooling functions uses high-voltage (drive) battery power, resulting in a shorter driving range.
Maintain an optimal temperature when using the heating and cooling features.

- Natural degradation of the high-voltage (power) battery occurs over the age of the vehicle, which reduces the range.
- If the charge and range continue to decrease, visit our nearest authorized service center for inspection and maintenance.
- To prevent the high-voltage (drive) battery from discharging if the vehicle is not used for an extended period of time, charge it about once every three months.
Also, if the charge is low, charge it immediately and store the vehicle.
- Depending on the state of charge of the high-voltage (drive) battery (charger state, outside temperature, battery temperature, etc.), the charge power value shown on the charge indicator may be lower.
After a certain amount of charge, high-voltage (drive) batteries slowly reduce the current to fully charge for battery life or safety reasons.

Notice

- **Do not allow the high voltage (drive) battery charger gauge to drop below 10%. Prolonged storage of a vehicle with a low charge may cause damage to the battery or require a battery replacement depending on the state of degradation.**
- **If your vehicle has been involved in a collision that has resulted in a significant impact, visit our nearest authorized service center to have your high-voltage (drive) battery connections and high-voltage systems checked and serviced.**
- **The use of V2L features may result in reduced driving range due to the use of high-voltage (drive) battery energy, and may cause a reduction in the life of the high-voltage (drive) battery with repeated use.**



Other maintenance

- Prepare sand bags, snow chains, shovel, gloves and old clothes in the vehicle in advance in preparation for driving the vehicle in the countryside or heavy snow.
- Do not drive too fast, accelerate or brake or steer the vehicle suddenly on a snowy road or an icy road.
- Maintain a distance of at least twice the usual distance from the vehicle in front of you when driving on snowy or icy roads, and use the regenerative braking system properly to stop your vehicle.
- Do not operate the wiper when it is frozen. Doing so may overload, damaging the wiper motor.
- When you drive the vehicle on a snow-covered road, a large amount of snow may build up under the wheel house, making it difficult for you to operate the steering wheel, so check and remove it frequently.
- When you have passed a road where calcium chloride is sprayed, wash your vehicle as soon as possible to prevent the bottom part of the vehicle from being corroded.

- If you park the vehicle in a snowy place, the brake system may freeze, reducing the braking force while driving. In such case, depress the brake pedal frequently while driving the vehicle at a low speed, restoring the braking force, and then drive the vehicle normally.
- Do not start off in the vehicle forcibly while the parking brake is frozen. Doing so may damage the vehicle. Be sure to start off in the vehicle after the parking brake has melted.

Cautions for parking during winter

- When the temperature falls down below zero, the parking brake may not be released due to the freezing of EPB-related devices.
- When you park the vehicle on a flat and safe place in weather with below zero temperatures, use a chock on the wheels after parking instead of using the EPB.



Warnings for self-maintenance

When the vehicle is checked and serviced by the driver, proper knowledge and special attention are necessary for preventing injury and damage to the vehicle.

Warning

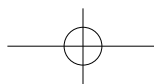
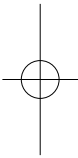
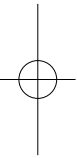
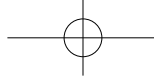
- After driving the vehicle, the temperature inside the motor room is very high, so be careful when inspecting the motor room. To prevent burns, turn the ignition off and allow it to cool before inspection.
- When checking the vehicle, be sure to turn off the ignition, place the electric shift lever in the P (park) position and apply the parking brake.
- Make sure that the ignition key is OFF when performing any works in an enclosed space such as a garage.
- Always turn off the ignition and do not smoke or allow open flames (or sparks) near the vehicle when checking low voltage (12 V) battery, washer fluid and brake fluid, etc.
- Never connect or disconnect the low voltage (12 V) battery while the ignition switch is ON.
- Remember that the low battery (12 V) cable and vehicle wiring carry high currents and voltage. Be careful not to cause a short circuit.
- Keep the used oil, coolant and other liquids out of reach of children.
(Please contact a specialized company when discarding it.)

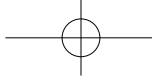
Warning

- Disconnect the negative terminal of the low voltage (12 V) battery when checking the vehicle around the cooling fan or radiator as the cooling fan may rotate even when the ignition is turned off.
- Check the level of various oils and coolant daily. Driving the vehicle with insufficient oils or coolant may damage the vehicle which is not subject to warranty repair.
- Be sure to use genuine parts for replacing consumable parts.
- When you add any oil, be careful for the oil or coolant not to come into contact with your body, clothes or the painted surface of the vehicle. If it comes into contact with your body, wash it off immediately and consult your doctor.
- Adding more oil than the prescribed level may damage the systems. Always add a proper amount of oil.
- When you inject or add any oil or fluid, do not allow foreign materials such as moisture or dust to enter. Failure to do so may lower the vehicle performance and make normal functions inoperable, causing an accident while driving.

Warning

- When a long period of time has passed even if the mileage is low, the level of oils may become low. Check it frequently and add it if necessary.
- Used oils and other solutions and containers should not be discarded with household waste. Discard oils and other solutions according to a legitimate disposal procedure.





Index

You can conveniently find important functions or terms from the content of this owner's manual in alphabetical order.



2-row parking ☞ Refer to Double parking (2-row parking).....4-136

4D Driving ☞ Refer to No Drugged, Drunk, Distracted and Drowsy (4D) Driving.....1-34

A

ACC status (START/STOP switch)4-2

Adaptive Cruise Control.....4-162

Adjusting the angle of the backrest.....3-10, 3-12, 3-13

Adjusting the angle of the head light.....3-71

Adjusting the headrest3-8, 3-13

Adjusting the height/length of the steering wheel3-108

Adjusting the operation speed of the windshield wiper.....3-87

Adjusting the power seat.....3-9

Adjusting the seat manually3-11

AEBS ☞ Refer to Autonomous Emergency Braking System (AEBS).....4-137

Air bag2-20

Collision detection sensor.....2-21

Air bag control module.....2-21

Air bag warning label2-20

Air bag warning lamp2-20, 4-22

Air conditioner3-92

Android device.....3-110

An infant or a small child must be seated in the rear seat with protective gear.....1-35

Antenna (GPS, radio, DMB).....3-113

Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS).....4-115

Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) warning light.....4-24, 4-116

Anti-pinch protection function of the power tailgate.....3-37

Anti-theft and warning system.....2-35

Around View Monitoring (AVM) system4-134

Front camera4-134

Rear camera4-134

AUTO Approach3-75

Auto Defogger System (ADS)....3-101

Auto door lock function at the time of driving.....3-3

Auto door unlock function at the time of collision.....3-3

AUTO HOLD4-125

AUTO HOLD indicator/warning light.....4-30

AUTO HOLD ☞ Refer to AUTO HOLD.....4-125

Auto light3-69, 3-77

Automatic Lane Change (ALC)4-175

Automatic Lane Change Assist (ASA) Indicator Lamp.....4-35

Automatic transmission equipped vehicle

What is creep?.....4-111

Automatic transmission selector lever

How to move shift lever to target gear position.....4-106

Autonomous Emergency Braking System (AEBS)4-137

Autonomous Emergency Braking System (AEBS) OFF indicator4-27

Autonomous Emergency Braking System (AEBS) warning light.....4-27

Average fuel economy (instrument cluster display)4-39

Average speed (display of the instrument cluster).....4-38

AVM system ☞ Refer to the Around View Monitoring (AVM) system4-134

AV/Navigation3-111

AV screen (display of the instrument cluster).....4-41

B

Battery Pre-conditioning.....3-49

Be Careful not to Have a Part of Your Body Caught When Using the Power Window1-36

Bi-directional Charging (V2L).....3-64

Blind spot detection (BSD) system

RCTW System4-198

Blind Spot-detection Warning (BSW).....4-196

Bluetooth3-110

Bluetooth hands-free3-112

Brake system.....4-113

ABS (Anti-Lock Brake System).....4-115

Electronic Brake-Force Distribution (EBD)4-116

Foot brake.....4-114

What is the fade phenomenon?4-114

What is the vapor lock phenomenon?4-114

Brake system warning light4-25, 4-117

Breaking in a New Vehicle Correctly1-42

C

Card holder.....3-116

Care and Cleaning of the Interior1-45

Car play3-110



Cases where the air bag does not inflate	2-24
Cautions for Attaching Accessories	1-40
Cautions for parking during winter	6-36
Cautions for parking the vehicle on a downhill road	4-125
Cautions for parking the vehicle on a uphill road	4-125
Cautions for Polishing the Vehicle	1-44
Cautions for the Depletion of Battery when Connecting Uninterruptible Power Supply to the Black Box System	1-42
Cautions for the Protection of the Environment	1-5
Cautions for using smart key / REKES key	4-13
Cautions for Using the Vehicle Key	1-46
Cautions for Vehicle Ventilation ...	1-41
Cautions for Window Tinting	1-45
Cell phone cradle	3-119
Centering Lane Keeping Assist (CLKA)	4-156
Centering lane keeping assist (CLKA) indicator / warning lamp	4-31

Certification Label	1-23
Change of specifications (options) and functions according to a change of design	3
Charger operation and settings	3-56
Charging	
Fast charging	3-44
Portable charger	3-45
Slow charging	3-44
Charging connector lock	3-50
Charging indicator	3-51, 4-33
Charging type and precautions	3-44
Check for Any Vehicles or Person Passing by When Getting Out	1-37
Checking and replacing fuses and relays	6-20
Checking and replacing the brake discs	4-115
Checking and replacing the brake pads	4-115
Checking and replacing the lamps	6-22
Replacing exterior lamps	6-25
Checking Before Driving	1-29
Checking Motor Room	6-12
Checking the status of tire wear	6-31

Checking the tire pressure	6-30
Checking the tires and wheels	6-30
Checking the wheels ☞ Refer to 'Checking the tires and wheels' ...	6-30
Checking the wipers and replacing the blade	6-18
Child restraint for an infant or a small child	2-11
Child restraint ☞ Refer to 'Child restraint for an infant or a small child'	2-11
Child safety door lock	3-5
Cleaning and Maintaining Glass	1-45
Collision detection sensor	2-21
COMFORT mode indicator	4-28
Coming home light	3-76
Connecting and disconnecting of charging connector	3-47
Console	3-121
Crossing an Intersection or Railroad Crossing	1-39
Crossing a Railroad Crossing or Intersection	1-39
Cup holder	3-119
D	
Daytime Running Light (DRL)	3-73

Delayed Accelerator Pedal Response ☞ Refer to System Protection Function (Delayed Accelerator Pedal Response)	1-41
Designation of each part of bi-directional charging (V2L) connector	3-64
Do Not Drive with the Doors or Tailgate Open	1-36
Do Not Drive With the Tailgate or Doors Open	1-36
Do Not Hold a Part of Your Body Out of the Sunroof or Window	1-36
Do Not Hold a Part of Your Body Out of the Window or Sunroof	1-36
Do Not Load Hazardous Materials	1-40
Do not Stop the Engine While Driving	1-37
Do not use vehicle components for other purposes	3
Door	3-2
Auto door lock function at the time of driving	3-3
Auto door unlock function at the time of collision	3-3
Child safety door lock	3-5
Door ajar warning light	4-34
Door handle switch	4-11
Door map pocket	3-121



Double-Parking (Second Row Parking).....	4-136
Drive mode switch.....	4-112
Driver Attention Alert (DAW) Failure Warning Lamp.....	4-36
Driver Attention Alert (DAW) Warning Lamp.....	4-36
Driver seat window safety function.....	3-22
Driving on a Downhill Road and Hillside Road.....	1-38
Driving on a Hillside Road and Downhill Road.....	1-38
Driving on a Muddy or Sandy Road.....	1-38
Driving on an Icy and Snowy Road.....	1-38
Driving on a River or a Road with a Pool of Water.....	1-39
Driving on a Road with a Pool of Water or a River.....	1-39
Driving on a Sandy or Muddy Road.....	1-38
Driving on a Snowy or Icy Road.....	1-38
Driving on Mountains and Unpaved Roads.....	1-37
Driving on the Expressway.....	1-39
Driving on Unpaved and Mountain Roads.....	1-37

Driving Position.....	1-32
Driving settings of intelligent cruise adaptive control (IACC).....	4-164
Driving time (display of the instrument cluster).....	4-39
DRL ☞ Refer to 'Daytime Running Light (DRL)'.....	3-73

E

EBD ☞ Refer to Electronic Brake-Force Distribution (EBD).....	4-116
ECM room mirror.....	3-90
ECO indicator.....	4-29
Electric power steering warning light.....	4-23
Electronic Brake-Force Distribution (EBD).....	4-116
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB).....	4-122
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) auto unlock.....	4-123
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) emergency mode.....	4-124
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) warning light.....	4-26
Electronic stability control system (ESP).....	4-118
Electronic stability control system (ESP) OFF indicator.....	4-24

Electronic stability control system (ESP) ON indicator/warning light.....	4-24
Emergency key.....	4-14
Emergency measures in case of emergency.....	1-6
Double parking.....	1-6
Lift and mounting points.....	1-9
Stationary vehicle (OFF).....	1-9
To change P (park) position.....	1-6
To cutoff power from low voltage (12 V) battery.....	1-12
To turn ignition off while driving (in case of emergency).....	1-10
Emergency measures in the event of emergency.....	5-1
In the event of a fire.....	5-24
In the event of a heavy snow.....	5-26
In the event of an accident.....	5-23
When a tire is flat.....	5-6
When the vehicle has stopped due to a failure.....	5-22
When you need to have your vehicle towed.....	5-15
Emergency Stop Signal (ESS).....	4-117
Engine Check Indicator.....	1-46, 1-48
Engine hood open lever.....	3-42
EPB ☞ Refer to 'Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)'.....	4-122

ESP ☞ Refer to 'Electronic stability control system (ESP)' ...	4-118
ESS ☞ Refer to Emergency Stop Signal (ESS).....	4-117
EV charge port door.....	3-43
Extinguisher.....	1-41, 5-24

F

Fastening the seat belt by a pregnant woman.....	2-9
Foot brake.....	4-114
Front auto washer.....	3-87
Front camera.....	4-134
Front Camera Module (FCM).....	4-146
Front Cross Traffic + Rear Cross Traffic Alert*.....	4-187
Front fog light.....	3-69
Front obstacle detection sensor.....	4-128
Front obstacle detection warning ON/OFF switch.....	4-128
Front passenger walk-in button....	3-12
Front/rear obstacle detection system.....	4-128
Front obstacle detection sensor.....	4-128
Rear obstacle detection sensor.....	4-128



Front room lamp (overhead console).....	3-79
Front storage bin.....	3-120
Front Vehicle Start Warning (FVSW).....	4-185
Front windshield and washer fluid linkage.....	3-87
Fuel economy information (instrument cluster display).....	4-39
Functions for each shift position.....	4-107
D (drive) position.....	4-108
N (neutral) position.....	4-108
P (park) position.....	4-107
R (reverse) position.....	4-107

G

Glass heater.....	3-99
Glove box.....	3-120
Glove box lamp.....	3-82
Grip handle/coat hanger.....	3-117

H

Hazard warning lamp.....	3-70, 4-27
HBA ☞ Refer to 'High Beam Assist (HBA)'.....	3-73
HDC ☞ Refer to Hill Descent Control (HDC).....	4-121
Headlamp angle indicator.....	4-36

Head light.....	3-69
Headlight ☞ Refer to 'Headlight'.....	3-69
Heater.....	3-92
Heater & A/C Controls.....	3-95
Heating and ventilation ☞ Refer to 'Seat ventilation and heating'.....	3-16
High beam.....	3-70
High Beam Assist (HBA).....	3-69, 3-73
High beam indicator.....	4-31
High mounted stop lamp.....	3-68, 6-24
High voltage (drive) battery.....	1-8
High voltage warning lamp.....	1-48
Hill Descent Control (HDC).....	4-121
Hill Descent Control (HDC) ON indicator/warning light.....	4-121, 4-122
Horn.....	3-109
Horn ☞ Refer to 'Horn'.....	3-109
How To Lock Doors In Emergency.....	3-4
How to perform scheduled charging.....	3-63
How to set Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB).....	4-139
How to use bi-directional charger (V2L).....	3-65
HV battery fault warning light.....	4-33

HV battery level warning light.....	4-33
Hypervisor (HVC).....	3-103
Hypervisor (HVC) convenience features.....	3-107

I

Illumination ON indicator.....	4-28
Immobilizer system.....	2-35
Immobilizer system warning light.....	4-26
Importance of a periodic check.....	4
Indicator panel on instrument cluster.....	4-37
Inflating a tire.....	5-13
Information Regarding the Installation of Accident Recording Devices and Provision of Information.....	1-2
Infotainment system.....	3-110
Installing a snow tire.....	6-34
Installing the towing hook.....	5-16
Instantaneous fuel economy (instrument cluster display).....	4-39
Instrument cluster.....	4-17
Trip computer information.....	4-38
Instrument cluster customization.....	4-44
Instrument cluster illumination brightness.....	4-104

Instrument cluster warning lights and indicators.....	4-22
Intelligent Speed Assistance (ISA).....	4-181
Interior fuse box.....	6-20
Interior temperature sensor.....	3-92
In the event of a fire.....	5-24
In the event of a heavy snow.....	5-26
In the event of an accident.....	5-23
iPod.....	3-112

K

Klaxon ☞ Refer to 'Horn'.....	3-109
Korea Consumer Agency - Precautions for Potentially Hazardous Seat Belt related Goods.....	1-3
Korea Consumer Agency - Precautions for the reduction of non-crash incidents.....	1-4, 1-21

L

Lane Change Assist (LCA) system.....	4-195
Lane Keeping Assistance System (LKAS).....	4-151
LCA system ☞ Refer to the 'Lane Change Assist (LCA) system'.....	4-195



LDWS (Lane Departure Warning System)	4-146
LDWS ☞ Refer to LDWS (Lane Departure Warning System)	4-146
Leaving home light	3-76
License plate lamp	3-68, 6-24
Lift and mounting points	1-9
Lights and lamps	3-68
Turning off all lights	3-69
Light switch	3-69
LKAS (LDWS) indicator / warning lamp	4-31
Load limiter	2-8
Long-term parking mode	1-42
Luggage compartment	3-124
Luggage compartment	3-125
Luggage room lamp	3-80
Luggage upper cover	3-124
LV battery warning light	4-22

M

Main menu on the instrument cluster	4-37
Maintenance schedule	6-2, 6-7
Managing the A/C (winter)	6-34
Managing the engine coolant (winter)	6-34

Managing washer fluid (winter)	6-34
Manual tailgate	3-34
Message on the display of the instrument cluster	4-51
Mileage (display of the instrument cluster)	4-38
Mirror	3-89
ECM room mirror	3-90
Outside rearview mirror control button	3-89
Mirror and lamp	3-116
Mood lamp*	3-81
Mood lamp setting	3-81
Motor room	3-42
Motor room fuse and relay box	6-20
Motor room hood open warning light	4-34

N

Navigation ☞ Refer to 'AV/Navigation'	3-111
No Drugged, Drunk, Distracted and Drowsy (4D) Driving	1-34
Non-crash incident ☞ Refer to Korea Consumer Agency - Precautions for the reduction of non-crash incidents	1-4, 1-21
No Sleeping in a Sealed Vehicle	1-35

No Sudden Maneuvering of the Steering Wheel	1-39, 1-40
No Sudden Starting, Acceleration, or Braking	1-37, 1-38

O

OFF status (START/STOP switch)	4-2
Oils capacity/specifications	6-3
ON status (START/STOP switch)	4-2
Open/close with cargo compartment-mounted buttons	3-37
Opening the tailgate in the event of emergency	3-40
Operating smart audio and AV/ navigation using the steering wheel	3-112
Outside rearview mirror auto folding/unfolding function	3-89
Outside rearview mirror control button	3-89
Over speed warning light	4-36
OVM ☞ Refer to 'OVM tools'	5-2
OVM tools	1-12, 5-2

P

Panic mode	4-9
------------------	-----

Parking

Cautions for parking during winter	6-36
Safe Parking and Stopping	1-37
When parking the vehicle on a downhill road	4-125
When parking the vehicle on a uphill road	4-125
Parking assist system	4-128
Front/rear obstacle detection system	4-128
Rear camera system	4-133
Parking brake ON indicator (red)	4-26
Passing light ☞ Refer to 'Turning on the high beam and low beam at the same time (passing light)'	3-70
Periodic Checkup And Change Interval	
Table for check and change intervals under demanding conditions	6-11
Portable charger	3-56
Charging procedures	3-57
Potentially hazardous seat belt related goods ☞ Refer to the Korea Consumer Agency - Precautions for Potentially Hazardous Seat Belt related Goods	1-3
Power down warning light	4-32



Power flow (instrument cluster display)	4-40
Power socket.....	3-115
Power tailgate.....	3-35
Power window  Refer to 'Window (power window)'.....	3-21
Precautions for infants, children, old people, or pregnant women	1-35
Precautions for the Modification of the Vehicle and Structural Alteration	1-27
Prescribed tire inflation pressure	6-30
Pretensioner	2-8
Purpose and application conditions of the instruction manual.....	3

R

Rain sensing wiper.....	3-88
Rain sensor	3-88
RCTA system  Refer to Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) system	4-198
READY status (START/STOP switch)	4-2
Rear and side warning system.....	4-193
Lane Change Assist (LCA) system.....	4-195
Rear camera.....	4-134
Rear camera system	4-133
Rear Collision Warning (RCW).....	4-195
Rear cross traffic assist (RCTA) system	4-198
Rear fog lamp ON indicator	4-28
Rear lamp.....	3-68, 6-24
Rear obstacle detection sensor.....	4-128
Rear room lamp	3-80
Rear seat.....	3-13
Heating function (heater)	3-18
Rear seat backrest folding.....	3-15
Seatback reclining adjustment.....	3-14
Rear seat door roller blind	3-117
Rear seat window lock function	3-23
Rear storage box.....	3-120
Rear window wiper washer fluid linkage function	3-88
Regenerative braking system.....	4-109
Repairing a flat tire.....	5-8
Repairing a flat tire  Refer to 'Repairing a flat tire'.....	5-8
Replacing A/C refrigerant/oil	3-93
Replacing exterior lamps.....	6-25
Replacing the A/C filter	6-28

Replacing the smart key battery.....	4-16
Resetting the average speed (display of the instrument cluster).....	4-39
Resetting the driving time (display of the instrument cluster).....	4-39
Resetting the mileage (display of the instrument cluster).....	4-39
Resetting the opening height of the power tailgate.....	3-37
Resetting the power tailgate	3-38
Resetting the sunroof.....	3-33
Roof rack	3-127
Rotating the tire positions	6-31

S

Safe distance alert (SDA)	4-186
Safe Parking and Stopping	1-37
Safety and Cautions for Driving... ..	1-34
Safety exit warning (SEW) system	4-200
SBW (shift by wire)	4-105
Scheduled charging.....	3-63
SD card (navigation)	3-111
Seat	
Seat & adjustment switch / button / lever	3-6, 3-7
Ventilation and heating	3-16
Smart front seat heating control	3-17
Seatback reclining adjustment.....	3-14
Seat backrest pocket.....	3-121
Seat belt	2-2
Fastening the seat belt by a pregnant woman	2-9
Load limiter	2-8
Pretensioner.....	2-8
Warnings	2-9
Seat Belt	
Wearing the Seat Belt Correctly... ..	1-33
Seat belt warning lamp	4-22
Service kit for tire repair.....	5-7
Service required warning light.....	4-32
SHB indicator	4-30
Side repeater.....	3-68, 6-24
Slots for multimedia.....	3-112
Slow and fast charging.....	3-52
After completing charging.....	3-54, 3-60
Charging procedures	3-52
Smart audio*.....	3-110
Smart door auto lock (auto close).....	4-10
Smart front seat heating control... ..	3-17
Smart key	
Panic mode.....	4-9
Smart Key.....	4-7



Smart key warning light.....	4-26	Stopping the engine.....	4-5	Table of Vehicle Specifications.....	1-25	To fit towing hook.....	1-13
Smart tailgate.....	3-39	Stopping the engine while driving (in the event of emergency).....	4-5	Tailgate.....	3-34	To set intelligent adaptive cruise control (IACC) operation sensitivity.....	4-164
Smart tailgate indicator.....	4-35	Stopping the engine while driving (in the event of emergency).....	4-5	Anti-pinch protection function of the power tailgate.....	3-37	To start vehicle.....	4-3
Snow tire.....	6-31	Stopping the smart tailgate function.....	3-40	Manual tailgate.....	3-34	Getting your vehicle started.....	4-3
Special Cautions When Checking the Coolant.....	4-20	Storage unit.....	3-119	Opening the tailgate in the event of emergency.....	3-40	To start vehicle.....	4-3
Speed limit warning.....	4-202	Console.....	3-121	Power tailgate.....	3-35	To turn ignition off while driving (in case of emergency).....	1-10
SPORT mode indicator.....	4-29	Cup holder.....	3-119	Resetting the opening height of the power tailgate.....	3-37	To use regenerative braking.....	1-40
Starting the engine		Door map pocket.....	3-121	Resetting the power tailgate.....	3-38	TPMS  Refer to the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS).....	2-29
Starting the engine using the jump cable.....	5-4	Front storage bin.....	3-120	Smart tailgate.....	3-39	TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System)	
Starting the engine and driving the vehicle (winter).....	6-34	Glove box.....	3-120	Stopping the smart tailgate function.....	3-40	Display of the TPMS status on the instrument cluster.....	4-40
Starting the engine using the jump cable.....	5-4	Seat backrest pocket.....	3-121	Tail light.....	3-69	TPMS warning light.....	4-25
Starting the engine with a depleted smart key or interference (in the event of emergency).....	4-4	Sunroof.....	3-30	TBT (Turn By Turn) (display of the instrument cluster).....	4-41	Trip computer information.....	4-38
START/STOP switch.....	4-2	Sunroof*.....	3-24	Tips when an accident or a malfunction occurs on the expressway.....	5-23	Trip info display.....	4-19
ACC status.....	4-2	Sunroof open warning.....	3-32	Tire chain.....	6-32	Turning on the high beam and low beam at the same time (passing light).....	3-70
OFF status.....	4-2	Sunroof safety function.....	3-32	Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS).....	2-29	Turn signal.....	3-69, 4-27
ON status.....	4-2	Sun visor.....	3-116	Display of the TPMS status on the instrument cluster.....	2-31	U	
READY status.....	4-2	Sun visor/mirror lamp.....	3-80, 3-116	To charge immediately after canceling scheduled charging.....	3-63	USB charging port.....	3-114
Steering wheel.....	3-108	System Protection Function (Delayed Accelerator Pedal Response).....	1-41	To cutoff power from high voltage battery.....	1-10	Use of service centers and maintenance partners.....	4
Horn.....	3-109	System Safety Mode.....	4-5	To cutoff power from low voltage (12 V) battery.....	1-12		
Steering wheel heater.....	3-108	T					
Steering wheel heater indicator		Table for check and change intervals under demanding conditions.....	6-11				
Heating.....	4-25						

7-8 Index



Use of Service Centers and Maintenance Partners	1-42
Using a towing rope	5-17
Using a tow truck	5-15
Using Genuine Parts	1-42
Utility Mode.....	3-107

V

Vehicle Identification.....	1-23
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)	1-23
Vehicle Management.....	1-42
Vehicle management during winter	6-34
Cautions for parking	6-36
Installing a snow tire.....	6-34
Managing the A/C	6-34
Managing the engine coolant	6-34
Managing washer fluid.....	6-34
Starting the engine and driving the vehicle.....	6-34
Vehicle READY indicator.....	4-32
Vehicle settings	4-44
Vehicle Specifications.....	1-24
Vehicle Washing.....	1-43
Cleaning and Maintaining Glass...	1-45
Washing the Bumper	1-44
Washing Wheels	1-44

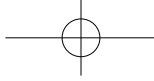
Ventilation and heating ☞ Refer to 'Seat ventilation and heating'...	3-16
Virtual engine sound system (VESS) warning lamp.....	4-34
Voice recognition function	3-112

W

Walk-in button ☞ Refer to 'Front passenger walk-in button'	3-12
Warning horn ☞ Refer to 'Horn'	3-109
Warning lights and indicators	4-22
Warnings for self-maintenance	6-37
Warning triangle	5-2
Washer fluid	3-87
Washing the Bumper	1-44
Washing Wheels	1-44
Wearing the Seat Belt Correctly ..	1-33
What is creep?	4-111
What is safety unlock?	4-8
What is the fade phenomenon?	1-40, 4-114
What is the standing wave phenomenon?.....	1-31
What is the vapor lock phenomenon?.....	1-40, 4-114
What is wind buffeting?.....	3-23, 3-31

Wheel alignment status and the balance between tires and wheels	6-30
When a tire is flat	5-6
When a tire is flat ☞ Refer to 'When a tire is flat'	5-6
When a tow truck is unavailable (in case of emergency)	5-16
Installing the towing hook.....	5-16
Using a towing rope.....	5-17
When low tire pressure is detected.....	2-33
When Low Voltage (12 V) Battery Discharged (Emergency Start-up).....	5-4
When the vehicle has stopped due to a failure	5-22
When towing vehicle unavailable (in an emergency)	1-13
To fit towing hook.....	1-13
When vehicle does not start	4-4
To start vehicle when stop lamp fuse fails (emergency)	4-4
When you have rotated the tires.....	2-33
Window (power window)	3-21
Driver seat window safety function	3-22
Rear seat window lock function....	3-23

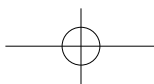
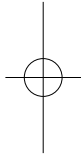
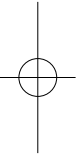
Windshield fog detection sensor.....	3-92
WINTER mode indicator	4-29
Wiper	3-87
Adjusting the operation speed of the windshield wiper	3-87
Front windshield and washer fluid linkage.....	3-87
Rain sensing wiper	3-88
Rear window wiper washer fluid linkage function.....	3-88
Wireless Phone Charger System*	3-122

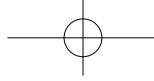


MEMO



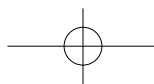
15 horizontal dotted lines for writing.





MEMO

18 horizontal dotted lines for writing.





No.	PART NO.	CODE NO.	PRINTING DATE	MODEL	REMARKS
1	EVX105OM2507E	JE1-5OM0E-5G-300A	Jul. 01, 2025	U105	EV (80.6kw)

TORRES EVX (LHD) OWNER'S MANUAL

ISSUED BY
EXPORT SERVICE TEAM
KG Mobility Corporation

455-12, Dongsak-ro, Pyeongtaek-si,
Gyeonggi-do, 17749, Korea

TELEPHONE : 82-80-500-5582
FACSIMILE : 82-31-610-3762

NOTE: *All rights reserved. Printed in KG Mobility Corporation.
No part of this book may be used or reproduced without the
written permission of Export Service Team.*